

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
HIGHWAY DIVISION 1

PROPOSAL

DATE AND TIME OF BID OPENING: AUGUST 30, 2017 AT 2:00 PM

CONTRACT ID: DA00388

WBS ELEMENT NO.: 44973.3.1 & 44973.3.2

FEDERAL AID NO.: NCFB-0012(66)

STIP NO.: F-5702A & F-5702B

COUNTIES: DARE & HYDE

ROUTE NO.: NC12

**TYPE OF WORK: CONSTRUCTION OF TWO (2) OPEN-AIR PASSENGER SHELTERS,
ONE (1) BATHROOM ADDITION, TWO (2) NEW PARKING AREAS,
AND EXISTING PARKING AREA ASPHALT OVERLAY**

NOTICE:

ALL BIDDERS SHALL COMPLY WITH ALL APPLICABLE LAWS REGULATING THE PRACTICE OF GENERAL CONTRACTING AS CONTAINED IN CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA WHICH REQUIRES THE BIDDER TO BE LICENSED BY THE N.C. LICENSING BOARD FOR CONTRACTORS WHEN BIDDING ON ANY NON-FEDERAL AID PROJECT WHERE THE BID IS \$30,000 OR MORE, EXCEPT FOR CERTAIN SPECIALTY WORK AS DETERMINED BY THE LICENSING BOARD. BIDDERS SHALL ALSO COMPLY WITH ALL OTHER APPLICABLE LAWS REGULATING THE PRACTICES OF ELECTRICAL, PLUMBING, HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING AND REFRIGERATION CONTRACTING AS CONTAINED IN CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA. NOTWITHSTANDING THESE LIMITATIONS ON BIDDING, THE BIDDER WHO IS AWARDED ANY FEDERAL - AID FUNDED PROJECT SHALL COMPLY WITH CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA FOR LICENSING REQUIREMENTS WITHIN 60 CALENDAR DAYS OF BID OPENING.

THIS IS A DIVISION LET PROJECT

5% BID BOND OR BID DEPOSIT REQUIRED

NAME OF BIDDER

ADDRESS OF BIDDER

**PROPOSAL FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF
CONTRACT NO. DA00388 IN DARE AND HYDE COUNTIES, NORTH CAROLINA**

DATE: AUGUST 3, 2017

**DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION,
RALEIGH, NORTH CAROLINA**

The Bidder has carefully examined the location of the proposed work to be known as Contract No. **DA00388**; has carefully examined the plans and specifications, which are acknowledged to be part of the proposal, the special provisions, the proposal, the form of contract, and the forms of contract payment bond and contract performance bond; and thoroughly understands the stipulations, requirements and provisions. The undersigned bidder agrees to be bound upon his execution of the bid and subsequent award to him by the Department of Transportation in accordance with this proposal to provide the necessary contract payment bond and contract performance bond within fourteen days after the written notice of award is received by him. The undersigned Bidder further agrees to provide all necessary machinery, tools, labor, and other means of construction; and to do all the work and to furnish all materials, except as otherwise noted, necessary to perform and complete the said contract in accordance with *the 2012 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures* by the dates(s) specified in the Project Special Provisions and in accordance with the requirements of the Engineer, and at the unit or lump sum prices, as the case may be, for the various items given on the sheets contained herein.

The Bidder shall provide and furnish all the materials, machinery, implements, appliances and tools, and perform the work and required labor to construct and complete State Highway Contract No. **DA00388** in **Dare and Hyde Counties** for the unit or lump sum prices, as the case may be, bid by the Bidder in his bid and according to the proposal, plans, and specifications prepared by said Department, which proposal, plans, and specifications show the details covering this project, and hereby become a part of this contract.

The published volume entitled *North Carolina Department of Transportation, Raleigh, Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, January 2012* with all amendments and supplements thereto, is by reference incorporated into and made a part of this contract; that, except as herein modified, all the construction and work included in this contract is to be done in accordance with the specifications contained in said volume, and amendments and supplements thereto, under the direction of the Engineer.

If the proposal is accepted and the award is made, the contract is valid only when signed either by the Contract Officer or such other person as may be designated by the Secretary to sign for the Department of Transportation. The conditions and provisions herein cannot be changed except over the signature of the said Contract Officer or Division Engineer.

The quantities shown in the itemized proposal for the project are considered to be approximate only and are given as the basis for comparison of bids. The Department of Transportation may increase or decrease the quantity of any item or portion of the work as may be deemed necessary or expedient.

An increase or decrease in the quantity of an item will not be regarded as sufficient ground for an increase or decrease in the unit prices, nor in the time allowed for the completion of the work, except as provided for the contract.

Accompanying this bid is a bid bond secured by a corporate surety, or certified check payable to the order of the Department of Transportation, for five percent of the total bid price, which deposit is to be forfeited as liquidated damages in case this bid is accepted and the Bidder shall fail to provide the required payment and performance bonds with the Department of Transportation, under the condition of this proposal, within 14 calendar days after the written notice of award is received by him, as provided in the Standard Specifications; otherwise said deposit will be returned to the Bidder.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

COVER SHEET	
PROPOSAL SHEET	
TABLE OF CONTENTS	3
INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS	4
PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS	5
STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISIONS	88
DBE LISTING FORM	115
BID FORM	116
HATTERAS TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	
OCRACOKE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	
EXECUTION OF BID, NONCOLLUSION AFFIDAVIT AND DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION	
BID BOND FORMS	
PLAN SHEET	

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

**PLEASE READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY
BEFORE PREPARING AND SUBMITTING YOUR BID.**

All bids shall be prepared and submitted in accordance with the following requirements. Failure to comply with any requirement may cause the bid to be considered irregular and may be grounds for rejection of the bid.

ELECTRONIC BID PREPARATION WITH MANUAL DELIVERY:

1. Download the entire proposal and EBS file from the Connect NCDOT website and return the entire proposal with your bid.
 2. Expedite software necessary for electronic bid preparation may be downloaded from the Connect NCDOT website at: <https://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/Pages/EBS-Information.aspx>
 3. Bid shall be prepared in Expedite, printed, signed and placed in paper proposal. The EBS file should be saved to a CD and submitted with signed paper proposal.
 4. The Bidder shall submit a unit price for every item on the itemized proposal sheet. The unit prices for the various contract items shall be written in figures. Unit prices shall be rounded off by the Bidder to contain no more than FOUR decimal places.
 5. Changes to any entry shall be made to the EBS file, reprinted, signed and placed in the paper proposal. The corrected file shall be saved to a CD and submitted with signed paper proposal.
 6. The bid shall be properly executed on the included **Execution of Bid – Non-collusion Affidavit, Debarment Certification and Gift Ban Certification** form. All bids shall show the following information:
 - a. Name of corporation, partnership, Limited Liability Company, joint venture, individual or firm, submitting bid. Corporations that have a corporate seal shall include it on the bid.
 - b. Name of individual or representative submitting bid and position or title held on behalf of the bidder.
 - c. Name, signature, and position or title of witness.
 - d. Completed attestation by Notary Public
- Note: Signer, Witness and Notary Public must be different individuals.**
7. The bid shall not contain any unauthorized additions, deletions, or conditional bids.
 8. The Bidder shall not add any provision reserving the right to accept or reject an award, or to enter into a contract pursuant to an award.
 9. **THE PROPOSAL WITH THE ITEMIZED PROPOSAL SHEET ATTACHED AND EBS FILE SHALL BE PLACED IN A SEALED ENVELOPE AND SHALL BE DELIVERED TO AND RECEIVED IN THE NCDOT DIVISION ONE OFFICE, LOCATED AT 113 AIRPORT DRIVE, SUITE 100, EDENTON, NC 27932 LOCATED APPROXIMATELY 5 MILES SOUTHEAST OF EDENTON, JUST OFF NC 94 ON AIRPORT DRIVE IN THE NORTHEASTERN REGIONAL AIRPORT BUILDING, BY 2:00 P.M. ON, WEDNESDAY, AUGUST 30, 2017**
 10. The sealed bid must display the following statement on the front of the sealed envelope:

QUOTATION FOR DA00388 – CONSTRUCTION OF FERRY TERMINAL IMPROVEMENTS AT HATTERAS AND OCRACOKE (SILVER LAKE), TO BE OPENED AT 2:00 P.M. ON WEDNESDAY AUGUST 30, 2017

11. If delivered by mail, the sealed envelope shall be placed in another sealed envelope and the outer envelope shall be addressed as follows:

**N. C. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ATTN: Chris Slachta
113 Airport Drive, Suite 100
Edenton, NC 27932**

ELECTRONIC ON-LINE BID THRU BID EXPRESS:

1. Download entire proposal from Connect NCDOT website. Download EBS file from Connect NCDOT or Bid Express websites.
2. Prepare and submit EBS file using Expedite software.
3. Expedite software necessary for electronic bid preparation may be downloaded from the Connect NCDOT website at: <https://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/Pages/EBS-Information.aspx>

PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**ELECTRONIC BIDDING (Division Contracts):**

(05-13-16)(Rev. 8-1-17)

102

SPD 01-055

The bidder has the option to prepare and submit bids by one of two methods; electronically using the on-line system Bid Express®, or electronic bid preparation with manual delivery. All bids shall be prepared and submitted in accordance with the following requirements. Failure to comply will cause the bid to be considered non-responsive and will not be considered for award.

(A) Electronic On-Line Bids thru Bid Express®

For preparing and submitting the bid electronically using the on-line system Bid Express®, refer to Article 102-8(B) of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

Bidders that bid electronically on Raleigh Central-Let projects will need a separate Digital Signature from Bid Express® for Division Contracts.

(B) Electronic Bid Preparation with Manual Delivery

For electronic bid preparation with manual delivery, the bidder shall download the Expedite program from the NCDOT “Project Letting” website and download the appropriate .ebs electronic file of line items and quantities unique to each project from the Division Office’s website. The only entries into the program which will be permitted by the bidder are the applicable unit or lump sum prices for those items which must be bid in order to provide a complete bid for the project, and any MBE/WBE or DBE participation in the appropriate section of the Expedite program. The computer generated itemized proposal sheets shall be printed and signed by a duly authorized representative in accordance with Subarticle 102-8(A)(8) of the *2012 Standard Specifications*. The computer generated itemized proposal sheets (.ebs bid file) shall also be copied to an external device (i.e. CD) furnished by the bidder and shall be submitted to the Department with the bid. This set of itemized proposal sheets, MBE/WBE or DBE information, external device and the correct proposal, will constitute the bid and shall be delivered to the contracting Division Office or location specified in the INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS. If the bidder submits their bid on computer generated itemized proposal sheets, bid prices shall not be written on the itemized proposal sheets bound in the proposal.

In the case of discrepancy between the unit or lump sum prices submitted on the itemized proposal sheets and those contained on the CD furnished by the bidder, the unit or lump sum prices submitted on the printed and signed itemized proposal sheets shall prevail. Changes to any entry on the computer generated itemized proposal sheets shall be made in accordance with the requirements of the INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS.

MANDATORY PRE-BID CONFERENCE AND PROPOSAL REVIEW:

In order to bid on this contract, all prospective bidders shall attend a Mandatory Pre-Bid Conference to be held at the NCDOT Ferry Division Office, 8550 Shipyard Rd., Manns Harbor, NC 27953 at 2:00 P.M. on August 17, 2017. Please contact Chris Slachta - (252) 482-1850 for any further information.

The pre-bid conference will include a thorough discussion of the plans, contract pay items, special provisions, etc.

Only bidders who have attended and properly registered at the above scheduled pre-bid conferences will be considered qualified to bid on this project. A bid received from a bidder who has not attended and properly registered at the above scheduled pre-bid conferences will not be considered for award.

No questions concerning the project will be answered by any Department personnel at any time, except at the Mandatory Pre-Bid Conference.

This conference will be conducted by Department personnel for the purpose of providing additional information about the project and to give bidders an opportunity to ask any questions they may have.

The Engineer will explain areas of responsibility, standards of performance and expected results. This is also intended to be a time for the Contractor to raise questions.

Any changes made to the contract during the pre-bid conference will be documented and included in an addendum. The addendum must be returned with the bid package, signed and dated. Failure to do so will result in disqualification of bid. Pre-Bid Conference proceedings will be tape recorded.

Attendance at the Pre-Bid Conference will not meet the requirements of proper registration unless the individual attending has registered with the following information:

1. The individual writes his/her name on the official roster at the **beginning** of the pre-bid conference.
2. The individual writes in the name and address of the company he/she represents.
3. Only one company is shown as being represented by the individual attending.
4. The individual is an officer or permanent employee of the firm they represent.
5. The individual shall sign out when the end of the pre-bid conference is completed.

Only bids received from the bidders who have attended and properly registered at the Pre-Bid Conference will be considered.

BOND REQUIREMENTS:

(06-01-16)

102-8, 102-10

SPD 01-420A

A Bid Bond is required in accordance with Article 102-10 of the 2012 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

Contract Payment and Performance Bonds are required in accordance with Article 103-7 of the 2012 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

CONTRACT TIME AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(7-1-95) (Rev. 12-18-07)

108

SP1 G10 A

The date of availability for this contract is **September 25, 2017**.

The completion date for this contract is **April 6, 2018**.

Except where otherwise provided by the contract, observation periods required by the contract will not be a part of the work to be completed by the completion date and/or intermediate contract times stated in the contract. The acceptable completion of the observation periods that extend beyond the final completion date shall be a part of the work covered by the performance and payment bonds.

The liquidated damages for this contract are **Two Hundred Fifty Dollars (\$ 250.00)** per calendar day.

INTERMEDIATE CONTRACT TIME NUMBER 1 AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

(2-20-07)

108

SP1 G14 A

The Contractor shall not perform any work on this project during the following time restrictions:

DAY AND TIME RESTRICTIONS

MONDAY-THURSDAY FROM THIRTY (30) MINUTES BEFORE SUNSET TO THIRTY (30) MINUTES AFTER SUNRISE THE FOLLOWING DAY

AND

FRIDAY FROM THIRTY (30) MINUTES BEFORE SUNSET TO THIRTY (30) MINUTES AFTER SUNRISE THE FOLLOWING **MONDAY AND THE CONTRACTOR SHALL NOT PERFORM ANY WORK ON ALL WEEKENDS (FRIDAY THROUGH SUNDAY) WITHOUT PRIOR AUTHORIZATION BY THE ENGINEER.**

In addition, the Contractor shall not perform any work on this project and/or alter the traffic flow on or during holiday weekends, special events, or any other time when traffic is unusually heavy, including the following schedules:

HOLIDAY AND HOLIDAY WEEKEND LANE CLOSURE RESTRICTIONS

1. For **unexpected occurrence** that creates unusually high traffic volumes, as directed by the Engineer.
2. For **New Year's Day**, between the hours of 30 minutes before sunset. December 31st until 30 minutes after sunrise January 2nd. If New Year's Day is on Saturday or Sunday, then until 30 minutes after sunrise the following Tuesday.
3. For Easter, between the hours of 30 minutes before sunset Thursday and 30 minutes after sunrise Monday.
4. For **Memorial Day**, between the hours of 30 minutes before sunset Friday and 30 minutes after sunrise Tuesday.
5. For **Independence Day**, between the hours of 30 minutes before sunset the day before Independence Day and 30 minutes after sunrise the day after Independence Day.

If Independence Day is on a Saturday or Sunday, then between the hours of 30 minutes before sunset the Thursday before Independence Day and 30 minutes after sunrise the Tuesday after Independence Day.

6. For **Labor Day**, between the hours of 30 minutes before sunset Friday and 30 minutes after sunrise Tuesday.
7. For **Thanksgiving Day**, between the hours of 30 minutes before sunset Tuesday and 30 minutes after sunrise Monday.
8. For **Christmas**, between the hours of 30 minutes before sunset the Friday **before the week of Christmas Day** and 30 minutes after sunrise the following Monday **after the week of Christmas Day**.

Holidays and holiday weekends shall include New Year's, Easter, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving, and Christmas. The Contractor shall schedule his work so that lane closures will not be required during these periods, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.

The time of availability for this intermediate contract work shall be the time the Contractor begins to install all traffic control devices for lane closures according to the time restrictions listed herein.

The completion time for this intermediate contract work shall be the time the Contractor is required to complete the removal of all traffic control devices for lane closures according to the time restrictions stated above and place traffic in the existing traffic pattern.

The liquidated damages are **Fifty Dollars (\$ 50.00)** per hour.

PROSECUTION OF WORK:

(7-1-95) (Rev. 8-21-12)

108

SP1 G15R

The Contractor will be required to prosecute the work in a continuous and uninterrupted manner from the time he begins the work until completion and final acceptance of the project. The Contractor will not be permitted to suspend his operations except for reasons beyond his control or except where the Engineer has authorized a suspension of the Contractor's operations in writing.

In the event the Contractor's operations are suspended in violation of the above provisions, the sum of **\$ 100.00** will be charged the Contractor for each and every calendar day that such suspension takes place. The said amount is hereby agreed upon as liquidated damages due to extra engineering, worksite security, and maintenance costs and due to increased public hazard resulting from a suspension of the work. Liquidated damages chargeable due to suspension of the work will be additional to any liquidated damages that may become chargeable due to failure to complete the work on time.

POSTED WEIGHT LIMITS AND SIZE RESTRICTIONS:

(7-1-95) (Rev. 8-21-12)

107

SP1 G24R

The Contractor's attention is directed to the fact that many Primary and Secondary Roads, bridges and ferry boats are posted with weight and size limits less than the legal road and bridge limit. Do not exceed the posted weight limits in transporting materials and/or equipment to the projects, unless otherwise indicated below. Make a thorough examination of all projects, haul routes and ferry schedules and be prepared to discuss them at the Preconstruction Conference.

PERMANENT VEGETATION ESTABLISHMENT:

(2-16-12) (Rev. 10-15-13)

104

SP1 G16

Establish a permanent stand of the vegetation mixture shown in the contract. During the period between initial vegetation planting and final project acceptance, perform all work necessary to establish permanent vegetation on all erodible areas within the project limits, as well as, in borrow and waste pits. This work shall include erosion control device maintenance and installation, repair seeding and mulching, supplemental seeding and mulching, mowing, and fertilizer topdressing, as directed. All work shall be performed in accordance with the applicable section of the *2012 Standard Specifications*. All work required for initial vegetation planting shall be performed as a part of the work necessary for the completion and acceptance of the Intermediate Contract Time (ICT). Between the time of ICT and Final Project acceptance, or otherwise referred to as the vegetation establishment period, the Department will be responsible for preparing the required National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) inspection records.

Once the Engineer has determined that the permanent vegetation establishment requirement has been achieved at an 80% vegetation density (the amount of established vegetation per given area to stabilize the soil) and no erodible areas exist within the project limits, the Contractor will be notified to remove the remaining erosion control devices that are no longer needed. The Contractor will be responsible for, and shall correct any areas disturbed by operations performed in permanent vegetation establishment and the removal of temporary erosion control measures, whether occurring prior to or after placing traffic on the project.

Payment for *Response for Erosion Control, Seeding and Mulching, Repair Seeding, Supplemental Seeding, Mowing, Fertilizer Topdressing, Silt Excavation, and Stone for Erosion Control* will be made at contract unit prices for the affected items. Work required that is not represented by contract line items will be paid in accordance with Articles 104-7 or 104-3 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*. No additional compensation will be made for maintenance and removal of temporary erosion control items.

NO MAJOR CONTRACT ITEMS:

(2-19-02) (Rev. 8-21-07)

104

SP1 G31

None of the items included in this contract will be major items.

SPECIALTY ITEMS:

(7-1-95)(Rev. 1-17-12)

108-6

SP1 G37

Items listed below will be the specialty items for this contract (see Article 108-6 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*).

Line #	Description-Hatteras
22 - 27	Fencing
32 - 38	Long-Life Pavement Markings
40	Utility Construction
41 - 55	Erosion Control

FUEL PRICE ADJUSTMENT:

(11-15-05) (Rev. 2-18-14)

109-8

SP1 G43

Revise the 2012 *Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-83, Article 109-8, Fuel Price Adjustments, add the following:

The base index price for DIESEL #2 FUEL is \$ **1.6761** per gallon. Where any of the following are included as pay items in the contract, they will be eligible for fuel price adjustment.

The pay items and the fuel factor used in calculating adjustments to be made will be as follows:

Description	Units	Fuel Usage Factor Diesel
Unclassified Excavation	Gal/CY	0.29
Borrow Excavation	Gal/CY	0.29
Class IV Subgrade Stabilization	Gal/Ton	0.55
Aggregate Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
Sub-Ballast	Gal/Ton	0.55
Asphalt Concrete Base Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Open-Graded Asphalt Friction Course	Gal/Ton	2.90
Permeable Asphalt Drainage Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Sand Asphalt Surface Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Aggregate for Cement Treated Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
Portland Cement for Cement Treated Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
___" Portland Cement Concrete Pavement	Gal/SY	0.245
Concrete Shoulders Adjacent to ___" Pavement	Gal/SY	0.245

DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DIVISIONS):

(10-16-07)(Rev.1-17-17)

102-15(J)

SP1 G62

Description

The purpose of this Special Provision is to carry out the U.S. Department of Transportation's policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of contracts financed in whole or in part with Federal funds. This provision is guided by 49 CFR Part 26.

Definitions

Additional DBE Subcontractors - Any DBE submitted at the time of bid that will not be used to meet the DBE goal. No submittal of a Letter of Intent is required.

Committed DBE Subcontractor - Any DBE submitted at the time of bid that is being used to meet the DBE goal by submission of a Letter of Intent. Or any DBE used as a replacement for a previously committed DBE firm.

Contract Goal Requirement - The approved DBE participation at time of award, but not greater than the advertised contract goal.

DBE Goal - A portion of the total contract, expressed as a percentage, that is to be performed by committed DBE subcontractor(s).

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) - A firm certified as a Disadvantaged Business Enterprise through the North Carolina Unified Certification Program.

Goal Confirmation Letter - Written documentation from the Department to the bidder confirming the Contractor's approved, committed DBE participation along with a listing of the committed DBE firms.

Manufacturer - A firm that operates or maintains a factory or establishment that produces on the premises, the materials or supplies obtained by the Contractor.

Regular Dealer - A firm that owns, operates, or maintains a store, warehouse, or other establishment in which the materials or supplies required for the performance of the contract are bought, kept in stock, and regularly sold to the public in the usual course of business. A regular dealer engages in, as its principal business and in its own name, the purchase and sale or lease of the products in question. A regular dealer in such bulk items as steel, cement, gravel, stone, and petroleum products need not keep such products in stock, if it owns and operates distribution equipment for the products. Brokers and packagers are not regarded as manufacturers or regular dealers within the meaning of this section.

North Carolina Unified Certification Program (NCUCP) - A program that provides comprehensive services and information to applicants for DBE certification, such that an applicant is required to apply only once for a DBE certification that will be honored by all recipients of USDOT funds in the state and not limited to the Department of Transportation only. The Certification Program is in accordance with 49 CFR Part 26.

United States Department of Transportation (USDOT) - Federal agency responsible for issuing regulations (49 CFR Part 26) and official guidance for the DBE program.

Forms and Websites Referenced in this Provision

DBE Payment Tracking System - On-line system in which the Contractor enters the payments made to DBE subcontractors who have performed work on the project.
<https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/Vendor/PaymentTracking/>

DBE-IS Subcontractor Payment Information - Form for reporting the payments made to all DBE firms working on the project. This form is for paper bid projects only.
<https://connect.ncdot.gov/business/Turnpike/Documents/Form%20DBE-IS%20Subcontractor%20Payment%20Information.pdf>

RF-1 DBE Replacement Request Form - Form for replacing a committed DBE.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/DBE%20MBE%20WBE%20Replacement%20Request%20Form.pdf>

SAF Subcontract Approval Form - Form required for approval to sublet the contract.
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Subcontract%20Approval%20Form%20Rev.%202012.zip>

JC-1 Joint Check Notification Form - Form and procedures for joint check notification. The form acts as a written joint check agreement among the parties providing full and prompt disclosure of the expected use of joint checks.

<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Joint%20Check%20Notification%20Form.pdf>

Letter of Intent - Form signed by the Contractor and the DBE subcontractor, manufacturer or regular dealer that affirms that a portion of said contract is going to be performed by the signed DBE for the amount listed at the time of bid.

<http://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/LetCentral/Letter%20of%20Intent%20to%20Perform%20as%20a%20Subcontractor.pdf>

Listing of DBE Subcontractors Form - Form for entering DBE subcontractors on a project that will meet this DBE goal. This form is for paper bids only.

[http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid%20Proposals%20for%20LGA%20Content/08%20DBE%20Subcontractors%20\(Federal\).docx](http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid%20Proposals%20for%20LGA%20Content/08%20DBE%20Subcontractors%20(Federal).docx)

Subcontractor Quote Comparison Sheet - Spreadsheet for showing all subcontractor quotes in the work areas where DBEs quoted on the project. This sheet is submitted with good faith effort packages.

<http://connect.ncdot.gov/business/SmallBusiness/Documents/DBE%20Subcontractor%20Quote%20Comparison%20Example.xls>

DBE Goal

The following DBE goal for participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises is established for this contract:

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises **2 %**

- (A) *If the DBE goal is more than zero*, the Contractor shall exercise all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure that DBEs participate in at least the percent of the contract as set forth above as the DBE goal.
- (B) *If the DBE goal is zero*, the Contractor shall make an effort to recruit and use DBEs during the performance of the contract. Any DBE participation obtained shall be reported to the Department.

Directory of Transportation Firms (Directory)

Real-time information is available about firms doing business with the Department and firms that are certified through NCUCP in the Directory of Transportation Firms. Only firms identified in the Directory as DBE certified shall be used to meet the DBE goal. The Directory can be found at the following link. <https://partner.ncdot.gov/VendorDirectory/default.html>

The listing of an individual firm in the directory shall not be construed as an endorsement of the firm's capability to perform certain work.

Listing of DBE Subcontractors

At the time of bid, bidders shall submit all DBE participation that they anticipate to use during the life of the contract. Only those identified to meet the DBE goal will be considered committed, even though the listing shall include both committed DBE subcontractors and additional DBE subcontractors. Additional DBE subcontractor participation submitted at the time of bid will be used toward the Department's overall race-neutral goal. Only those firms with current DBE certification at the time of

bid opening will be acceptable for listing in the bidder's submittal of DBE participation. The Contractor shall indicate the following required information:

- (A) *If the DBE goal is more than zero,*
- (1) Bidders, at the time the bid proposal is submitted, shall submit a listing of DBE participation, including the names and addresses on *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* contained elsewhere in the contract documents in order for the bid to be considered responsive. Bidders shall indicate the total dollar value of the DBE participation for the contract.
 - (2) If bidders have no DBE participation, they shall indicate this on the *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* by entering the word "None" or the number "0." This form shall be completed in its entirety. **Blank forms will not be deemed to represent zero participation.** Bids submitted that do not have DBE participation indicated on the appropriate form will not be read publicly during the opening of bids. The Department will not consider these bids for award and the proposal will be rejected.
 - (3) The bidder shall be responsible for ensuring that the DBE is certified at the time of bid by checking the Directory of Transportation Firms. If the firm is not certified at the time of the bid-letting, that DBE's participation will not count towards achieving the DBE goal.
- (B) *If the DBE goal is zero,* entries on the *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* are not required, however any DBE participation that is achieved during the project shall be reported in accordance with requirements contained elsewhere in the special provision.

DBE Prime Contractor

When a certified DBE firm bids on a contract that contains a DBE goal, the DBE firm is responsible for meeting the goal or making good faith efforts to meet the goal, just like any other bidder. In most cases, a DBE bidder on a contract will meet the DBE goal by virtue of the work it performs on the contract with its own forces. However, all the work that is performed by the DBE bidder and any other DBE subcontractors will count toward the DBE goal. The DBE bidder shall list itself along with any DBE subcontractors, if any, in order to receive credit toward the DBE goal.

For example, if the DBE goal is 45% and the DBE bidder will only perform 40% of the contract work, the prime will list itself at 40%, and the additional 5% shall be obtained through additional DBE participation with DBE subcontractors or documented through a good faith effort.

DBE prime contractors shall also follow Sections A or B listed under *Listing of DBE Subcontractor* just as a non-DBE bidder would.

Written Documentation – Letter of Intent

The bidder shall submit written documentation for each DBE that will be used to meet the DBE goal of the contract, indicating the bidder's commitment to use the DBE in the contract. This documentation shall be submitted on the Department's form titled *Letter of Intent*.

The documentation shall be received in the office of the Engineer no later than 2:00 p.m. of the fifth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the fifth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

If the bidder fails to submit the Letter of Intent from each committed DBE to be used toward the DBE goal, or if the form is incomplete (i.e. both signatures are not present), the DBE participation will not count toward meeting the DBE goal. If the lack of this participation drops the commitment below the DBE goal, the Contractor shall submit evidence of good faith efforts, completed in its entirety, to the Engineer no later than 2:00 p.m. on the eighth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the eighth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

Submission of Good Faith Effort

If the bidder fails to meet or exceed the DBE goal the apparent lowest responsive bidder shall submit to the Department documentation of adequate good faith efforts made to reach the DBE goal.

One complete set of this information shall be received in the office of the Engineer no later than 2:00 p.m. of the fifth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the fifth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

Note: Where the information submitted includes repetitious solicitation letters, it will be acceptable to submit a representative letter along with a distribution list of the firms that were solicited. Documentation of DBE quotations shall be a part of the good faith effort submittal. This documentation may include written subcontractor quotations, telephone log notations of verbal quotations, or other types of quotation documentation.

Consideration of Good Faith Effort for Projects with DBE Goals More Than Zero

Adequate good faith efforts mean that the bidder took all necessary and reasonable steps to achieve the goal which, by their scope, intensity, and appropriateness, could reasonably be expected to obtain sufficient DBE participation. Adequate good faith efforts also mean that the bidder actively and aggressively sought DBE participation. Mere *pro forma* efforts are not considered good faith efforts.

The Department will consider the quality, quantity, and intensity of the different kinds of efforts a bidder has made. Listed below are examples of the types of actions a bidder will take in making a good faith effort to meet the goal and are not intended to be exclusive or exhaustive, nor is it intended to be a mandatory checklist.

- (A) Soliciting through all reasonable and available means (e.g. attendance at pre-bid meetings, advertising, written notices, use of verifiable electronic means through the use of the NCDOT Directory of Transportation Firms) the interest of all certified DBEs who have the capability to perform the work of the contract. The bidder must solicit this interest within at least 10 days prior to bid opening to allow the DBEs to respond to the solicitation. Solicitation shall provide the opportunity to DBEs within the Division and surrounding Divisions where the project is located. The bidder must determine with certainty if the DBEs are interested by taking appropriate steps to follow up initial solicitations.

- (B) Selecting portions of the work to be performed by DBEs in order to increase the likelihood that the DBE goals will be achieved.
 - (1) Where appropriate, break out contract work items into economically feasible units to facilitate DBE participation, even when the prime contractor might otherwise prefer to perform these work items with its own forces.
 - (2) Negotiate with subcontractors to assume part of the responsibility to meet the contract DBE goal when the work to be sublet includes potential for DBE participation (2nd and 3rd tier subcontractors).
- (C) Providing interested DBEs with adequate information about the plans, specifications, and requirements of the contract in a timely manner to assist them in responding to a solicitation.
- (D)
 - (1) Negotiating in good faith with interested DBEs. It is the bidder's responsibility to make a portion of the work available to DBE subcontractors and suppliers and to select those portions of the work or material needs consistent with the available DBE subcontractors and suppliers, so as to facilitate DBE participation. Evidence of such negotiation includes the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs that were considered; a description of the information provided regarding the plans and specifications for the work selected for subcontracting; and evidence as to why additional agreements could not be reached for DBEs to perform the work.
 - (2) A bidder using good business judgment would consider a number of factors in negotiating with subcontractors, including DBE subcontractors, and would take a firm's price and capabilities as well as contract goals into consideration. However, the fact that there may be some additional costs involved in finding and using DBEs is not in itself sufficient reason for a bidder's failure to meet the contract DBE goal, as long as such costs are reasonable. Also, the ability or desire of a prime contractor to perform the work of a contract with its own organization does not relieve the bidder of the responsibility to make good faith efforts. Bidding contractors are not, however, required to accept higher quotes from DBEs if the price difference is excessive or unreasonable.
- (E) Not rejecting DBEs as being unqualified without sound reasons based on a thorough investigation of their capabilities. The bidder's standing within its industry, membership in specific groups, organizations, or associates and political or social affiliations (for example, union vs. non-union employee status) are not legitimate causes for the rejection or non-solicitation of bids in the bidder's efforts to meet the project goal.
- (F) Making efforts to assist interested DBEs in obtaining bonding, lines of credit, or insurance as required by the recipient or bidder.
- (G) Making efforts to assist interested DBEs in obtaining necessary equipment, supplies, materials, or related assistance or services.
- (H) Effectively using the services of available minority/women community organizations; minority/women contractors' groups; Federal, State, and local minority/women business assistance offices; and other organizations as allowed on a case-by-case basis to provide

assistance in the recruitment and placement of DBEs. Contact within 7 days from the bid opening the Business Opportunity and Work Force Development Unit at DBE@ncdot.gov to give notification of the bidder's inability to get DBE quotes.

- (I) Any other evidence that the bidder submits which shows that the bidder has made reasonable good faith efforts to meet the DBE goal.

In addition, the Department may take into account the following:

- (1) Whether the bidder's documentation reflects a clear and realistic plan for achieving the DBE goal.
- (2) The bidders' past performance in meeting the DBE goals.
- (3) The performance of other bidders in meeting the DBE goal. For example, when the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the DBE goal, but others meet it, you may reasonably raise the question of whether, with additional reasonable efforts the apparent successful bidder could have met the goal. If the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the DBE goal, but meets or exceeds the average DBE participation obtained by other bidders, the Department may view this, in conjunction with other factors, as evidence of the apparent successful bidder having made a good faith effort.

If the Department does not award the contract to the apparent lowest responsive bidder, the Department reserves the right to award the contract to the next lowest responsive bidder that can satisfy to the Department that the DBE goal can be met or that an adequate good faith effort has been made to meet the DBE goal.

Non-Good Faith Appeal

The Engineer will notify the contractor verbally and in writing of non-good faith. A contractor may appeal a determination of non-good faith made by the Goal Compliance Committee. If a contractor wishes to appeal the determination made by the Committee, they shall provide written notification to the Engineer. The appeal shall be made within 2 business days of notification of the determination of non-good faith.

Counting DBE Participation Toward Meeting DBE Goal

- (A) Participation

The total dollar value of the participation by a committed DBE will be counted toward the contract goal requirement. The total dollar value of participation by a committed DBE will be based upon the value of work actually performed by the DBE and the actual payments to DBE firms by the Contractor.

- (B) Joint Checks

Prior notification of joint check use shall be required when counting DBE participation for services or purchases that involves the use of a joint check. Notification shall be through

submission of Form JC-1 (*Joint Check Notification Form*) and the use of joint checks shall be in accordance with the Department's Joint Check Procedures.

(C) Subcontracts (Non-Trucking)

A DBE may enter into subcontracts. Work that a DBE subcontracts to another DBE firm may be counted toward the contract goal requirement. Work that a DBE subcontracts to a non-DBE firm does not count toward the contract goal requirement. If a DBE contractor or subcontractor subcontracts a significantly greater portion of the work of the contract than would be expected on the basis of standard industry practices, it shall be presumed that the DBE is not performing a commercially useful function. The DBE may present evidence to rebut this presumption to the Department. The Department's decision on the rebuttal of this presumption is subject to review by the Federal Highway Administration but is not administratively appealable to USDOT.

(D) Joint Venture

When a DBE performs as a participant in a joint venture, the Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement a portion of the total value of participation with the DBE in the joint venture, that portion of the total dollar value being a distinct clearly defined portion of work that the DBE performs with its forces.

(E) Suppliers

A contractor may count toward its DBE requirement 60 percent of its expenditures for materials and supplies required to complete the contract and obtained from a DBE regular dealer and 100 percent of such expenditures from a DBE manufacturer.

(F) Manufacturers and Regular Dealers

A contractor may count toward its DBE requirement the following expenditures to DBE firms that are not manufacturers or regular dealers:

- (1) The fees or commissions charged by a DBE firm for providing a *bona fide* service, such as professional, technical, consultant, or managerial services, or for providing bonds or insurance specifically required for the performance of a DOT-assisted contract, provided the fees or commissions are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees and commissions customarily allowed for similar services.
- (2) With respect to materials or supplies purchased from a DBE, which is neither a manufacturer nor a regular dealer, count the entire amount of fees or commissions charged for assistance in the procurement of the materials and supplies, or fees or transportation charges for the delivery of materials or supplies required on a job site (but not the cost of the materials and supplies themselves), provided the fees are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees customarily allowed for similar services.

Commercially Useful Function**(A) DBE Utilization**

The Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement only expenditures to DBEs that perform a commercially useful function in the work of a contract. A DBE performs a commercially useful function when it is responsible for execution of the work of the contract and is carrying out its responsibilities by actually performing, managing, and supervising the work involved. To perform a commercially useful function, the DBE shall also be responsible with respect to materials and supplies used on the contract, for negotiating price, determining quality and quantity, ordering the material and installing (where applicable) and paying for the material itself. To determine whether a DBE is performing a commercially useful function, the Department will evaluate the amount of work subcontracted, industry practices, whether the amount the firm is to be paid under the contract is commensurate with the work it is actually performing and the DBE credit claimed for its performance of the work, and any other relevant factors.

(B) DBE Utilization in Trucking

The following factors will be used to determine if a DBE trucking firm is performing a commercially useful function:

- (1) The DBE shall be responsible for the management and supervision of the entire trucking operation for which it is responsible on a particular contract, and there shall not be a contrived arrangement for the purpose of meeting DBE goals.
- (2) The DBE shall itself own and operate at least one fully licensed, insured, and operational truck used on the contract.
- (3) The DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services it provides on the contract using trucks it owns, insures, and operates using drivers it employs.
- (4) The DBE may subcontract the work to another DBE firm, including an owner-operator who is certified as a DBE. The DBE who subcontracts work to another DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services the subcontracted DBE provides on the contract.
- (5) The DBE may also subcontract the work to a non-DBE firm, including from an owner-operator. The DBE who subcontracts the work to a non-DBE is entitled to credit for the total value of transportation services provided by the non-DBE subcontractor not to exceed the value of transportation services provided by DBE-owned trucks on the contract. Additional participation by non-DBE subcontractors receives credit only for the fee or commission it receives as a result of the subcontract arrangement. The value of services performed under subcontract agreements between the DBE and the Contractor will not count towards the DBE contract requirement.
- (6) A DBE may lease truck(s) from an established equipment leasing business open to the general public. The lease must indicate that the DBE has exclusive use of and control over the truck. This requirement does not preclude the leased truck from working for others during the term of the lease with the consent of the DBE, so long as the lease gives

the DBE absolute priority for use of the leased truck. This type of lease may count toward the DBE's credit as long as the driver is under the DBE's payroll.

- (7) Subcontracted/leased trucks shall display clearly on the dashboard the name of the DBE that they are subcontracted/leased to and their own company name if it is not identified on the truck itself. Magnetic door signs are not permitted.

DBE Replacement

When a Contractor has relied on a commitment to a DBE firm (or an approved substitute DBE firm) to meet all or part of a contract goal requirement, the contractor shall not terminate the DBE for convenience. This includes, but is not limited to, instances in which the Contractor seeks to perform the work of the terminated subcontractor with another DBE subcontractor, a non-DBE subcontractor, or with the Contractor's own forces or those of an affiliate. A DBE may only be terminated after receiving the Engineer's written approval based upon a finding of good cause for the termination. The prime contractor must give the DBE firm five (5) calendar days to respond to the prime contractor's notice of termination and advise the prime contractor and the Department of the reasons, if any, why the firm objects to the proposed termination of its subcontract and why the Department should not approve the action.

All requests for replacement of a committed DBE firm shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval on Form RF-1 (*DBE Replacement Request*). If the Contractor fails to follow this procedure, the Contractor may be disqualified from further bidding for a period of up to 6 months.

The Contractor shall comply with the following for replacement of a committed DBE:

(A) Performance Related Replacement

When a committed DBE is terminated for good cause as stated above, an additional DBE that was submitted at the time of bid may be used to fulfill the DBE commitment. A good faith effort will only be required for removing a committed DBE if there were no additional DBEs submitted at the time of bid to cover the same amount of work as the DBE that was terminated.

If a replacement DBE is not found that can perform at least the same amount of work as the terminated DBE, the Contractor shall submit a good faith effort documenting the steps taken. Such documentation shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- (1) Copies of written notification to DBEs that their interest is solicited in contracting the work defaulted by the previous DBE or in subcontracting other items of work in the contract.
- (2) Efforts to negotiate with DBEs for specific sub bids including, at a minimum:
 - (a) The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs who were contacted.
 - (b) A description of the information provided to DBEs regarding the plans and specifications for portions of the work to be performed.
- (3) A list of reasons why DBE quotes were not accepted.
- (4) Efforts made to assist the DBEs contacted, if needed, in obtaining bonding or insurance required by the Contractor.

(B) Decertification Replacement

- (1) When a committed DBE is decertified by the Department after the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) has been received by the Department, the Department will not require the Contractor to solicit replacement DBE participation equal to the remaining work to be performed by the decertified firm. The participation equal to the remaining work performed by the decertified firm will count toward the contract goal requirement.
- (2) When a committed DBE is decertified prior to the Department receiving the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) for the named DBE firm, the Contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to replace the DBE subcontractor with another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work to meet the DBE goal requirement. If a DBE firm is not found to do the same amount of work, a good faith effort must be submitted to NCDOT (see A herein for required documentation).

Changes in the Work

When the Engineer makes changes that result in the reduction or elimination of work to be performed by a committed DBE, the Contractor will not be required to seek additional participation. When the Engineer makes changes that result in additional work to be performed by a DBE based upon the Contractor's commitment, the DBE shall participate in additional work to the same extent as the DBE participated in the original contract work.

When the Engineer makes changes that result in extra work, which has more than a minimal impact on the contract amount, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by DBEs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

When the Engineer makes changes that result in an alteration of plans or details of construction, and a portion or all of the work had been expected to be performed by a committed DBE, the Contractor shall seek participation by DBEs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

When the Contractor requests changes in the work that result in the reduction or elimination of work that the Contractor committed to be performed by a DBE, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by DBEs equal to the reduced DBE participation caused by the changes.

Reports and Documentation

A SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) shall be submitted for all work which is to be performed by a DBE subcontractor. The Department reserves the right to require copies of actual subcontract agreements involving DBE subcontractors.

When using transportation services to meet the contract commitment, the Contractor shall submit a proposed trucking plan in addition to the SAF. The plan shall be submitted prior to beginning construction on the project. The plan shall include the names of all trucking firms proposed for use, their certification type(s), the number of trucks owned by the firm, as well as the individual truck identification numbers, and the line item(s) being performed.

Within 30 calendar days of entering into an agreement with a DBE for materials, supplies or services, not otherwise documented by the SAF as specified above, the Contractor shall furnish the Engineer a copy of the agreement. The documentation shall also indicate the percentage (60% or 100%) of expenditures claimed for DBE credit.

Reporting Disadvantaged Business Enterprise Participation

The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with an accounting of payments made to all DBE firms, including material suppliers and contractors at all levels (prime, subcontractor, or second tier subcontractor). This accounting shall be furnished to the Engineer for any given month by the end of the following month. Failure to submit this information accordingly may result in the following action:

- (A) Withholding of money due in the next partial pay estimate; or
- (B) Removal of an approved contractor from the prequalified bidders' list or the removal of other entities from the approved subcontractors list.

While each contractor (prime, subcontractor, 2nd tier subcontractor) is responsible for accurate accounting of payments to DBEs, it shall be the prime contractor's responsibility to report all monthly and final payment information in the correct reporting manner.

Failure on the part of the Contractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from further bidding until the required information is submitted.

Failure on the part of any subcontractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from being approved for work on future projects until the required information is submitted.

Contractors reporting transportation services provided by non-DBE lessees shall evaluate the value of services provided during the month of the reporting period only.

At any time, the Engineer can request written verification of subcontractor payments.

The Contractor shall report the accounting of payments through the Department's DBE Payment Tracking System.

Failure to Meet Contract Requirements

Failure to meet contract requirements in accordance with Subarticle 102-15(J) of the *2012 Standard Specifications* may be cause to disqualify the Contractor.

CERTIFICATION FOR FEDERAL-AID CONTRACTS:

(3-21-90)

SP1 G85

The prospective participant certifies, by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

- (A) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

- (B) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, *Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying*, in accordance with its instructions.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by *Section 1352, Title 31, U.S. Code*. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.

The prospective participant also agrees by submitting his or her bid or proposal that he or she shall require that the language of this certification be included in all lower tier subcontracts, which exceed \$100,000 and that all such subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE REQUIREMENTS:

(7-1-95)

102-14

SP1 G88

If the successful bidder does not hold the proper license to perform any plumbing, heating, air conditioning, or electrical work in this contract, he will be required to sublet such work to a contractor properly licensed in accordance with *Article 2 of Chapter 87 of the General Statutes* (licensing of heating, plumbing, and air conditioning contractors) and *Article 4 of Chapter 87 of the General Statutes* (licensing of electrical contractors).

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION HOTLINE:

(11-22-94)

108-5

SP1 G100

To report bid rigging activities call: **1-800-424-9071**

The U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) operates the above toll-free hotline Monday through Friday, 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. eastern time. Anyone with knowledge of possible bid rigging, bidder collusion, or other fraudulent activities should use the hotline to report such activities.

The hotline is part of the DOT's continuing effort to identify and investigate highway construction contract fraud and abuse is operated under the direction of the DOT Inspector General. All information will be treated confidentially and caller anonymity will be respected.

CARGO PREFERENCE ACT:

(2-16-16)

Privately owned United States-flag commercial vessels transporting cargoes are subject to the Cargo Preference Act (CPA) of 1954 requirements and regulations found in 46 CFR 381.7. Contractors are directed to clause (b) of 46 CFR 381.7 as follows:

(b) Contractor and Subcontractor Clauses. "Use of United States-flag vessels: The contractor agrees-

“(1) To utilize privately owned United States-flag commercial vessels to ship at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers)

involved, whenever shipping any equipment, material, or commodities pursuant to this contract, to the extent such vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for United States-flag commercial vessels.

(2) To furnish within 20 days following the date of loading for shipments originating within the United States or within 30 working days following the date of loading for shipments originating outside the United States a legible copy of a rated, 'on-board' commercial ocean bill-of-lading in English for each shipment of cargo described in paragraph (b) (1) of this section to both the Contracting Officer (through the prime contractor in the case of subcontractor bills-of-lading) and to the Division of National Cargo, Office of Market Development, Maritime Administration, Washington, DC 20590.

(3) To insert the substance of the provisions of this clause in all subcontracts issued pursuant to this contract."

SUBSURFACE INFORMATION:

(7-1-95)

450

SP1 G112 B

Subsurface information is available on the NCDOT passenger terminals and parking lot portion of this project only.

LOCATING EXISTING UNDERGROUND UTILITIES:

(3-20-12)

105

SP1 G115

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-43, Article 105-8, line 28, after the first sentence, add the following:

Identify excavation locations by means of pre-marking with white paint, flags, or stakes or provide a specific written description of the location in the locate request.

RESOURCE CONSERVATION AND ENV. SUSTAINABLE PRACTICES:

(5-21-13) (Rev. 5-19-15)

104-13

SP1 G118

In accordance with North Carolina Executive Order 156, NCGS 130A-309.14(3), and NCGS 136-28.8, it is the objective of the Department to aid in the reduction of materials that become a part of our solid waste stream, to divert materials from landfills, to find ways to recycle and reuse materials, to consider and minimize, where economically feasible, the environmental impacts associated with agency land use and acquisition, construction, maintenance and facility management for the benefit of the Citizens of North Carolina.

To achieve the mission of reducing environmental impacts across the state, the Department is committed to supporting the efforts to initiate, develop and use products and construction methods that incorporate the use of recycled, solid waste products and environmentally sustainable practices in accordance with Article 104-13 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Report the quantities of reused or recycled materials either incorporated in the project or diverted from landfills and any practice that minimizes the environmental impact on the project annually on the Project Construction Reuse and Recycling Reporting Form. The Project Construction Reuse and Recycling Reporting Form and a location tool for local recycling facilities are available at:

<http://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Environmental/Pages/North-Carolina-Recycling-Locations.aspx>.

Submit the Project Construction Reuse and Recycling Reporting Form by August 1 annually to valuemanagementunit@ncdot.gov. For questions regarding the form or reporting, please contact the State Value Management Engineer at 919-707-4810.

DOMESTIC STEEL:

(4-16-13)

106

SP1 G120

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-49, Subarticle 106-1(B) Domestic Steel, lines 2-7, replace the first paragraph with the following:

All steel and iron products that are permanently incorporated into this project shall be produced in the United States except minimal amounts of foreign steel and iron products may be used provided the combined material cost of the items involved does not exceed 0.1% of the total amount bid for the entire project or \$2,500, whichever is greater. If invoices showing the cost of the material are not provided, the amount of the bid item involving the foreign material will be used for calculations. This minimal amount of foreign produced steel and iron products permitted for use is not applicable to high strength fasteners. Domestically produced high strength fasteners are required.

Buy America compliance - This is a Federal Highways (FHWA) funded project. Source of supply and quality of materials shall comply with NCDOT requirements, as specified in Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures 2012 and Buy America requirements as required by 23 CFR 635.410 for federal aid highway projects.

While waivers may be requested for some items, the basis of successful waiver applications is the non-availability of a functionally equivalent and serviceable product in which all steel and iron is of wholly US origin. Any waiver request must be submitted by NCDOT, therefore the Contractor must apply to NCDOT to make a waiver application on their behalf. Any delay associated with any waiver application is the sole responsibility of the Contractor, and is not grounds for additional time or receipt of additional payment.

The Contractor shall be responsible for ensuring that its subcontractors also comply with these requirements.

The Contractor shall monitor the Buy America compliance throughout the duration of the Contract. The Contractor shall provide monthly updates of Buy America certification, inclusive of detailed, current status of contract percentages.

COOPERATION BETWEEN CONTRACTORS:

(7-1-95)

105-7

SP1 G133

The Contractor's attention is directed to Article 105-7 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

The Contractor on this project shall cooperate with the Contractor working within or adjacent to the limits of this project to the extent that the work can be carried out to the best advantage of all concerned.

TWELVE MONTH GUARANTEE:

(7-15-03)

108

SP1 G145

- (A) The Contractor shall guarantee materials and workmanship against latent and patent defects arising from faulty materials, faulty workmanship or negligence for a period of twelve months following the date of final acceptance of the work for maintenance and shall replace such defective materials and workmanship without cost to the Department. The Contractor will not be responsible for damage due to faulty design, normal wear and tear, for negligence on the part of the Department, and/or for use in excess of the design.
- (B) Where items of equipment or material carry a manufacturer's guarantee for any period in excess of twelve months, then the manufacturer's guarantee shall apply for that particular piece of equipment or material. The Department's first remedy shall be through the manufacturer although the Contractor is responsible for invoking the warranted repair work with the manufacturer. The Contractor's responsibility shall be limited to the term of the manufacturer's guarantee. NCDOT would be afforded the same warranty as provided by the Manufacturer.

This guarantee provision shall be invoked only for major components of work in which the Contractor would be wholly responsible for under the terms of the contract. Examples would include pavement structures, bridge components, and sign structures. This provision will not be used as a mechanism to force the Contractor to return to the project to make repairs or perform additional work that the Department would normally compensate the Contractor for. In addition, routine maintenance activities (i.e. mowing grass, debris removal, ruts in earth shoulders,) are not parts of this guarantee.

Appropriate provisions of the payment and/or performance bonds shall cover this guarantee for the project.

To ensure uniform application statewide the Division Engineer will forward details regarding the circumstances surrounding any proposed guarantee repairs to the Chief Engineer for review and approval prior to the work being performed.

IRAN DIVESTMENT ACT:

(5-17-16)

SP01 G151

As a result of the Iran Divestment Act of 2015 (Act), Article 6E, N.C. General Statute § 147-86.55, the State Treasurer published the Final Divestment List (List) which includes the Final Divestment List-Iran, and the Parent and Subsidiary Guidance-Iran. These lists identify companies and persons engaged in investment activities in Iran and will be updated every 180 days. The List can be found at <https://www.nctreasurer.com/inside-the-department/OpenGovernment/Pages/Iran-Divestment-Act-Resources.aspx>

By submitting the Offer, the Contractor certifies that, as of the date of this bid, it is not on the then-current List created by the State Treasurer. The Contractor must notify the Department immediately if, at any time before the award of the contract, it is added to the List.

As an ongoing obligation, the Contractor must notify the Department immediately if, at any time during the contract term, it is added to the List. Consistent with § 147-86.59, the Contractor shall not contract with any person to perform a part of the work if, at the time the subcontract is signed, that person is on the then-current List.

During the term of the Contract, should the Department receive information that a person is in violation of the Act as stated above, the Department will offer the person an opportunity to respond and the Department will take action as appropriate and provided for by law, rule, or contract.

GIFTS FROM VENDORS AND CONTRACTORS:

(12-15-09)

107-1

SP1 G152

By Executive Order 24, issued by Governor Perdue, and *N.C.G.S. § 133-32*, it is unlawful for any vendor or contractor (i.e. architect, bidder, contractor, construction manager, design professional, engineer, landlord, offeror, seller, subcontractor, supplier, or vendor), to make gifts or to give favors to any State employee of the Governor's Cabinet Agencies (i.e. Administration, Commerce, Correction, Crime Control and Public Safety, Cultural Resources, Environment and Natural Resources, Health and Human Services, Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention, Revenue, Transportation, and the Office of the Governor). This prohibition covers those vendors and contractors who:

- (A) Have a contract with a governmental agency; or
- (B) Have performed under such a contract within the past year; or
- (C) Anticipate bidding on such a contract in the future.

For additional information regarding the specific requirements and exemptions, vendors and contractors are encouraged to review Executive Order 24 and *N.C.G.S. § 133-32*.

Executive Order 24 also encouraged and invited other State Agencies to implement the requirements and prohibitions of the Executive Order to their agencies. Vendors and contractors should contact other State Agencies to determine if those agencies have adopted Executive Order 24.

LIABILITY INSURANCE:

(5-20-14)

SP1 G160

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-60, Article 107-15 LIABILITY INSURANCE, line 16, add the following as the second sentence of the third paragraph:

Prior to beginning services, all contractors shall provide proof of coverage issued by a workers' compensation insurance carrier, or a certificate of compliance issued by the Department of Insurance for self-insured subcontractors, irrespective of whether having regularly in service fewer than three employees.

EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL/STORMWATER CERTIFICATION:

(1-16-07) (Rev 11-22-16)

105-16, 225-2, 16

SP1 G180

General

Schedule and conduct construction activities in a manner that will minimize soil erosion and the resulting sedimentation and turbidity of surface waters. Comply with the requirements herein regardless of whether or not a National Pollution discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit for the work is required.

Establish a chain of responsibility for operations and subcontractors' operations to ensure that the *Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan* is implemented and maintained over the life of the contract.

- (A) *Certified Supervisor* - Provide a certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor to manage the Contractor and subcontractor operations, insure compliance with Federal, State and Local ordinances and regulations, and manage the Quality Control Program.
- (B) *Certified Foreman* - Provide a certified, trained foreman for each construction operation that increases the potential for soil erosion or the possible sedimentation and turbidity of surface waters.
- (C) *Certified Installer* - Provide a certified installer to install or direct the installation for erosion or sediment/stormwater control practices.
- (D) *Certified Designer* - Provide a certified designer for the design of the erosion and sediment control/stormwater component of reclamation plans and, if applicable, for the design of the project erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan.

Roles and Responsibilities

- (A) *Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor* - The Certified Supervisor shall be Level II and responsible for ensuring the erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan is adequately implemented and maintained on the project and for conducting the quality control program. The Certified Supervisor shall be on the project within 24 hours notice from initial exposure of an erodible surface to the project's final acceptance. Perform the following duties:
 - (1) *Manage Operations* - Coordinate and schedule the work of subcontractors so that erosion and sediment control/stormwater measures are fully executed for each operation and in a timely manner over the duration of the contract.
 - (a) Oversee the work of subcontractors so that appropriate erosion and sediment control/stormwater preventive measures are conformed to at each stage of the work.
 - (b) Prepare the required National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Inspection Record and submit to the Engineer.
 - (c) Attend all weekly or monthly construction meetings to discuss the findings of the NPDES inspection and other related issues.
 - (d) Implement the erosion and sediment control/stormwater site plans requested.
 - (e) Provide any needed erosion and sediment control/stormwater practices for the Contractor's temporary work not shown on the plans, such as, but not limited to work platforms, temporary construction, pumping operations, plant and storage yards, and cofferdams.
 - (f) Acquire applicable permits and comply with requirements for borrow pits, dewatering, and any temporary work conducted by the Contractor in jurisdictional areas.
 - (g) Conduct all erosion and sediment control/stormwater work in a timely and workmanlike manner.
 - (h) Fully perform and install erosion and sediment control/stormwater work prior to any suspension of the work.
 - (i) Coordinate with Department, Federal, State and Local Regulatory agencies on resolution of erosion and sediment control/stormwater issues due to the Contractor's operations.

- (j) Ensure that proper cleanup occurs from vehicle tracking on paved surfaces or any location where sediment leaves the Right-of-Way.
 - (k) Have available a set of erosion and sediment control/stormwater plans that are initialed and include the installation date of Best Management Practices. These practices shall include temporary and permanent groundcover and be properly updated to reflect necessary plan and field changes for use and review by Department personnel as well as regulatory agencies.
- (2) Requirements set forth under the NPDES Permit - The Department's NPDES Stormwater permit (NCS000250) outlines certain objectives and management measures pertaining to construction activities. The permit references *NCG010000, General Permit to Discharge Stormwater* under the NPDES, and states that the Department shall incorporate the applicable requirements into its delegated Erosion and Sediment Control Program for construction activities disturbing one or more acres of land. The Department further incorporates these requirements on all contracted bridge and culvert work at jurisdictional waters, regardless of size. Some of the requirements are, but are not limited to:
- (a) Control project site waste to prevent contamination of surface or ground waters of the state, i.e. from equipment operation/maintenance, construction materials, concrete washout, chemicals, litter, fuels, lubricants, coolants, hydraulic fluids, any other petroleum products, and sanitary waste.
 - (b) Inspect erosion and sediment control/stormwater devices and stormwater discharge outfalls at least once every 7 calendar days and within 24 hours after a rainfall event of 0.5 inch that occurs within a 24 hour period. Additional monitoring may be required at the discretion of Division of Water Resources personnel if the receiving stream is 303(d) listed for turbidity and the project has had documented problems managing turbidity.
 - (c) Maintain an onsite rain gauge or use the Department's Multi-Sensor Precipitation Estimate website to maintain a daily record of rainfall amounts and dates.
 - (d) Maintain erosion and sediment control/stormwater inspection records for review by Department and Regulatory personnel upon request.
 - (e) Implement approved reclamation plans on all borrow pits, waste sites and staging areas.
 - (f) Maintain a log of turbidity test results as outlined in the Department's Procedure for Monitoring Borrow Pit Discharge.
 - (g) Provide secondary containment for bulk storage of liquid materials.
 - (h) Provide training for employees concerning general erosion and sediment control/stormwater awareness, the Department's NPDES Stormwater Permit NCS000250 requirements, and the applicable requirements of the *General Permit, NCG010000*.
 - (i) Report violations of the NPDES permit to the Engineer immediately who will notify the Division of Water Quality Regional Office within 24 hours of becoming aware of the violation.
- (3) Quality Control Program - Maintain a quality control program to control erosion, prevent sedimentation and follow provisions/conditions of permits. The quality control program shall:

- (a) Follow permit requirements related to the Contractor and subcontractors' construction activities.
- (b) Ensure that all operators and subcontractors on site have the proper erosion and sediment control/stormwater certification.
- (c) Notify the Engineer when the required certified erosion and sediment control/stormwater personnel are not available on the job site when needed.
- (d) Conduct the inspections required by the NPDES permit.
- (e) Take corrective actions in the proper timeframe as required by the NPDES permit for problem areas identified during the NPDES inspections.
- (f) Incorporate erosion control into the work in a timely manner and stabilize disturbed areas with mulch/seed or vegetative cover on a section-by-section basis.
- (g) Use flocculants approved by state regulatory authorities where appropriate and where required for turbidity and sedimentation reduction.
- (h) Ensure proper installation and maintenance of temporary erosion and sediment control devices.
- (i) Remove temporary erosion or sediment control devices when they are no longer necessary as agreed upon by the Engineer.
- (j) The Contractor's quality control and inspection procedures shall be subject to review by the Engineer. Maintain NPDES inspection records and make records available at all times for verification by the Engineer.

(B) *Certified Foreman* - At least one Certified Foreman shall be onsite for each type of work listed herein during the respective construction activities to control erosion, prevent sedimentation and follow permit provisions:

- (1) Foreman in charge of grading activities
- (2) Foreman in charge of bridge or culvert construction over jurisdictional areas
- (3) Foreman in charge of utility activities

The Contractor may request to use the same person as the Level II Supervisor and Level II Foreman. This person shall be onsite whenever construction activities as described above are taking place. This request shall be approved by the Engineer prior to work beginning.

The Contractor may request to name a single Level II Foreman to oversee multiple construction activities on small bridge or culvert replacement projects. This request shall be approved by the Engineer prior to work beginning.

(C) *Certified Installers* - Provide at least one onsite, Level I Certified Installer for each of the following erosion and sediment control/stormwater crew:

- (1) Seeding and Mulching
- (2) Temporary Seeding
- (3) Temporary Mulching
- (4) Sodding
- (5) Silt fence or other perimeter erosion/sediment control device installations
- (6) Erosion control blanket installation
- (7) Hydraulic tackifier installation
- (8) Turbidity curtain installation
- (9) Rock ditch check/sediment dam installation

- (10) Ditch liner/matting installation
- (11) Inlet protection
- (12) Riprap placement
- (13) Stormwater BMP installations (such as but not limited to level spreaders, retention/detention devices)
- (14) Pipe installations within jurisdictional areas

If a Level I *Certified Installer* is not onsite, the Contractor may substitute a Level II Foreman for a Level I Installer, provided the Level II Foreman is not tasked to another crew requiring Level II Foreman oversight.

- (D) *Certified Designer* - Include the certification number of the Level III-B Certified Designer on the erosion and sediment control/stormwater component of all reclamation plans and if applicable, the certification number of the Level III-A Certified Designer on the design of the project erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan.

Preconstruction Meeting

Furnish the names of the *Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor*, *Certified Foremen*, *Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* and notify the Engineer of changes in certified personnel over the life of the contract within 2 days of change.

Ethical Responsibility

Any company performing work for the North Carolina Department of Transportation has the ethical responsibility to fully disclose any reprimand or dismissal of an employee resulting from improper testing or falsification of records.

Revocation or Suspension of Certification

Upon recommendation of the Chief Engineer to the certification entity, certification for *Supervisor*, *Certified Foremen*, *Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* may be revoked or suspended with the issuance of an *Immediate Corrective Action (ICA)*, *Notice of Violation (NOV)*, or *Cease and Desist Order* for erosion and sediment control/stormwater related issues.

The Chief Engineer may recommend suspension or permanent revocation of certification due to the following:

- (A) Failure to adequately perform the duties as defined within this certification provision.
- (B) Issuance of an ICA, NOV, or Cease and Desist Order.
- (C) Failure to fully perform environmental commitments as detailed within the permit conditions and specifications.
- (D) Demonstration of erroneous documentation or reporting techniques.
- (E) Cheating or copying another candidate's work on an examination.
- (F) Intentional falsification of records.
- (G) Directing a subordinate under direct or indirect supervision to perform any of the above actions.
- (H) Dismissal from a company for any of the above reasons.
- (I) Suspension or revocation of one's certification by another entity.

Suspension or revocation of a certification will be sent by certified mail to the certificant and the Corporate Head of the company that employs the certificant.

A certificant has the right to appeal any adverse action which results in suspension or permanent revocation of certification by responding, in writing, to the Chief Engineer within 10 calendar days after receiving notice of the proposed adverse action.

Chief Engineer
1536 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1536

Failure to appeal within 10 calendar days will result in the proposed adverse action becoming effective on the date specified on the certified notice. Failure to appeal within the time specified will result in a waiver of all future appeal rights regarding the adverse action taken. The certificant will not be allowed to perform duties associated with the certification during the appeal process.

The Chief Engineer will hear the appeal and make a decision within 7 days of hearing the appeal. Decision of the Chief Engineer will be final and will be made in writing to the certificant.

If a certification is temporarily suspended, the certificant shall pass any applicable written examination and any proficiency examination, at the conclusion of the specified suspension period, prior to having the certification reinstated.

Measurement and Payment

Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor, Certified Foremen, Certified Installers and Certified Designer will be incidental to the project for which no direct compensation will be made.

PROCEDURE FOR MONITORING BORROW PIT DISCHARGE:

(2-20-07) (Rev. 3-19-13)

105-16, 230, 801

SP1 G181

Water discharge from borrow pit sites shall not cause surface waters to exceed 50 NTUs (nephelometric turbidity unit) in streams not designated as trout waters and 10 NTUs in streams, lakes or reservoirs designated as trout waters. For lakes and reservoirs not designated as trout waters, the turbidity shall not exceed 25 NTUs. If the turbidity exceeds these levels due to natural background conditions, the existing turbidity level shall not be increased.

If during any operating day, the downstream water quality exceeds the standard, the Contractor shall do all of the following:

- (A) Either cease discharge or modify the discharge volume or turbidity levels to bring the downstream turbidity levels into compliance, or
- (B) Evaluate the upstream conditions to determine if the exceedance of the standard is due to natural background conditions. If the background turbidity measurements exceed the standard, operation of the pit and discharge can continue as long as the stream turbidity levels are not increased due to the discharge.

- (C) Measure and record the turbidity test results (time, date and sampler) at all defined sampling locations 30 minutes after startup and at a minimum, one additional sampling of all sampling locations during that 24-hour period in which the borrow pit is discharging.
- (D) Notify DWQ within 24 hours of any stream turbidity standard exceedances that are not brought into compliance.

During the Environmental Assessment required by Article 230-4 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*, the Contractor shall define the point at which the discharge enters into the State's surface waters and the appropriate sampling locations. Sampling locations shall include points upstream and downstream from the point at which the discharge enters these waters. Upstream sampling location shall be located so that it is not influenced by backwater conditions and represents natural background conditions. Downstream sampling location shall be located at the point where complete mixing of the discharge and receiving water has occurred.

The discharge shall be closely monitored when water from the dewatering activities is introduced into jurisdictional wetlands. Any time visible sedimentation (deposition of sediment) on the wetland surface is observed, the dewatering activity will be suspended until turbidity levels in the stilling basin can be reduced to a level where sediment deposition does not occur. Staining of wetland surfaces from suspended clay particles, occurring after evaporation or infiltration, does not constitute sedimentation. No activities shall occur in wetlands that adversely affect the functioning of a wetland. Visible sedimentation will be considered an indication of possible adverse impacts on wetland use.

The Engineer will perform independent turbidity tests on a random basis. These results will be maintained in a log within the project records. Records will include, at a minimum, turbidity test results, time, date and name of sampler. Should the Department's test results exceed those of the Contractor's test results, an immediate test shall be performed jointly with the results superseding the previous test results of both the Department and the Contractor.

The Contractor shall use the *NCDOT Turbidity Reduction Options for Borrow Pits Matrix*, available at http://www.ncdot.gov/doh/operations/dp_chief_eng/roadside/fieldops/downloads/Files/TurbidityReductionOptionSheet.pdf to plan, design, construct, and maintain BMPs to address water quality standards. Tier I Methods include stilling basins which are standard compensatory BMPs. Other Tier I methods are noncompensatory and shall be used when needed to meet the stream turbidity standards. Tier II Methods are also noncompensatory and are options that may be needed for protection of rare or unique resources or where special environmental conditions exist at the site which have led to additional requirements being placed in the DWQ's 401 Certifications and approval letters, Isolated Wetland Permits, Riparian Buffer Authorization or a DOT Reclamation Plan's Environmental Assessment for the specific site. Should the Contractor exhaust all Tier I Methods on a site exclusive of rare or unique resources or special environmental conditions, Tier II Methods may be required by regulators on a case by case basis per supplemental agreement.

The Contractor may use cation exchange capacity (CEC) values from proposed site borings to plan and develop the bid for the project. CEC values exceeding 15 milliequivalents per 100 grams of soil may indicate a high potential for turbidity and should be avoided when dewatering into surface water is proposed.

No additional compensation for monitoring borrow pit discharge will be paid.

EMPLOYMENT:

(11-15-11) (Rev. 1-17-12)

108, 102

SP1 G184

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-20, Subarticle 102-15(O), delete and replace with the following:

(O) Failure to restrict a former Department employee as prohibited by Article 108-5.

Page 1-65, Article 108-5 Character of Workmen, Methods, and Equipment, line 32, delete all of line 32, the first sentence of the second paragraph and the first word of the second sentence of the second paragraph.

STATE HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATOR TITLE CHANGE:

(9-18-12)

SP1 G185

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Replace all references to “State Highway Administrator” with “Chief Engineer”.

SUBLETTING OF CONTRACT:

(11-18-2014)

108-6

SP1 G186

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 1-66, Article 108-6 Subletting of Contract, line 37, add the following as the second sentence of the first paragraph:

All requests to sublet work shall be submitted within 30 days of the date of availability or prior to expiration of 20% of the contract time, whichever date is later, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

Page 1-67, Article 108-6 Subletting of Contract, line 7, add the following as the second sentence of the fourth paragraph:

Purchasing materials for subcontractors is not included in the percentage of work required to be performed by the Contractor. If the Contractor sublets items of work but elects to purchase material for the subcontractor, the value of the material purchased will be included in the total dollar amount considered to have been sublet.

MOBILIZATION:

(09-15-15)

800

SP1 G194

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 8-1, Subarticle 800-2 Measurement and Payment, add the following:

For projects that have a delayed availability date of 90 calendar days or more after contract execution, the first mobilization payment may be for the verified actual cost of paid bond premiums. This payment will only be made upon request by the contractor with supporting documentation including invoice and proof of payment. This payment will be limited to 1% of the amount bid for the contract and the subsequent mobilization payment will be reduced by an equal amount to follow the payment schedule as shown above. In no case will more than 5% of the amount bid for the contract be paid before the last partial pay estimate.

SITE WORK/CIVIL CONSTRUCTION**DESCRIPTION**

The work covered by this provision includes, but is not limited to, all elements of work covered by Sections 200, 210, 225, 230, 235, 250, 265, 270, 300, 310, 500, 520, 605, 609, 610, 620, 645, 654, 657, 700, 710, 801, 802, 815, 825, 848, 867, 1000, 1005, 1010, 1012, 1014, 1020, 1024, 1028, 1034, 1050, 1056, 1060, 1087, 1089, 1105, 1110, 1205, 1520, 1530, 1605, 1607, 1610, 1615, 1620, 1640, 1660, 1661, 1662 and 1665 of the *Standard Specifications*, except that the requirements of the above referenced sections pertaining to measurement and payment will not apply unless specific reference is made to such.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Perform the work in accordance with the applicable Sections of the *Standard Specifications*.

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

All work under this provision will incidental to the Lump Sum Bid Price.

CONSTRUCTION SURVEYING:

The Contractor shall provide all construction layout, surveying, stakeout, supplemental surveying and engineering necessary for the proper control of construction operations in accordance with the most current version of the NCDOT's Manual for Construction Layout. Construction surveying shall be in accordance with NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, Section 801. Any existing property boundary markers that are disturbed shall be reset as shown on the plans or as directed by the Engineer.

CLEARING AND GRUBBING - METHOD II:

(9-17-02) (Rev.8-18-15)

200

SP2 R02A

Perform clearing on this project to the limits established by Method "II" shown on Standard Drawing No. 200.02 of the *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings*. Conventional clearing methods may be used except where permit drawings or conditions have been included in the proposal which require certain areas to be cleared by hand methods.

BURNING RESTRICTIONS:

(7-1-95)

200, 210, 215

SP2 R05

Open burning is not permitted on any portion of the right-of-way limits established for this project. Do not burn the clearing, grubbing or demolition debris designated for disposal and generated from the project at locations within the project limits, off the project limits or at any waste or borrow sites in this county. Dispose of the clearing, grubbing and demolition debris by means other than burning, according to state or local rules and regulations.

DEMOLITION OF BUILDINGS AND APPURTENANCES:

(1-1-02) (Rev. 1-17-12)

210

SP2 R10

Demolish the buildings and appurtenances as shown on demolition plans in accordance with Section 210 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*:

SHOULDER AND FILL SLOPE MATERIAL:

(5-21-02)

235, 560

SP2 R45 A

Description

Perform the required shoulder and slope construction for this project in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 560 and Section 235 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

Measurement and Payment

Where the material has been obtained from an authorized stockpile or from a borrow source and *Borrow Excavation* is not included in the contract, no direct payment will be made for this work, as the cost of this work will be part of the work being paid at the contract lump sum price for *Grading*. If *Borrow Excavation* is included in this contract and the material has been obtained from an authorized stockpile or from a borrow source, measurement and payment will be as provided in Section 230 of the *2012 Standard Specifications* for *Borrow Excavation*.

PIPE INSTALLATION:

(11-20-12) (Rev. 8-18-15)

300

SP3 R01

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 3-1, Article 300-2, Materials, line 15, in the materials table, replace “Flowable Fill” and “Geotextiles” with the following:

Item	Section
Flowable Fill, Excavatable	1000-6
Grout, Type 2	1003
Geotextiles, Type 4	1056

Page 3-1, Article 300-2, Materials, lines 23-24, replace sentence with the following:

Provide foundation conditioning geotextile and geotextile to wrap pipe joints in accordance with Section 1056 for Type 4 geotextile.

Page 3-3, Subarticle 300-6(A), Rigid Pipe, line 2, in the first paragraph, replace “an approved non-shrink grout.” with “grout.” and line 4, in the second paragraph, replace “filtration geotextile” with “geotextile”.

Page 3-3, Article 300-7, Backfilling, lines 37-38, in the first and second sentences of the fifth paragraph, replace “Excavatable flowable fill” with “Flowable fill”.

ASPHALT PAVEMENTS - SUPERPAVE:

(6-19-12) (Rev. 8-16-16)

605, 609, 610, 650

SP6 R01

Revise the 2012 *Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 6-3, Article 605-7, APPLICATION RATES AND TEMPERATURES, replace this article, including Table 605-1, with the following:

Apply tack coat uniformly across the existing surface at target application rates shown in Table 605-1.

TABLE 605-1 APPLICATION RATES FOR TACK COAT	
Existing Surface	Target Rate (gal/sy)
	Emulsified Asphalt
New Asphalt	0.04 ± 0.01
Oxidized or Milled Asphalt	0.06 ± 0.01
Concrete	0.08 ± 0.01

Apply tack coat at a temperature within the ranges shown in Table 605-2. Tack coat shall not be overheated during storage, transport or at application.

TABLE 605-2 APPLICATION TEMPERATURE FOR TACK COAT	
Asphalt Material	Temperature Range
Asphalt Binder, Grade PG 64-22	350 - 400°F
Emulsified Asphalt, Grade RS-1H	130 - 160°F
Emulsified Asphalt, Grade CRS-1	130 - 160°F
Emulsified Asphalt, Grade CRS-1H	130 - 160°F
Emulsified Asphalt, Grade HFMS-1	130 - 160°F
Emulsified Asphalt, Grade CRS-2	130 - 160°F

Page 6-6, Subarticle 607-5(A), Milled Asphalt Pavement, line 25, add the following to the end of the paragraph:

Areas to be paid under these items include mainline, turn lanes, shoulders, and other areas milled in conjunction with the mainline and any additional equipment necessary to remove pavement in the area of manholes, water valves, curb, gutter and other obstructions.

Page 6-6, Subarticle 607-5(C), Incidental Milling, lines 42-48, replace the paragraph with the following:

Incidental Milling to be paid will be the actual number of square yards of surface milled where the Contractor is required to mill butt joints, irregular areas and intersections milled as a separate operation from mainline milling and re-mill areas that are not due to the Contractor's negligence whose length is less than 100 feet. Measurement will be made as provided in Subarticle 607-5(A) for each cut the Contractor is directed to perform. Where the Contractor elects to make multiple cuts to achieve the final depth, no additional measurement will be made. Compensation will be made at the contract unit price per square yard for *Incidental Milling*.

Page 6-7, Article 609-3, FIELD VERIFICATION OF MIXTURE AND JOB MIX FORMULA ADJUSTMENTS, lines 35-37, delete the second sentence of the second paragraph.

Page 6-18, Article 610-1 DESCRIPTION, lines 40-41, delete the last sentence of the last paragraph.

Page 6-19, Subarticle 610-3(A), Mix Design-General, line 5, add the following as the first paragraph:

Warm mix asphalt (WMA) is allowed for use at the Contractor's option in accordance with the NCDOT Approved Products List for WMA Technologies available at:

<https://connect.ncdot.gov/resources/Materials/MaterialsResources/Warm%20Mix%20Asphalt%20Approved%20List.pdf>

Page 6-20, Subarticle 610-3(C), Job Mix Formula (JMF), lines 47-48, replace the last sentence of the third paragraph with the following:

The JMF mix temperature shall be within the ranges shown in Table 610-1 unless otherwise approved.

Page 6-21, Subarticle 610-3(C) Job Mix Formula (JMF), replace Table 610-1 with the following:

TABLE 610-1 MIXING TEMPERATURE AT THE ASPHALT PLANT	
Binder Grade	JMF Mix Temperature
PG 58-28; PG 64-22	250 - 290°F
PG 70-22	275- 305°F
PG 76-22	300- 325°F

Page 6-21, Subarticle 610-3(C) Job Mix Formula (JMF), lines 1-2, in the first sentence of the first paragraph, delete "and compaction". Lines 4-7, delete the second paragraph and replace with the following:

When RAS is used, the JMF mix temperature shall be established at 275°F or higher.

Page 6-22, Article 610-4, WEATHER, TEMPERATURE AND SEASONAL LIMITATIONS FOR PRODUCING AND PLACING ASPHALT MIXTURES, lines 15-17, replace the second sentence of the first paragraph with the following:

Do not place asphalt material when the air or surface temperatures, measured at the location of the paving operation away from artificial heat, do not meet Table 610-5.

Page 6-23, Article 610-4, WEATHER, TEMPERATURE AND SEASONAL LIMITATIONS FOR PRODUCING AND PLACING ASPHALT MIXTURES, replace Table 610-5 with the following:

TABLE 610-5 PLACEMENT TEMPERATURES FOR ASPHALT	
Asphalt Concrete Mix Type	Minimum Surface and Air Temperature
B25.0B, C	35°F
I19.0B, C, D	35°F
SF9.5A, S9.5B	40°F ^A
S9.5C, S12.5C	45°F ^A
S9.5D, S12.5D	50°F

- A.** For the final layer of surface mixes containing recycled asphalt shingles (RAS), the minimum surface and air temperature shall be 50°F.

Page 6-23, Subarticle 610-5(A), General, lines 33-34, replace the last sentence of the third paragraph with the following:

Produce the mixture at the asphalt plant within ± 25 °F of the JMF mix temperature. The temperature of the mixture, when discharged from the mixer, shall not exceed 350°F.

Page 6-26, Article 610-7, HAULING OF ASPHALT MIXTURE, lines 22-23, in the fourth sentence of the first paragraph replace “so as to overlap the top of the truck bed and” with “to”. Line 28, in the last paragraph, replace “+15 °F to -25 °F of the specified JMF temperature.” with “ ± 25 °F of the specified JMF mix temperature.”

Page 6-26, Article 610-8, SPREADING AND FINISHING, line 34, add the following new paragraph:

As referenced in Section 9.6.3 of the *HMA/QMS Manual*, use the automatic screed controls on the paver to control the longitudinal profile. Where approved by the Engineer, the Contractor has the option to use either a fixed or mobile string line.

Page 6-29, Article 610-13, FINAL SURFACE TESTING AND ACCEPTANCE, line 39, add the following after the first sentence in the first paragraph:

Smoothness acceptance testing using the inertial profiler is not required on ramps, loops and turn lanes.

Page 6-30, Subarticle 610-13(A), Option 1 – Inertial Profiler, lines 15-16, replace the fourth sentence of the fourth paragraph with the following:

The interval at which relative profile elevations are reported shall be 2”.

Page 6-30, Subarticle 610-13(A), Option 1 – Inertial Profiler, lines 25-28, replace the ninth paragraph with the following:

Operate the profiler at any speed as per the manufacturer’s recommendations to collect valid data.

Page 6-30, Subarticle 610-13(A), Option 1 – Inertial Profiler, lines 30-31, delete the third sentence of the tenth paragraph.

Page 6-31, Subarticle 610-13(A), Option 1 – Inertial Profiler, lines 11-13, replace the first sentence of the third paragraph with the following:

After testing, transfer the profile data from the profiler portable computer's hard drive to a write once storage media (Flash drive, USB, DVD-R or CD-R) or electronic media approved by the Engineer.

Page 6-31, Subarticle 610-13(A), Option 1 – Inertial Profiler, lines 17-18, replace the first sentence of the fourth paragraph with the following:

Submit a report with the documentation and electronic data of the evaluation for each section to the Engineer within 10 days after completion of the smoothness testing. The report shall be in the tabular format for each 0.10 segment or a portion thereof with a summary of the MRI values and the localized roughness areas including corresponding project station numbers or acceptable reference points. Calculate the pay adjustments for all segments in accordance with the formulas in Sections (1) and (2) shown below. The Engineer shall review and approval all pay adjustments unless corrective action is required.

Page 6-31, Subarticle 610-13(A)(1), Acceptance for New Construction, lines 36-37, replace the third paragraph with the following:

The price adjustment will apply to each 0.10-mile section or prorated for a portion thereof, based on the Mean Roughness Index (MRI), the average IRI values from both wheel paths.

Page 6-32, Subarticle 610-13(A)(2), Localized Roughness, lines 12-16, replace the first paragraph with the following:

Areas of localized roughness shall be identified through the “Smoothness Assurance Module (SAM)” provided in the ProVAL software. Use the SAM report to optimize repair strategies by analyzing the measurements from profiles collected using inertial profilers. The ride quality threshold for localized roughness shall be 165 in/mile for any sections that are 15 ft. to 100 ft. in length at the continuous short interval of 25 ft. Submit a continuous roughness report to identify each section with project station numbers or reference points outside the threshold and identify all localized roughness, with the signature of the Operator included with the submitted IRI trace and electronic files.

Page 6-32, Subarticle 610-13(A)(2), Localized Roughness, line 21, add the following new paragraph: If the Engineer does not require corrective action, the pay adjustment for each area of localized roughness shall be based on the following formula:

$$PA = (165 - LR\#) 5$$

Where:

PA	=	Pay Adjustment (dollars)
LR#	=	The Localized Roughness number determined from SAM report for the ride quality threshold

Page 6-41, Subarticle 650-3(B), Mix Design Criteria, replace Table 650-1 with the following:

TABLE 650-1 OGAFC GRADATION CRITERIA			
Grading Requirements	Total Percent Passing		
<i>Sieve Size (mm)</i>	<i>Type FC-1</i>	<i>Type FC-1 Modified</i>	<i>Type FC-2 Modified</i>
19.0	-	-	100
12.5	100	100	80 - 100
9.50	75 - 100	75 - 100	55 - 80
4.75	25 - 45	25 - 45	15 - 30
2.36	5 - 15	5 - 15	5 - 15
0.075	1.0 - 3.0	1.0 - 3.0	2.0 - 4.0

ASPHALT BINDER CONTENT OF ASPHALT PLANT MIXES:

(11-21-00) (Rev. 7-17-12)

609

SP6 R15

The approximate asphalt binder content of the asphalt concrete plant mixtures used on this project will be as follows:

Asphalt Concrete Base Course	Type B 25.0__	4.4%
Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course	Type I 19.0__	4.8%
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course	Type S 4.75A	6.8%
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course	Type SA-1	6.8%
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course	Type SF 9.5A	6.7%
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course	Type S 9.5__	6.0%
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course	Type S 12.5__	5.6%

The actual asphalt binder content will be established during construction by the Engineer within the limits established in the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

ASPHALT PLANT MIXTURES:

(7-1-95)

609

SP6 R20

Place asphalt concrete base course material in trench sections with asphalt pavement spreaders made for the purpose or with other equipment approved by the Engineer.

PRICE ADJUSTMENT - ASPHALT BINDER FOR PLANT MIX:

(11-21-00)

620

SP6 R25

Price adjustments for asphalt binder for plant mix will be made in accordance with Section 620 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

The base price index for asphalt binder for plant mix is \$ **366.00** per ton.

This base price index represents an average of F.O.B. selling prices of asphalt binder at supplier's terminals on **August 1, 2017**.

FINAL SURFACE TESTING NOT REQUIRED:

(5-18-04) (Rev. 2-16-16)

610

SP6 R45

Final surface testing is not required on this project in accordance with Section 610-13, *Final Surface Testing and Acceptance*.

ASPHALT CONCRETE SURFACE COURSE COMPACTION:

(7-1-95) (Rev. 8-21-12)

SP6 R49R

Compact the asphalt surface course on this project in accordance with Subarticle 610-9 of the *2012 Standard Specifications* and the following provision:

Perform the first rolling with a steel wheel roller followed by rolling with a self-propelled pneumatic tired roller with the final rolling by a steel wheel roller.

DETECTABLE WARNINGS FOR PROPOSED CURB RAMPS:

(6-15-10) (Rev. 8-16-11)

848

SP8 R126

Description

Construct detectable warnings consisting of integrated raised truncated domes on proposed concrete curb ramps in accordance with the *2012 Standard Specifications*, plan details, the requirements of the *28 CFR Part 36 ADA Standards for Accessible Design* and this provision.

Materials

Detectable warning for proposed curb ramps shall consist of integrated raised truncated domes. The description, size and spacing shall conform to Section 848 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

Use material for detectable warning systems as shown herein. Material and coating specifications must be stated in the Manufacturers Type 3 Certification and all Detectable Warning systems must be on the NCDOT Approved Products List.

Install detectable warnings created from one of the following materials: precast concrete blocks or bricks, clay paving brick, gray or ductile iron castings, mild steel, stainless steel, and engineered plastics, rubber or composite tile. Only one material type for detectable warning will be permitted per project, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

- (A) Detectable Warnings shall consist of a base with integrated raised truncated domes, and when constructed of precast concrete they shall conform to the material requirements of Article 848-2 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.
- (B) Detectable Warnings shall consist of a base with integrated raised truncated domes, and may be comprised of other materials including, but not limited, to clay paving brick, gray iron or ductile iron castings, mild steel, stainless steel, and engineered plastics, rubber or composite tile, which are cast into the concrete of the curb ramps. The material shall have an integral color throughout the thickness of the material. The detectable warning shall include fasteners or anchors for attachment in the concrete and shall be furnished as a system from the manufacturer.

Prior to installation, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer assembling instructions from the manufacturer for each type of system used in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*. The system shall be furnished as a kit containing all consumable materials and consumable tools, required for the application. They shall be capable of being affixed to or anchored in the concrete curb ramp, including green concrete (concrete that has set but not appreciably hardened). The system shall be solvent free and contain no volatile organic compounds (VOC). The static coefficient of friction shall be 0.8 or greater when measured on top of the truncated domes and when measured between the domes in accordance with ASTM C1028 (dry and wet). The system shall be resistant to deterioration due to exposure to sunlight,

water, salt or adverse weather conditions and impervious to degradation by motor fuels, lubricants and antifreeze.

- (C) When steel or gray iron or ductile iron casting products are provided, only products that meet the requirements of Subarticle 106-1(B) of the *2012 Standard Specifications* may be used. Submit to the Engineer a Type 6 Certification, catalog cuts and installation procedures at least 30 days prior to installation for all.

Construction Methods

- (A) Prior to placing detectable warnings in proposed concrete curb ramps, adjust the existing subgrade to the proper grade and in accordance with Article 848-3 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.
- (B) Install all detectable warning in proposed concrete curb ramps in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Measurement and Payment

Detectable Warnings installed for construction of proposed curb ramps will not be paid for separately. Such payment will be included in the price bid for *Concrete Curb Ramps*.

REMOVE AND REPLACE CURB RAMPS:

(8-16-11)(Rev. 2-17-15)

848

SP8 R127

Description

Remove existing curb ramps and curb and gutter and replace with new curb ramps as directed by the Engineer. Construct new curb ramps in accordance with Section 848 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*. Construct detectable warnings consisting of integrated raised truncated domes on curb ramps in accordance with the *2012 Standard Specifications*, plan details, the requirements of the *28 CFR Part 36 ADA Standards for Accessible Design* and this provision.

Materials

Detectable warning for curb ramps shall consist of integrated raised truncated domes. The description, size and spacing shall conform to Section 848 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

Use material for detectable warning systems as shown herein. Material and coating specifications must be stated in the Manufacturers Type 3 Certification and all Detectable Warning systems must be on the NCDOT Approved Products List.

Install detectable warnings created from one of the following materials: precast concrete blocks or bricks, clay paving brick, gray or ductile iron castings, mild steel, stainless steel, and engineered plastics, rubber or composite tile. Only one material type for detectable warning will be permitted per project, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

- (A) Detectable Warnings shall consist of a base with integrated raised truncated domes, and when constructed of precast concrete they shall conform to the material requirements of Article 848-2 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

- (B) Detectable Warnings shall consist of a base with integrated raised truncated domes, and may be comprised of other materials including, but not limited, to clay paving brick, gray iron or ductile iron castings, mild steel, stainless steel, and engineered plastics, rubber or composite tile, which are cast into the concrete of the curb ramps. The material shall have an integral color throughout the thickness of the material. The detectable warning shall include fasteners or anchors for attachment in the concrete and shall be furnished as a system from the manufacturer.

Prior to installation, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer assembling instructions from the manufacturer for each type of system used in accordance with Article 105-2 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*. The system shall be furnished as a kit containing all consumable materials and consumable tools, required for the application. They shall be capable of being affixed to or anchored in the concrete curb ramp, including green concrete (concrete that has set but not appreciably hardened). The system shall be solvent free and contain no volatile organic compounds (VOC). The static coefficient of friction shall be 0.8 or greater when measured on top of the truncated domes and when measured between the domes in accordance with ASTM C1028 (dry and wet). The system shall be resistant to deterioration due to exposure to sunlight, water, salt or adverse weather conditions and impervious to degradation by motor fuels, lubricants and antifreeze.

- (C) When steel or gray iron or ductile iron casting products are provided, only products that meet the requirements of Subarticle 106-1(B) of the *2012 Standard Specifications* may be used. Submit to the Engineer a Type 6 Certification, catalog cuts and installation procedures at least 30 days prior to installation for all.

Construction Methods

- (A) Prior to placing detectable warnings in concrete curb ramps, adjust the existing subgrade to the proper grade and in accordance with Article 848-3 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.
- (B) Install all detectable warning in concrete curb ramps in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Measurement and Payment

Detectable Warnings installed where curb ramps are to be removed and replaced will not be paid separately. Such payment will be included in the price bid for *Remove and Replace Curb Ramps*.

Remove and Replace Curb Ramps will be measured and paid in units of each. Such price includes, but is not limited to, excavating and backfilling, sawing the existing sidewalk or driveway and furnishing and installing truncated domes. Removal and disposal of existing curb ramps will be incidental to the work performed.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Remove and Replace Curb Ramps	Each

STREET SIGNS AND MARKERS AND ROUTE MARKERS:

(7-1-95)

900

SP9 R02

Move any existing street signs, markers, and route markers out of the construction limits of the project and install the street signs and markers and route markers so that they will be visible to the traveling public if there is sufficient right of way for these signs and markers outside of the construction limits.

Near the completion of the project and when so directed by the Engineer, move the signs and markers and install them in their proper location in regard to the finished pavement of the project.

Stockpile any signs or markers that cannot be relocated due to lack of right of way, or any signs and markers that will no longer be applicable after the construction of the project, at locations directed by the Engineer for removal by others.

The Contractor shall be responsible to the owners for any damage to any street signs and markers or route markers during the above described operations.

No direct payment will be made for relocating, reinstalling, and/or stockpiling the street signs and markers and route markers as such work shall be considered incidental to other work being paid for by the various items in the contract.

MATERIALS:

(2-21-12) (Rev. 11-22-16)

1000, 1002, 1005, 1016, 1018, 1024, 1050, 1074, 1078, 1080, 1081, 1086, 1084, 1087, 1092

SP10 R01

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Page 10-1, Article 1000-1, DESCRIPTION, lines 9-10, replace the last sentence of the first paragraph with the following:

Type IL, IP, IS or IT blended cement may be used instead of Portland cement.

Page 10-1, Article 1000-1, DESCRIPTION, line 14, add the following:

If any change is made to the mix design, submit a new mix design (with the exception of an approved pozzolan source change).

If any major change is made to the mix design, also submit new test results showing the mix design conforms to the criteria. Define a major change to the mix design as:

- (1) A source change in coarse aggregate, fine aggregate or cement.
- (2) A pozzolan class or type change (e.g. Class F fly ash to Class C fly ash).
- (3) A quantitative change in coarse aggregate (applies to an increase or decrease greater than 5%), fine aggregate (applies to an increase or decrease greater than 5%), water (applies to an increase only), cement (applies to a decrease only), or pozzolan (applies to an increase or decrease greater than 5%).

Use materials which do not produce a mottled appearance through rusting or other staining of the finished concrete surface.

Page 10-1, Article 1000-2, MATERIALS, line 16; Page 10-8, Subarticle 1000-7(A), Materials, line 8; and Page 10-18, Article 1002-2, MATERIALS, line 9, add the following to the table of item references:

Item	Section
Type IL Blended Cement	1024-1

Page 10-1, Subarticle 1000-3(A), Composition and Design, lines 25-27, replace the second paragraph with the following:

Fly ash may be substituted for cement in the mix design up to 30% at a rate of 1.0 lb of fly ash to each pound of cement replaced.

Page 10-2, Subarticle 1000-3(A), Composition and Design, lines 12-21, delete the third paragraph through the sixth paragraph beginning with “If any change is made to the mix design, submit...” through “...(applies to a decrease only).”

Page 10-5, Table 1000-1, REQUIREMENTS FOR CONCRETE, replace with the following:

TABLE 1000-1 REQUIREMENTS FOR CONCRETE											
Class of Concrete	Min. Comp. Strength at 28 days	Maximum Water-Cement Ratio				Consistency Max. Slump		Cement Content			
		Air-Entrained Concrete		Non Air- Entrained Concrete		Vibrated	Non- Vibrated	Vibrated		Non- Vibrated	
		Rounded Aggregate	Angular Aggre- gate	Rounded Aggregate	Angular Aggre- gate			Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
<i>Units</i>	<i>psi</i>					<i>inch</i>	<i>inch</i>	<i>lb/cy</i>	<i>lb/cy</i>	<i>lb/cy</i>	<i>lb/cy</i>
AA	4,500	0.381	0.426	-	-	3.5	-	639	715	-	-
AA Slip Form	4,500	0.381	0.426	-	-	1.5	-	639	715	-	-
Drilled Pier	4,500	-	-	0.450	0.450	-	5-7 dry 7-9 wet	-	-	640	800
A	3,000	0.488	0.532	0.550	0.594	3.5	4	564	-	602	-
B	2,500	0.488	0.567	0.559	0.630	1.5 machine- placed 2.5 hand- placed	4	508	-	545	-
Sand Light- weight	4,500	-	0.420	-	-	4	-	715	-	-	-
Latex Modified	3,000 7 day	0.400	0.400	-	-	6	-	658	-	-	-
Flowable Fill excavatable	150 max. at 56 days	as needed	as needed	as needed	as needed	-	Flow- able	-	-	40	100
Flowable Fill non-excavatable	125	as needed	as needed	as needed	as needed	-	Flow- able	-	-	100	as needed
Pavement	4,500 design, field 650 flexural, design only	0.559	0.559	-	-	1.5 slip form 3.0 hand place	-	526	-	-	-
Precast	See Table 1077-1	as needed	as needed	-	-	6	as needed	as needed	as needed	as needed	as needed
Prestress	per contract	See Table 1078-1	See Table 1078-1	-	-	8	-	564	as needed	-	-

Page 10-6, Subarticle 1000-4(I), Use of Fly Ash, lines 36-2, replace the first paragraph with the following:

Fly ash may be substituted for cement in the mix design up to 30% at a rate of 1.0 lb of fly ash to each pound of cement replaced. Use Table 1000-1 to determine the maximum allowable water-cementitious material (cement + fly ash) ratio for the classes of concrete listed.

Page 10-7, Table 1000-3, MAXIMUM WATER-CEMENTITIOUS MATERIAL RATIO, delete the table.

Page 10-7, Article 1000-5, HIGH EARLY STRENGTH PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE, lines 30-31, delete the second sentence of the third paragraph.

Page 10-19, Article 1002-3, SHOTCRETE FOR TEMPORARY SUPPORT OF EXCAVATIONS, line 30, add the following at the end of Section 1002:

(H) Handling and Storing Test Panels

Notify the Area Materials Engineer when preconstruction or production test panels are made within 24 hours of shooting the panels. Field cure and protect test panels from damage in accordance with ASTM C1140 until the Department transports panels to the Materials and Tests Regional Laboratory for coring.

Page 10-23, Table 1005-1, AGGREGATE GRADATION-COARSE AGGREGATE, replace with the following:

TABLE 1005-1 AGGREGATE GRADATION - COARSE AGGREGATE													
Percentage of Total by Weight Passing													
Sid. Size #	2"	1 1/2"	1"	3/4"	1/2"	3/8"	#4	#8	#10	#16	#40	#200	Remarks
4	100	90-100	20-55	0-15	-	0-5	-	-	-	-	-	A	Asphalt Plant Mix
467M	100	95-100	-	35-70	-	0-30	0-5	-	-	-	-	A	Asphalt Plant Mix
5	-	100	90-100	20-55	0-10	0-5	-	-	-	-	-	A	AST, Sediment Control Stone
57	-	100	95-100	-	25-60	-	0-10	0-5	-	-	-	A	AST, Structural Concrete, Shoulder Drain Stone, Sediment Control Stone
57M	-	100	95-100	-	25-45	-	0-10	0-5	-	-	-	A	AST, Concrete Pavement
6M	-	-	100	90-100	20-55	0-20	0-8	-	-	-	-	A	AST
67	-	-	100	90-100	-	20-55	0-10	0-5	-	-	-	A	Asphalt Plant Mix, AST, Structural Concrete
78M	-	-	-	100	98-100	75-100	20-45	0-15	-	-	-	A	Asphalt Plant Mix, AST, Structural Concrete, Weep Hole Drains
14M	-	-	-	-	100	98-100	35-70	5-20	-	0-8	-	A	Asphalt Plant Mix, AST, Structural Concrete, Weep Hole Drains
9M	-	-	-	-	100	98-100	85-100	10-40	-	0-10	-	A	AST
ABC	-	100	75-97	-	55-80	-	35-55	-	25-45	-	14-30	4-12 ^B	Aggregate Base Course, Aggregate Stabilization
ABC(M)	-	100	75-100	-	45-79	-	20-40	-	0-25	-	-	0-12 ^B	Maintenance Stabilization
Light-weight ^C	-	-	-	-	100	80-100	5-40	0-20	-	0-10	-	0-2.5	AST

- A. See Subarticle 1005-4(A).
- B. See Subarticle 1005-4(B).
- C. For Lightweight Aggregate used in Structural Concrete, see Subarticle 1014-2(E)(6).

Page 10-39, Article 1016-3, CLASSIFICATIONS, lines 27-32, replace with the following:

Select material is clean, unweathered durable, blasted rock material obtained from an approved source. While no specific gradation is required, the below criteria will be used to evaluate the materials for visual acceptance by the Engineer:

- (A) At least 50% of the rock has a diameter of from 1.5 ft to 3 ft,
- (B) 30% of the rock ranges in size from 2" to 1.5 ft in diameter, and
- (C) Not more than 20% of the rock is less than 2" in diameter. No rippable rock will be permitted.

Page 10-40, Tables 1018-1 and 1018-2, PIEDMONT, WESTERN AND COASTAL AREA CRITERIA FOR ACCEPTANCE OF BORROW MATERIAL, under second column in both tables, replace second row with the following:

Acceptable, but not to be used in the top 3 ft of embankment or backfill

Page 10-46, Article 1024-1, PORTLAND CEMENT, line 33, add the following as the ninth paragraph:

Use Type IL blended cement that meets AASHTO M 240, except that the limestone content is limited to between 5 and 12% by weight and the constituents shall be interground. Class F fly ash can replace a portion of Type IL blended cement and shall be replaced as outlined in Subarticle 1000-4(I) for Portland cement. For mixes that contain cement with alkali content between 0.6% and 1.0% and for mixes that contain a reactive aggregate documented by the Department, use a pozzolan in the amount shown in Table 1024-1.

Page 10-46, Table 1024-1, POZZOLANS FOR USE IN PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE, replace with the following:

Pozzolan	Rate
Class F Fly Ash	20% - 30% by weight of required cement content with 1.0 lb Class F fly ash per lb of cement replaced
Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag	35%-50% by weight of required cement content with 1.0 lb slag per lb of cement replaced
Microsilica	4%-8% by weight of required cement content with 1.0 lb microsilica per lb of cement replaced

Page 10-47, Subarticle 1024-3(B), Approved Sources, lines 16-18, replace the second sentence of the second paragraph with the following:

Tests shall be performed by AASHTO's designated National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP) laboratory for concrete admixture testing.

Page 10-65, Article 1050-1, GENERAL, line 41, replace the first sentence with the following:

All fencing material and accessories shall meet Section 106.

Page 10-115, Subarticle 1074-7(B), Gray Iron Castings, lines 10-11, replace the first two sentences with the following:

Supply gray iron castings meeting all facets of AASHTO M 306 excluding proof load. Proof load testing will only be required for new casting designs during the design process, and conformance to M306 loading (40,000 lb.) will be required only when noted on the design documents.

Page 10-126, Table 1078-1, REQUIREMENTS FOR CONCRETE, replace with the following:

Property	28 Day Design Compressive Strength 6,000 psi or less	28 Day Design Compressive Strength greater than 6,000 psi
Maximum Water/Cementitious Material Ratio	0.45	0.40
Maximum Slump without HRWR	3.5"	3.5"
Maximum Slump with HRWR	8"	8"
Air Content (upon discharge into forms)	5 + 2%	5 + 2%

Page 10-151, Article 1080-4, INSPECTION AND SAMPLING, lines 18-22, replace (B), (C) and (D) with the following:

- (B) At least 3 panels prepared as specified in 5.5.10 of AASHTO M 300, Bullet Hole Immersion Test.
- (C) At least 3 panels of 4"x6"x1/4" for the Elcometer Adhesion Pull Off Test, ASTM D4541.
- (D) A certified test report from an approved independent testing laboratory for the Salt Fog Resistance Test, Cyclic Weathering Resistance Test, and Bullet Hole Immersion Test as specified in AASHTO M 300.
- (E) A certified test report from an approved independent testing laboratory that the product has been tested for slip coefficient and meets AASHTO M253, Class B.

Page 10-161, Subarticle 1081-1(A), Classifications, lines 29-33, delete first 3 sentences of the description for Type 2 and replace with the following:

Type 2 - A low-modulus, general-purpose adhesive used in epoxy mortar repairs. It may be used to patch spalled, cracked or broken concrete where vibration, shock or expansion and contraction are expected.

Page 10-162, Subarticle 1081-1(A), Classifications, lines 4-7, delete the second and third sentences of the description for Type 3A. **Lines 16-22,** delete Types 6A, 6B and 6C.

Page 10-162, Subarticle 1081-1(B), Requirements, lines 26-30, replace the second paragraph with the following:

For epoxy resin systems used for embedding dowel bars, threaded rods, rebar, anchor bolts and other fixtures in hardened concrete, the manufacturer shall submit test results showing that the bonding system will obtain 125% of the specified required yield strength of the fixture. Furnish certification that, for the particular bolt grade, diameter and embedment depth required, the anchor system will not fail by adhesive failure and that there is no movement of the anchor bolt. For certification and anchorage, use

3,000 psi as the minimum Portland cement concrete compressive strength used in this test. Use adhesives that meet Section 1081.

List the properties of the adhesive on the container and include density, minimum and maximum temperature application, setting time, shelf life, pot life, shear strength and compressive strength.

Page 10-163, Table 1081-1, PROPERTIES OF MIXED EPOXY RESIN SYSTEMS, replace with the following:

TABLE 1081-1 PROPERTIES OF MIXED EPOXY RESIN SYSTEMS							
Property	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 3A	Type 4A	Type 4B	Type 5
Viscosity-Poises at 77°F ± 2°F	Gel	10-30	25-75	Gel	40-150	40-150	1-6
Spindle No.	-	3	4	--	4	4	2
Speed (RPM)	-	20	20	--	10	10	50
Pot Life (Minutes)	20-50	30-60	20-50	5-50	40-80	40-80	20-60
Minimum Tensile Strength at 7 days (psi)	1,500	2,000	4,000	4,000	1,500	1,500	4,000
Tensile Elongation at 7 days (%)	30 min.	30 min.	2-5	2-5	5-15	5-15	2-5
Min. Compressive Strength of 2" mortar cubes at 24 hours	3,000 (Neat)	4,000-	6,000	6,000 (Neat)	3,000	3,000	6,000
Min. Compressive Strength of 2" mortar cubes at 7 days	5,000 (Neat)	-	-	-	-	5,000	-
Maximum Water Absorption (%)	1.5	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.0	1.0	1.0
Min. Bond Strength Slant Shear Test at 14 days (psi)	1,500	1,500	2,000	2,000	1,500	1,500	1,500

Page 10-164, Subarticle 1081-1(E), Prequalification, lines 31-33, replace the second sentence of the first paragraph with the following:

Manufacturers choosing to supply material for Department jobs must submit an application through the Value Management Unit with the following information for each type and brand name:

Page 10-164, Subarticle 1081-1(E)(3), line 37, replace with the following:

(3) Type of the material in accordance with Articles 1081-1 and 1081-4,

Page 10-165, Subarticle 1081-1(E)(6), line 1, in the first sentence of the first paragraph replace “AASHTO M 237” with “the specifications”.

Page 10-165, Subarticle 1081-1(E), Prequalification, line 9-10, delete the second sentence of the last paragraph.

Page 10-165, Subarticle 1081-1(F), Acceptance, line 14, in the first sentence of the first paragraph replace “Type 1” with “Type 3”.

Page 10-169, Subarticle 1081-3(G), Anchor Bolt Adhesives, delete this subarticle.

Page 10-170, Article 1081-3, HOT BITUMEN, line 9, add the following at the end of Section 1081:

1081-4 EPOXY RESIN ADHESIVE FOR BONDING TRAFFIC MARKINGS

(A) General

This section covers epoxy resin adhesive for bonding traffic markers to pavement surfaces.

(B) Classification

The types of epoxies and their uses are as shown below:

Type I – Rapid Setting, High Viscosity, Epoxy Adhesive. This type of adhesive provides rapid adherence to traffic markers to the surface of pavement.

Type II – Standard Setting, High Viscosity, Epoxy Adhesive. This type of adhesive is recommended for adherence of traffic markers to pavement surfaces when rapid set is not required.

Type III – Rapid Setting, Low Viscosity, Water Resistant, Epoxy Adhesive. This type of rapid setting adhesive, due to its low viscosity, is appropriate only for use with embedded traffic markers.

Type IV – Standard Set Epoxy for Blade Deflecting-Type Plowable Markers.

(C) Requirements

Epoxies shall conform to the requirements set forth in AASHTO M 237.

(D) Prequalification

Refer to Subarticle 1081-1(E).

(E) Acceptance

Refer to Subarticle 1081-1(F).

Page 10-173, Article 1084-2, STEEL SHEET PILES, lines 37-38, replace first paragraph with the following:

Steel sheet piles detailed for permanent applications shall be hot rolled and meet ASTM A572 or ASTM A690 unless otherwise required by the plans. Steel sheet piles shall be coated as required by the plans. Galvanized sheet piles shall be coated in accordance with Section 1076. Metallized sheet piles shall be metallized in accordance to the Project Special Provision “Thermal Sprayed Coatings (Metallization)” with an 8 mil, 99.9% aluminum alloy coating and a 0.5 mil seal coating. Any portion of the metallized sheet piling encased in concrete shall receive a barrier coat. The barrier coat shall be an approved waterborne coating with a low-viscosity which readily absorbs into the pores of the aluminum thermal sprayed coating. The waterborne coating shall be applied at a spreading rate that results in a theoretical 1.5 mil dry film thickness. The manufacturer shall issue a letter of certification that the resin chemistry of the waterborne coating is compatible with the 99.9% aluminum thermal sprayed alloy and suitable for tidal water applications.

Page 10-174, Subarticle 1086-1(B)(1), Epoxy, lines 18-24, replace with the following:

The epoxy shall meet Article 1081-4.

The 2 types of epoxy adhesive which may be used are Type I, Rapid Setting, and Type II, Standard Setting. Use Type II when the pavement temperature is above 60°F or per the manufacturer's recommendations whichever is more stringent. Use Type I when the pavement temperature is between 50°F and 60°F or per the manufacturer's recommendations whichever is more stringent. Epoxy adhesive Type I, Cold Set, may be used to attach temporary pavement markers to the pavement surface when the pavement temperature is between 32°F and 50°F or per the manufacturer's recommendations whichever is more stringent.

Page 10-175, Subarticle 1086-2(E), Epoxy Adhesives, line 27, replace "Section 1081" with "Article 1081-4".

Page 10-177, Subarticle 1086-3(E), Epoxy Adhesives, line 22, replace "Section 1081" with "Article 1081-4".

Page 10-179, Subarticle 1087-4(A), Composition, lines 39-41, replace the third paragraph with the following:

All intermixed and drop-on glass beads shall not contain more than 75 ppm arsenic or 200 ppm lead.

Page 10-180, Subarticle 1087-4(B), Physical Characteristics, line 8, replace the second paragraph with the following:

All intermixed and drop-on glass beads shall comply with NCGS § 136-30.2 and 23 USC § 109(r).

Page 10-181, Subarticle 1087-7(A), Intermixed and Drop-on Glass Beads, line 24, add the following after the first paragraph:

Use X-ray Fluorescence for the normal sampling procedure for intermixed and drop-on beads, without crushing, to check for any levels of arsenic and lead. If any arsenic or lead is detected, the sample shall be crushed and repeat the test using X-ray Fluorescence. If the X-ray Fluorescence test shows more than a LOD of 5 ppm, test the beads using United States Environmental Protection Agency Method 6010B, 6010C or 3052 for no more than 75 ppm arsenic or 200 ppm lead.

SHOULDER AND SLOPE BORROW:

(3-19-13)

1019

SP10 R10

Use soil in accordance with Section 1019 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*. Use soil consisting of loose, friable, sandy material with a PI greater than 6 and less than 25 and a pH ranging from 5.5 to 7.0.

Soil with a pH ranging from 4.0 to 5.5 will be accepted without further testing if additional limestone is provided in accordance with the application rates shown in Table 1019-1A. Soil type is identified during the soil analysis. Soils with a pH above 7.0 require acidic amendments to be added. Submit proposed acidic amendments to the Engineer for review and approval. Soils with a pH below 4.0 or that do not meet the PI requirements shall not be used.

**TABLE 1019-1A
ADDITIONAL LIMESTONE APPLICATION RATE TO RAISE pH**

pH TEST RESULT	Sandy Soils Additional Rate (lbs. / Acre)	Silt Loam Soils Additional Rate (lbs. / Acre)	Clay Loam Soils Additional Rate (lbs. / Acre)
4.0 - 4.4	1,000	4,000	6,000
4.5 - 4.9	500	3,000	5,000
5.0 - 5.4	NA	2,000	4,000

Note: Limestone application rates shown in this table are in addition to the standard rate of 4000 lbs. / acre required for seeding and mulching.

No direct payment will be made for providing additional lime or acidic amendments for Ph adjustment.

GROUT PRODUCTION AND DELIVERY:

(3-17-15)

1003

SP10 R20

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Replace Section 1003 with the following:

**SECTION 1003
GROUT PRODUCTION AND DELIVERY**

1003-1 DESCRIPTION

This section addresses cement grout to be used for structures, foundations, retaining walls, concrete barriers, embankments, pavements and other applications in accordance with the contract. Produce non-metallic grout composed of Portland cement and water and at the Contractor's option or as required, aggregate and pozzolans. Include chemical admixtures as required or needed. Provide sand cement or neat cement grout as required. Define "sand cement grout" as grout with only fine aggregate and "neat cement grout" as grout without aggregate.

The types of grout with their typical uses are as shown below:

Type 1 – A cement grout with only a 3-day strength requirement and a fluid consistency that is typically used for filling subsurface voids.

Type 2 – A nonshrink grout with strength, height change and flow conforming to ASTM C1107 that is typically used for foundations, ground anchors and soil nails.

Type 3 – A nonshrink grout with high early strength and freeze-thaw durability requirements that is typically used in pile blockouts, grout pockets, shear keys, dowel holes and recesses for concrete barriers and structures.

Type 4 – A neat cement grout with low strength, a fluid consistency and high fly ash content that is typically used for slab jacking.

Type 5 – A low slump, low mobility sand cement grout with minimal strength that is typically used for compaction grouting.

1003-2 MATERIALS

Refer to Division 10.

Item	Section
Chemical Admixtures	1024-3
Fine Aggregate	1014-1
Fly Ash	1024-5
Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag	1024-6
Portland Cement	1024-1
Silica Fume	1024-7
Water	1024-4

Do not use grout that contains soluble chlorides or more than 1% soluble sulfate. At the Contractor's option, use an approved packaged grout instead of the materials above except for water. Use packaged grouts that are on the NCDOT Approved Products List.

Use admixtures for grout that are on the NCDOT Approved Products List or other admixtures in accordance with Subarticle 1024-3(E) except do not use concrete additives or unclassified or other admixtures in Type 4 or 5 grout. Use Class F fly ash for Type 4 grout and Type II Portland cement for Type 5 grout.

Use well graded rounded aggregate with a gradation, liquid limit (LL) and plasticity index (PI) that meet Table 1003-1 for Type 5 grout. Fly ash may be substituted for a portion of the fines in the aggregate. Do not use any other pozzolans in Type 5 grout.

TABLE 1003-1 AGGREGATE REQUIREMENTS FOR TYPE 5 GROUT			
Gradation		Maximum Liquid Limit	Maximum Plasticity Index
Sieve Designation per AASHTO M 92	Percentage Passing (% by weight)		
3/8"	100	N/A	N/A
No. 4	70 – 95		
No. 8	50 – 90		
No. 16	30 – 80		
No. 30	25 – 70		
No. 50	20 – 50		
No. 100	15 – 40		
No. 200	10 – 30	25	10

1003-3 COMPOSITION AND DESIGN

When using an approved packaged grout, a grout mix design submittal is not required. Otherwise, submit proposed grout mix designs for each grout mix to be used in the work. Mixes for all grout shall be designed by a Certified Concrete Mix Design Technician or an Engineer licensed by the State of North Carolina. Mix proportions shall be determined by a testing laboratory approved by the Department. Base grout mix designs on laboratory trial batches that meet Table 1003-2 and this section. With permission, the Contractor may use a quantity of chemical admixture within the range shown on the current list of approved admixtures maintained by the Materials and Tests Unit.

Submit grout mix designs in terms of saturated surface dry weights on Materials and Tests Form 312U at least 35 days before proposed use. Adjust batch proportions to compensate for surface moisture contained in the aggregates at the time of batching. Changes in the saturated surface dry mix proportions will not be permitted unless revised grout mix designs have been submitted to the Engineer and approved.

Accompany Materials and Tests Form 312U with a listing of laboratory test results of compressive strength, density and flow or slump and if applicable, aggregate gradation, durability and height change. List the compressive strength of at least three 2" cubes at the age of 3 and 28 days.

The Engineer will review the grout mix design for compliance with the contract and notify the Contractor as to its acceptability. Do not use a grout mix until written notice has been received. Acceptance of the grout mix design or use of approved packaged grouts does not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to furnish a product that meets the contract. Upon written request from the Contractor, a grout mix design accepted and used satisfactorily on any Department project may be accepted for use on other projects.

Perform laboratory tests in accordance with the following test procedures:

Property	Test Method
Aggregate Gradation ^A	AASHTO T 27
Compressive Strength	AASHTO T 106
Density (Unit Weight)	AASHTO T 121, AASHTO T 133 ^B , ANSI/API RP ^C 13B-1 ^B (Section 4, Mud Balance)
Durability	AASHTO T 161 ^D
Flow	ASTM C939 (Flow Cone)
Height Change	ASTM C1090 ^E
Slump	AASHTO T 119

- A. Applicable to grout with aggregate.
- B. Applicable to Neat Cement Grout.
- C. American National Standards Institute/American Petroleum Institute Recommended Practice.
- D. Procedure A (Rapid Freezing and Thawing in Water) required.
- E. Moist room storage required.

1003-4 GROUT REQUIREMENTS

Provide grout types in accordance with the contract. Use grouts with properties that meet Table 1003-2. The compressive strength of the grout will be considered the average compressive strength test results of three 2" cubes at each age. Make cubes that meet AASHTO T 106 from the grout delivered for the work or mixed on-site. Make cubes at such frequencies as the Engineer may determine and cure them in accordance with AASHTO T 106.

Type of Grout	Minimum Compressive Strength at		Height Change at 28 days	Flow ^A /Slump ^B	Minimum Durability Factor
	3 days	28 days			
1	3,000 psi	–	–	10 – 30 sec	–
2	Table 1 ^C			Fluid Consistency ^C	–

3	5,000 psi	–	0 – 0.2%	Per Accepted Grout Mix Design/ Approved Packaged Grout	80
4 ^D	600 psi	1,500 psi	–	10 – 26 sec	–
5	–	500 psi	–	1 – 3"	–

- A. Applicable to Type 1 through 4 grouts.
- B. Applicable to Type 5 grout.
- C. ASTM C1107.
- D. Use Type 4 grout with proportions by volume of 1 part cement and 3 parts fly ash.

1003-5 TEMPERATURE REQUIREMENTS

When using an approved packaged grout, follow the manufacturer's instructions for grout and air temperature at the time of placement. Otherwise, the grout temperature at the time of placement shall be not less than 50°F nor more than 90°F. Do not place grout when the air temperature measured at the location of the grouting operation in the shade away from artificial heat is below 40°F.

1003-6 ELAPSED TIME FOR PLACING GROUT

Agitate grout continuously before placement. Regulate the delivery so the maximum interval between the placing of batches at the work site does not exceed 20 minutes. Place grout before exceeding the times in Table 1003-3. Measure the elapsed time as the time between adding the mixing water to the grout mix and placing the grout.

TABLE 1003-3 ELAPSED TIME FOR PLACING GROUT (with continuous agitation)		
Air or Grout Temperature, Whichever is Higher	Maximum Elapsed Time	
	No Retarding Admixture Used	Retarding Admixture Used
90°F or above	30 minutes	1 hr. 15 minutes
80°F through 89°F	45 minutes	1 hr. 30 minutes
79°F or below	60 minutes	1 hr. 45 minutes

1003-7 MIXING AND DELIVERY

Use grout free of any lumps and undispersed cement. When using an approved packaged grout, mix grout in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Otherwise, comply with Articles 1000-8 through 1000-12 to the extent applicable for grout instead of concrete.

GEOSYNTHETICS:

(2-16-16)

1056

SP10 R25

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Replace Section 1056 with the following:

**SECTION 1056
GEOSYNTHETICS****1056-1 DESCRIPTION**

Provide geosynthetics for subsurface drainage, separation, stabilization, reinforcement, erosion control, filtration and other applications in accordance with the contract. Use geotextiles, geocomposite drains and geocells that are on the NCDOT Approved Products List. Prefabricated geocomposite drains include sheet, strip and vertical drains (PVDs), i.e., “wick drains” consisting of a geotextile attached to and/or encapsulating a plastic drainage core. Geocells are comprised of ultrasonically welded polymer strips that when expanded form a 3D honeycomb grid that is typically filled with material to support vegetation. If necessary or required, hold geotextiles and sheet drains in place with new wire staples, i.e., “sod staples” that meet Subarticle 1060-8(D) or new anchor pins. Use steel anchor pins with a diameter of at least 3/16" and a length of at least 18" and with a point at one end and a head at the other end that will retain a steel washer with an outside diameter of at least 1.5".

1056-2 HANDLING AND STORING

Load, transport, unload and store geosynthetics so geosynthetics are kept clean and free of damage. Label, ship and store geosynthetics in accordance with Section 7 of AASHTO M 288. Geosynthetics with defects, flaws, deterioration or damage will be rejected. Do not unwrap geosynthetics until just before installation. Do not leave geosynthetics exposed for more than 7 days before covering except for geosynthetics for temporary wall faces and erosion control.

1056-3 CERTIFICATIONS

Provide Type 1, Type 2 or Type 4 material certifications in accordance with Article 106-3 for geosynthetics. Define “minimum average roll value” (MARV) in accordance with ASTM D4439. Provide certifications with MARV for geosynthetic properties as required. Test geosynthetics using laboratories accredited by the Geosynthetic Accreditation Institute (GAI) to perform the required test methods. Sample geosynthetics in accordance with ASTM D4354.

1056-4 GEOTEXTILES

When required, sew geotextiles together in accordance with Article X1.1.4 of AASHTO M 288. Provide sewn seams with seam strengths meeting the required strengths for the geotextile type and class specified.

Provide geotextile types and classes in accordance with the contract. Geotextiles will be identified by the product name printed directly on the geotextile. When geotextiles are not marked with a product name or marked with only a manufacturing plant identification code, geotextiles will be identified by product labels attached to the geotextile wrapping. When identification is based on labels instead of markings, unwrap geotextiles just before use in the presence of the Engineer to confirm that the product labels on both ends of the outside of the geotextile outer wrapping match the labels affixed to both ends of the inside of the geotextile roll core. Partial geotextile rolls without the product name printed on the geotextile or product labels affixed to the geotextile roll core may not be used.

Use woven or nonwoven geotextiles with properties that meet Table 1056-1. Define “machine direction” (MD) and “cross-machine direction” (CD) in accordance with ASTM D4439.

TABLE 1056-1 GEOTEXTILE REQUIREMENTS						
Property	Requirement					Test Method
	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3 ^A	Type 4	Type 5 ^B	
<i>Typical Application</i>	<i>Shoulder Drains</i>	<i>Under Rip Rap</i>	<i>Silt Fence Fabric</i>	<i>Soil Stabilization</i>	<i>Temporary Walls</i>	
Elongation (MD & CD)	≥ 50%	≥ 50%	≤ 25%	< 50%	< 50%	ASTM D4632
Grab Strength (MD & CD)	Table 1 ^D , Class 3	Table 1 ^D , Class 1	100 lb ^C	Table 1 ^D , Class 3	–	ASTM D4632
Tear Strength (MD & CD)			–			ASTM D4533
Puncture Strength			–			ASTM D6241
Ultimate Tensile Strength (MD & CD)	–	–	–	–	2,400 lb/ft ^C (unless required otherwise in the contract)	ASTM D4595
Permittivity	Table 2 ^D ,	Table 6 ^D ,	Table 7 ^D	Table 5 ^D	0.20 sec ⁻¹ . ^C	ASTM D4491
Apparent Opening Size	15% to 50% <i>in Situ</i> Soil	15% to 50% <i>in Situ</i> Soil			0.60 mm ^E	ASTM D4751
UV Stability (Retained Strength)	Passing 0.075 mm	Passing 0.075mm			70% ^C (after 500 hr of exposure)	ASTM D4355

A. Minimum roll width of 36" required.

B. Minimum roll width of 13 ft required.

C. MARV per Article 1056-3.

D. AASHTO M 288.

E. Maximum average roll value.

1056-5 GEOCOMPOSITE DRAINS

Provide geocomposite drain types in accordance with the contract and with properties that meet Table 1056-2.

TABLE 1056-2 GEOCOMPOSITE DRAIN REQUIREMENTS				
Property	Requirement			Test Method
	Sheet Drain	Strip Drain	Wick Drain	
Width	≥ 12" (unless required otherwise in the contract)	12" ±1/4"	4" ±1/4"	N/A
In-Plane Flow Rate ^A (with gradient of 1.0 and 24-hour seating period)	6 gpm/ft @ applied normal compressive stress of 10 psi	15 gpm/ft @ applied normal compressive stress of 7.26 psi	1.5 gpm ^B @ applied normal compressive stress of 40 psi	ASTM D4716

A. MARV per Article 1056-3.

B. Per 4" drain width.

For sheet and strip drains, use accessories (e.g., pipe outlets, connectors, fittings, etc.) recommended by the Drain Manufacturer. Provide sheet and strip drains with Type 1 geotextiles heat bonded or glued to HDPE, polypropylene or high impact polystyrene drainage cores that meet Table 1056-3.

TABLE 1056-3 DRAINAGE CORE REQUIREMENTS			
Property	Requirement (MARV)		Test Method
	Sheet Drain	Strip Drain	
Thickness	1/4"	1"	ASTM D1777 or D5199
Compressive Strength	40 psi	30 psi	ASTM D6364

For wick drains with a geotextile wrapped around a corrugated drainage core and seamed to itself, use drainage cores with an ultimate tensile strength of at least 225 lb per 4" width in accordance with ASTM D4595 and geotextiles with properties that meet Table 1056-4.

**TABLE 1056-4
WICK DRAIN GEOTEXTILE REQUIREMENTS**

Property	Requirement	Test Method
Elongation	≥ 50%	ASTM D4632
Grab Strength	Table 1 ^A , Class 3	ASTM D4632
Tear Strength		ASTM D4533
Puncture Strength		ASTM D6241
Permittivity	0.7 sec ⁻¹ . ^B	ASTM D4491
Apparent Opening Size (AOS)	Table 2 ^A , > 50% <i>in Situ</i> Soil Passing 0.075 mm	ASTM D4751
UV Stability (Retained Strength)		ASTM D4355

A. AASHTO M 288.

B. MARV per Article 1056-3.

For wick drains with a geotextile fused to both faces of a corrugated drainage core along the peaks of the corrugations, use wick drains with an ultimate tensile strength of at least 1,650 lb/ft in accordance with ASTM D4595 and geotextiles with a permittivity, AOS and UV stability that meet Table 1056-4.

1056-6 GEOCELLS

Geocells will be identified by product labels attached to the geocell wrapping. Unwrap geocells just before use in the presence of the Engineer. Previously opened geocell products will be rejected.

Manufacture geocells from virgin polyethylene resin with no more than 10% rework, also called “regrind”, materials. Use geocells made from textured and perforated HDPE strips with an open area of 10% to 20% and properties that meet Table 1056-5.

**TABLE 1056-5
GEOCELL REQUIREMENTS**

Property	Minimum Requirement	Test Method
Cell Depth	4"	N/A
Sheet Thickness	50 mil -5%, +10%	ASTM D5199
Density	58.4 lb/cf	ASTM D1505
Carbon Black Content	1.5%	ASTM D1603 or D4218
ESCR ^A	5000 hr	ASTM D1693
Coefficient of Direct Sliding (with material that meets AASHTO M 145 for soil classification A-2)	0.85	ASTM D5321
Short-Term Seam (Peel) Strength (for 4" seam)	320 lb	USACE ^C Technical Report GL-86-19, Appendix A
Long-Term Seam (Hang) Strength ^B (for 4" seam)	160 lb	

A. Environmental Stress Crack Resistance.

B. Minimum test period of 168 hr with a temperature change from 74°F to 130°F in 1-hour cycles.

C. US Army Corps of Engineers.

Provide geocell accessories (e.g., stakes, pins, clips, staples, rings, tendons, anchors, deadmen, etc.) recommended by the Geocell Manufacturer.

EROSION AND STORMWATER CONTROL FOR SHOULDER CONSTRUCTION AND RECONSTRUCTION:

(11-16-10) (Rev. 8-21-12)

105-16, 225-2, Division 16

SP16 R03R

Land disturbing operations associated with shoulder construction/reconstruction may require erosion and sediment control/stormwater measure installation. National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) inspection and reporting may be required.

Erosion control measures shall be installed per the erosion control detail in any area where the vegetated buffer between the disturbed area and surface waters (streams, wetlands, or open waters) or drainage inlet is less than 10 feet. The Engineer may reduce the vegetated buffer threshold for this requirement to a value between 5 and 10 feet. Erosion control measures shall be spot checked every 14 days until permanent vegetative establishment.

In areas where shoulder construction/reconstruction includes disturbance or grading on the front slope or to the toe of fill, relocating ditch line or backslope, or removing vegetation from the ditch line or swale, NPDES inspection and monitoring are required every 14 days or within 24 hours of a rainfall event of 0.5" or greater. Maintain daily rainfall records. Install erosion control measures per detail.

In areas where the vegetated buffer is less than 10 feet between the disturbed area and waters of the State classified as High Quality Water (HQW), Outstanding Resource Water (ORW), Critical Areas, or Unique Wetlands, NPDES inspection and monitoring are required every 14 days or within 24 hours of a rainfall event of 0.5" or greater. The Engineer may reduce the vegetated buffer threshold for this requirement to a value between 5 and 10 feet. The plans or provisions will indicate the presence of these water classifications. Maintain daily rainfall records. Install erosion control measures per detail.

Land disturbances hardened with aggregate materials receiving sheet flow are considered non-erodible.

Sites that require lengthy sections of silt fence may substitute with rapid permanent seeding and mulching as directed by the Engineer.

NPDES documentation shall be performed by a Level II Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater certificate holder.

Materials used for erosion control will be measured and paid as stated in the contract.

STABILIZATION REQUIREMENTS:

(3-11-16)

S-2

Stabilization for this project shall comply with the time frame guidelines as specified by the NCG-010000 general construction permit effective August 3, 2011 issued by the North Carolina Department of Environment and Natural Resources Division of Water Quality. Temporary or permanent ground cover stabilization shall occur within 7 calendar days from the last land-disturbing activity, with the following exceptions in which temporary or permanent ground cover shall be provided in 14 calendar days from the last land-disturbing activity:

- Slopes between 2:1 and 3:1, with a slope length of 10 ft. or less
- Slopes 3:1 or flatter, with a slope of length of 50 ft. or less
- Slopes 4:1 or flatter

The stabilization timeframe for High Quality Water (HQW) Zones shall be 7 calendar days with no exceptions for slope grades or lengths. High Quality Water Zones (HQW) Zones are defined by North Carolina Administrative Code 15A NCAC 04A.0105 (25). Temporary and permanent ground cover stabilization shall be achieved in accordance with the provisions in this contract and as directed.

SEEDING AND MULCHING:

(East Crimp)

The kinds of seed and fertilizer, and the rates of application of seed, fertilizer, and limestone, shall be as stated below. During periods of overlapping dates, the kind of seed to be used shall be determined. All rates are in pounds per acre.

All Roadway Areas

March 1 - August 31		September 1 - February 28	
50#	Tall Fescue	50#	Tall Fescue
10#	Centipede	10#	Centipede
25#	Bermudagrass (hulled)	35#	Bermudagrass (unhulled)
500#	Fertilizer	500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone	4000#	Limestone

Waste and Borrow Locations

March 1 – August 31		September 1 - February 28	
75#	Tall Fescue	75#	Tall Fescue
25#	Bermudagrass (hulled)	35#	Bermudagrass (unhulled)
500#	Fertilizer	500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone	4000#	Limestone

Note: 50# of Bahiagrass may be substituted for either Centipede or Bermudagrass only upon Engineer's request.

Approved Tall Fescue Cultivars

06 Dust	Escalade	Justice	Scorpion
2 nd Millennium	Essential	Kalahari	Serengeti
3 rd Millennium	Evergreen 2		Shelby
Apache III	Falcon IV	Kitty Hawk 2000	Sheridan
Avenger	Falcon NG	Legitimate	Signia
Barlexas	Falcon V	Lexington	Silver Hawk
Barlexas II	Faith	LSD	Sliverstar
Bar Fa	Fat Cat	Magellan	Shenandoah Elite
Barrera	Festnova	Matador	Sidewinder
Barrington	Fidelity	Millennium SRP	Skyline
Barrobusto	Finelawn Elite	Monet	Solara
Barvado	Finelawn Xpress	Mustang 4	Southern Choice II
Biltmore	Finesse II	Ninja 2	Speedway
Bingo	Firebird	Ol' Glory	Spyder LS
Bizem	Firecracker LS	Olympic Gold	Sunset Gold
Blackwatch	Firenza	Padre	Taccoa
Blade Runner II	Five Point	Patagonia	Tanzania
Bonsai	Focus	Pedigree	Trio
Braveheart	Forte	Picasso	Tahoe II
Bravo	Garrison	Piedmont	Talladega
Bullseye	Gazelle II	Plantation	Tarheel
Cannavaro	Gold Medallion	Proseeds 5301	Terrano
Catalyst	Grande 3	Prospect	Titan Ltd
Cayenne	Greenbrooks	Pure Gold	Titanium LS
Cessane Rz	Greenkeeper	Quest	Tracer
Chipper	Gremlin	Raptor II	Traverse SRP
Cochise IV	Greystone	Rebel Exeda	Tulsa Time
Constitution	Guardian 21	Rebel Sentry	Turbo
Corgi	Guardian 41	Rebel IV	Turbo RZ
Corona	Hemi	Regiment II	Tuxedo RZ
Coyote	Honky Tonk	Regenerate	Ultimate
Darlington	Hot Rod	Rendition	Venture
Davinci	Hunter	Rhambler 2 SRP	Umbrella
Desire	Inferno	Rembrandt	Van Gogh
Dominion	Innovator	Reunion	Watchdog
Dynamic	Integrity	Riverside	Wolfpack II
Dynasty	Jaguar 3	RNP	Xtremegreen
Endeavor	Jamboree	Rocket	

On cut and fill slopes 2:1 or steeper Centipede shall be applied at the rate of 5 pounds per acre and add 20# of Sericea Lespedeza from January 1 - December 31.

Fertilizer shall be 10-20-20 analysis. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 1-2-2 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as a 10-20-20 analysis and as directed.

All areas seeded and mulched shall be tacked with asphalt. Crimping of straw in lieu of asphalt tack shall not be allowed on this project.

CRIMPING STRAW MULCH:

Crimping shall be required on this project adjacent to any section of roadway where traffic is to be maintained or allowed during construction. In areas within six feet of the edge of pavement, straw is to be applied and then crimped. After the crimping operation is complete, an additional application of straw shall be applied and immediately tacked with a sufficient amount of undiluted emulsified asphalt.

Straw mulch shall be of sufficient length and quality to withstand the crimping operation.

Crimping equipment including power source shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer providing that maximum spacing of crimper blades shall not exceed 8".

NATIVE GRASS SEEDING AND MULCHING:

(East)

Native Grass Seeding and Mulching shall be performed on the disturbed areas of wetlands and riparian areas, and adjacent to Stream Relocation construction within a 50 foot zone on both sides of the stream or depression, measured from top of stream bank or center of depression. The stream bank of the stream relocation shall be seeded by a method that does not alter the typical cross section of the stream bank. Native Grass Seeding and Mulching shall also be performed in the permanent soil reinforcement mat section of preformed scour holes, and in other areas as directed.

The kinds of seed and fertilizer, and the rates of application of seed, fertilizer, and limestone, shall be as stated below. During periods of overlapping dates, the kind of seed to be used shall be determined. All rates are in pounds per acre.

March 1 - August 31		September 1 - February 28	
18#	Creeping Red Fescue	18#	Creeping Red Fescue
6#	Indiangrass	6#	Indiangrass
8#	Little Bluestem	8#	Little Bluestem
4#	Switchgrass	4#	Switchgrass
25#	Browntop Millet	35#	Rye Grain
500#	Fertilizer	500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone	4000#	Limestone

Approved Creeping Red Fescue Cultivars:

- | | | | |
|----------|--------|------|-----------|
| Aberdeen | Boreal | Epic | Cindy Lou |
|----------|--------|------|-----------|

Fertilizer shall be 10-20-20 analysis. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 1-2-2 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as a 10-20-20 analysis and as directed.

Native Grass Seeding and Mulching shall be performed in accordance with Section 1660 of the *Standard Specifications* and vegetative cover sufficient to restrain erosion shall be installed immediately following grade establishment.

Temporary Seeding

Fertilizer shall be the same analysis as specified for *Seeding and Mulching* and applied at the rate of 400 pounds and seeded at the rate of 50 pounds per acre. German Millet or Browntop Millet shall be used in summer months and rye grain during the remainder of the year. The Engineer will determine the exact dates for using each kind of seed.

Fertilizer Topdressing

Fertilizer used for topdressing shall be 16-8-8 grade and shall be applied at the rate of 500 pounds per acre. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 2-1-1 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as 16-8-8 analysis and as directed.

Supplemental Seeding

The kinds of seed and proportions shall be the same as specified for *Seeding and Mulching*, and the rate of application may vary from 25# to 75# per acre. The actual rate per acre will be determined prior to the time of topdressing and the Contractor will be notified in writing of the rate per acre, total quantity needed, and areas on which to apply the supplemental seed. Minimum tillage equipment, consisting of a sod seeder shall be used for incorporating seed into the soil as to prevent disturbance of existing vegetation. A clodbuster (ball and chain) may be used where degree of slope prevents the use of a sod seeder.

Mowing

The minimum mowing height shall be 4 inches.

Measurement and Payment

Native Grass *Seeding and Mulching* will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1660-8 of the *Standard Specifications*.

WATTLE:

Description

Wattles are tubular products consisting of excelsior fibers encased in synthetic netting. Wattles are used on slopes or channels to intercept runoff and act as a velocity break. Wattles are to be placed at locations shown on the plans or as directed. Installation shall follow the detail provided in the plans and as directed. Work includes furnishing materials, installation of wattles, matting installation, and removing wattles.

Materials

Wattle shall meet the following specifications:

100% Curled Wood (Excelsior) Fibers	
Minimum Diameter	12 in.
Minimum Density	2.5 lb/ft ³ +/- 10%
Net Material	Synthetic
Net Openings	1 in. x 1 in.
Net Configuration	Totally Encased
Minimum Weight	20 lb. +/- 10% per 10 ft. length

Anchors: Stakes shall be used as anchors.

Wooden Stakes:

Provide hardwood stakes a minimum of 2-ft. long with a 2 in. x 2 in. nominal square cross section. One end of the stake must be sharpened or beveled to facilitate driving down into the underlying soil.

Matting shall meet the requirements of Article 1060-8 of the *Standard Specifications*, or shall meet specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Provide staples made of 0.125" diameter new steel wire formed into a *u* shape not less than 12" in length with a throat of 1" in width.

Construction Methods

Wattles shall be secured to the soil by wire staples approximately every 1 linear foot and at the end of each section of wattle. A minimum of 4 stakes shall be installed on the downstream side of the wattle with a maximum spacing of 2 linear feet along the wattle, and according to the detail. Install a minimum of 2 stakes on the upstream side of the wattle according to the detail provided in the plans. Stakes shall be driven into the ground a minimum of 10 in. with no more than 2 in. projecting from the top of the wattle. Drive stakes at an angle according to the detail provided in the plans.

Only install wattle(s) to a height in ditch so flow will not wash around wattle and scour ditch slopes and according to the detail provided in the plans and as directed. Overlap adjoining sections of wattles a minimum of 6 in.

Installation of matting shall be in accordance with the detail provided in the plans, and in accordance with Article 1631-3 of the *Standard Specifications*, or in accordance with specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

The Contractor shall maintain the wattles until the project is accepted or until the wattles are removed, and shall remove and dispose of silt accumulations at the wattles when so directed in accordance with the requirements of Section 1630 of the *Standard Specifications*.

Measurement and Payment

Wattle will be measured and paid for by the actual number of linear feet of wattles which are installed and accepted. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this section, including, but not limited to, furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and incidentals necessary to install the *Wattle*.

Matting will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1631-4 of the *Standard Specifications*, or in accordance with specifications provided elsewhere in this contract.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Wattle

Pay Unit

Linear Foot

CONCRETE SPILLWAY LIP:**Description**

Construct concrete spillway lips at the outlet of infiltration basins in accordance with the plans and details. Unless otherwise noted in the plans, use cast-in-place reinforced concrete.

Materials

Refer to Division 10

Item	Section
Curing Agents	1026
Joint Fillers	1028-1
Portland Cement Concrete	1000
Wire Reinforcement	1070-3

Installation

Immediately before placing the paving, properly excavate and shape trench for concrete placement so it conforms to the required lines and grades.

Construct cast-in-place concrete spillway lip in accordance with Section 420, except as otherwise provided herein. Use Class B concrete. Furnish and place reinforcement as shown in the plans and in accordance with Section 425. After placing the concrete for one section, strike it off to plan grade and finish to a dense and uniform surface.

The surface of the concrete spillway lip shall be at a uniform elevation with a construction tolerance of plus or minus 0.25 inch at any point along its length.

Measurement and Payment

Concrete Spillway Lip will be measured and paid in cubic yards of concrete that has been incorporated into the completed and accepted work. Work includes but is not limited to furnishing, hauling, placing and all incidentals necessary to satisfactorily complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Concrete Spillway Lip	CY

PERFORATED PVC PIPE:**Description**

Furnish and install perforated PVC pipe per the drawings.

Materials

Refer to Division 10.

Perforations shall conform to the following requirements unless otherwise specified by an approved manufacturer:

Circular perforations shall be $1/4 \pm 1/16$ -inch diameter holes arranged in rows parallel to the axis of the pipe. Perforations shall be evenly spaced along each row such that the center-to-center distance between perforations is not less than eight times the perforation diameter. Perforations may appear at the ends of short and random lengths. The minimum perforation opening per foot of pipe shall be as shown in the table below.

Nominal Pipe Size (in)	Minimum Number of Rows	Minimum Opening/Foot (sq. in.)
4	2	.22
6	4	.44
8	4	.44
10	4	.44
12	6	.66

Rows shall be arranged in two equal groups at equal distance from the bottom on each side of the vertical centerline of the pipe. The lowermost rows of perforations shall be separated by an arc of not less than 60 degrees or more than 125 degrees. The uppermost rows of perforations shall be separated by an arc not to exceed 166 degrees. The spacing of rows between these limits shall be uniform. The minimum number of rows shall be as shown in the above table.

On both the inside and outside of the pipe, perforations shall be free of cuttings or frayed edges and of any material that would reduce the effective opening.

Installation

Installation shall be in accordance with ASTM D2321 (or approved manufacturer) published installation guidelines with the exception that minimum cover in trafficked areas for 4- through 48-inch diameters shall be one foot and for 60-inch diameters shall be 2 ft in single run applications.

Measurement and Payment

Perforated PVC Pipe will be measured and paid for as the actual number of linear feet of pipe that has been incorporated into the completed and accepted work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Perforated PVC Pipe

Pay Unit

Linear Foot

STEEL PIPE BOLLARDS**Description**

Furnish and install Steel Pipe Bollard per the drawings.

Installation

Steel pipe bollards, including but not limited to furnishing and installing bollards, painting, filling with concrete, and cleanup.

1. Steel pipe bollards: 6" 1.0. schedule 40 steel pipe. Pipe will meet the requirements of ASTM A 53/A 53M.
2. Steel pipe bollards will be installed as detailed on the drawings.
3. Grind smooth any sharp or exposed edges of pipe.
4. Fill pipe with concrete. Round off concrete with a smooth surface.
5. Paint bollards with a high quality alkyd enamel primer and two coats of high quality alkyd enamel paint. The two coats of paint will be safety yellow. Protect all surrounding areas from any overspray or paint splatter.

Measurement and Payment

Steel Pipe Bollards will be measured and paid for per each bollard that has been incorporated into the completed and accepted work.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this pay item and measured as provided will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Steel Pipe Bollard." This price is full compensation for furnishing, preparing, hauling and placing all materials, and for all equipment, labor, tools and incidentals.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Steel Pipe Bollard

Pay Unit

EA

CONCRETE WHEEL STOPS**DESCRIPTION**

Install commercially produced concrete wheel stops at the locations detailed on the plans

MATERIALS

Provide wheel stops cast with a concrete that has a minimum strength equal to that of Class A concrete as defined in section 1000 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications, each wheel stop must be 8 ft. in length.

Minimum reinforcement for each wheel stop shall be 2 No. 4 bars placed longitudinally.

“Reinforcing Steel” must conform to the requirements of section 1070 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications.

CONSTRUCTION

Refer to the plans for type of anchor rod and method of anchoring.

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Concrete Wheel Stops will be measured and paid for per each bollard that has been incorporated into the completed and accepted work.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this pay item and measured as provided under “Measurement” will be paid for at the unit price bid for “Concrete Wheel Stops.” This price is full compensation for furnishing, preparing, hauling and placing all materials, and for all equipment, labor, tools and incidentals.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Concrete Wheel Stops

Pay Unit

EA

WASHED NO. 57 STONE:

Description

Furnish and place washed no. 57 stone as shown in the plans and as directed. The washed stone shall be free of clay, loam, dust, and similar adherent materials unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer in writing.

Materials

Refer to Division 10

Item Section Washed No. 57 as indicated on the plans 1005 & 1014-2

Measurement and Payment

Washed No. 57 Stone will be measured and paid in tons of stone that has been incorporated into the completed and accepted work. Work includes but is not limited to furnishing, hauling, placing and all incidentals necessary to satisfactorily complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Washed No. 57 Stone

Pay Unit

Tons

CONCRETE WASHOUT STRUCTURE:

(12-01-15)

Description

Concrete washout structures are enclosures above or below grade to contain concrete waste water and associated concrete mix from washing out ready-mix trucks, drums, pumps, or other equipment. Concrete washouts must collect and retain all the concrete washout water and solids, so that this material does not migrate to surface waters or into the ground water. These enclosures are not intended for concrete waste not associated with wash out operations.

The concrete washout structure may include constructed devices above or below ground and or commercially available devices designed specifically to capture concrete waste water.

Materials

Item	Section
Temporary Silt Fence	1605

Safety Fence shall meet the specifications as provided elsewhere in this contract.

Geomembrane basin liner shall meet the following minimum physical properties for low permeability; it shall consist of a polypropylene or polyethylene 10 mil thick geomembrane. If the minimum setback dimensions can be achieved the liner is not required. (5 feet above groundwater, 50 feet from top of bank of perennial stream, other surface water body, or wetland.)

Construction Methods

Build an enclosed earthen berm or excavate to form an enclosure in accordance with the details and as directed.

Install temporary silt fence around the perimeter of the enclosure in accordance with the details and as directed if structure is not located in an area where existing erosion and sedimentation control devices are capable to containing any loss of sediment.

Post a sign with the words "Concrete Washout" in close proximity of the concrete washout area, so it is clearly visible to site personnel.

The construction details for the above grade and below grade concrete washout structures can be found on the following web page link:

http://www.ncdot.gov/doh/operations/dp_chief_eng/roadside/soil_water/details/

Alternate details for accommodating concrete washout may be submitted for review and approval.

The alternate details shall include the method used to retain and dispose of the concrete waste water within the project limits and in accordance with the minimum setback requirements. (5 feet above groundwater, 50 feet from top of bank of perennial stream, other surface water body, or wetland.)

Maintenance and Removal

Maintain the concrete washout structure(s) to provide adequate holding capacity plus a minimum freeboard of 12 inches. Remove and dispose of hardened concrete and return the structure to a functional condition after reaching 75% capacity.

Inspect concrete washout structures for damage and maintain for effectiveness.

Remove the concrete washout structures and sign upon project completion. Grade the earth material to match the existing contours and permanently seed and mulch area.

Measurement and Payment

Concrete Washout Structure will be paid for per each enclosure installed in accordance with the details. If alternate details are approved then those details will also be paid for per each approved and installed device.

Temporary Silt Fence will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 1605-5 of the Standard Specifications.

No measurement will be made for other items or for over excavation or stockpiling.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item	Pay Unit
Concrete Washout Structure	Each

HIGH QUALITY WATERS:

Description

The Austin Creek has been identified as high quality waters. This designation requires special procedures to be used for clearing and grubbing, temporary stream crossings, and grading operations within the High Quality Water Zone and as designated by the Engineer. The High Quality Water Zones are identified on the plans as Environmentally Sensitive Areas. This also requires special procedures to be used for seeding and mulching and staged seeding.

The High Quality Water Zone/Environmentally Sensitive Area shall be defined as a 50-foot buffer zone on both sides of the stream measured from top of streambank.

Construction Methods

(A) Clearing and Grubbing

In areas identified as High Quality Water Zones/Environmentally Sensitive Areas, the Contractor may perform clearing operations, but not grubbing operations until immediately prior to beginning grading operations as described in Article 200-1 of the Standard Specifications. Only clearing operations (not grubbing) shall be allowed in this buffer zone until immediately prior to beginning grading operations. Erosion control devices shall be installed immediately following the clearing operation.

(B) Grading

Once grading operations begin in identified High Quality Water Zones/ Environmentally Sensitive Areas, work shall progress in a continuous manner until complete. All construction within these areas shall progress in a continuous manner such that each phase is complete and areas are permanently stabilized prior to beginning of next phase. Failure on the part of the Contractor to complete any phase of construction in a continuous manner in High Quality Water Zones/ Environmentally Sensitive Areas will be just cause for the Engineer to direct the suspension of work in accordance with Article 108-7 of the Standard Specifications.

(C) Temporary Stream Crossings

Any crossing of streams within the limits of this project shall be accomplished in accordance with the requirements of Subarticle 107-13(B) of the Standard Specifications.

(D) Seeding and Mulching

Seeding and mulching shall be performed in accordance with Section 1660 of the Standard Specifications and vegetative cover sufficient to restrain erosion shall be installed immediately following grade establishment.

Seeding and mulching shall be performed on the areas disturbed by construction immediately following final grade establishment. No appreciable time shall lapse into the contract time without stabilization of slopes, ditches and other areas within the High Quality Water Zones/Environmentally Sensitive Areas.

(E) Stage Seeding

The work covered by this section shall consist of the establishment of a vegetative cover on cut and fill slopes as grading progresses. Seeding and mulching shall be done in stages on cut and fill slopes that are greater than 20 feet in height measured along the slope, or greater than 2 acres in area. Each stage shall not exceed the limits stated above.

Additional payments will not be made for the requirements of this section, as the cost for this work shall be included in the contract unit prices for the work involved.

All areas seeded and mulched shall be tacked with asphalt. Crimping of straw in lieu of asphalt tack shall not be allowed on this project.

MINIMIZE REMOVAL OF VEGETATION:

The Contractor shall minimize removal of vegetation within project limits to the maximum extent practicable. Vegetation along stream banks and adjacent to other jurisdictional resources outside the construction limits shall only be removed upon approval of Engineer. No additional payment will be made for this minimization work.

TEMPORARY SEEDING:

Fertilizer shall be the same analysis as specified for Seeding and Mulching and applied at the rate of 400 pounds and seeded at the rate of 50 pounds per acre. Sweet Sudan Grass, German Millet or Browntop Millet shall be used in summer months and Rye Grain during the remainder of the year. The Engineer will determine the exact dates for using each kind of seed.

FERTILIZER TOPDRESSING:

Fertilizer used for topdressing on all roadway areas except slopes 2:1 and steeper shall be 10-20-20 grade and shall be applied at the rate of 500 pounds per acre. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 1-2-2 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as 10-20-20 analysis and as directed.

Fertilizer used for topdressing on slopes 2:1 and steeper and waste and borrow areas shall be 16-8-8 grade and shall be applied at the rate of 500 pounds per acre. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 2-1-1 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as 16-8-8 analysis and as directed.

SUPPLEMENTAL SEEDING:

The kinds of seed and proportions shall be the same as specified for Seeding and Mulching, with the exception that no centipede seed will be used in the seed mix for supplemental seeding. The rate of application for supplemental seeding may vary from 25# to 75# per acre. The actual rate per acre will be determined prior to the time of topdressing and the Contractor will be notified in writing of the rate per acre, total quantity needed, and areas on which to apply the supplemental seed. Minimum tillage equipment, consisting of a sod seeder shall be used for incorporating seed into the soil as to prevent disturbance of existing vegetation. A clodbuster (ball and chain) may be used where degree of slope prevents the use of a sod seeder.

MOWING:

The minimum mowing height on this project shall be 4 inches.

STOCKPILE AREAS:

The Contractor shall install and maintain erosion control devices sufficient to contain sediment around any erodible material stockpile areas as directed.

ACCESS AND HAUL ROADS:

At the end of each working day, the Contractor shall install or re-establish temporary diversions or earth berms across access/haul roads to direct runoff into sediment devices. Silt fence sections that are temporarily removed shall be reinstalled across access/haul roads at the end of each working day.

WASTE AND BORROW SOURCES:

Payment for temporary erosion control measures, except those made necessary by the Contractor's own negligence or for his own convenience, will be paid for at the appropriate contract unit price for the devices or measures utilized in borrow sources and waste areas.

No additional payment will be made for erosion control devices or permanent seeding and mulching in any commercial borrow or waste pit. All erosion and sediment control practices that may be required on a commercial borrow or waste site will be done at the Contractor's expense.

All offsite Staging Areas, Borrow and Waste sites shall be in accordance with "Borrow and Waste Site Reclamation Procedures for Contracted Projects" located at:

http://www.ncdot.gov/doh/operations/dp_chief_eng/roadside/fieldops/downloads/Files/ContractedReclamationProcedures.pdf

All forms and documents referenced in the "Borrow and Waste Site Reclamation Procedures for Contracted Projects" shall be included with the reclamation plans for offsite staging areas, and borrow and waste sites.

SODDING (Bermuda):

(1-30-14)

1664

SPD 16-500

Description

Sod shall be placed as shown on the plans and as directed by the Engineer.

Prepare for sodding in accordance with Section 1664 and Article 1060-7 of the *Standard Specifications* and the provisions herein.

The Contractor shall obtain a certificate or limited permit issued by The N.C. Department of Agriculture (919-733-2655) stating that the sod has been found to be free of injurious plant pests.

Materials

Only "approved sod" (trade designation) consisting of *Bermuda* shall be used. The sod, machine cut to the supplier's standard width and length, shall be 5/8 inch minimum, excluding top growth and thatch, at the time of cutting. Before cutting, the sod shall be mowed to a uniform height. Standard sod sections shall be sufficiently strong to support their own weight and retain their size and shape when suspended vertically from a firm grasp on the upper 10% of the section.

Sod shall be delivered on site within 24 hours of being cut and be covered by acceptable means during delivery. A certificate from the sod producer stating the date and time of sod cutting shall accompany the sod when it arrives at the project site.

Sod may be either 42 inch wide roll sod or 18 inch by 36 inch strips.

Construction Methods

(A) Soil Preparation

Remove litter and other debris. Mow and satisfactorily dispose of weeds or other unacceptable growth on the areas to be sodded.

Prior to beginning preparation of the soil to receive sod, all eroded, uneven and rough areas shall be contour graded and/or filled with soil as directed by the Engineer. The soil shall be scarified or otherwise loosened to a depth of not less than 5 inches with a maximum width of 48 inches. Clods shall be broken and the top 2 to 3 inches of soil shall be worked into an acceptable soil bed by the use of soil pulverizers, drags, or harrows.

The Contractor shall be responsible for taking sufficient soil samples (at least 2 samples per acre) for testing by The Department Of Agriculture, Soil Testing Division, to determine the soil pH. Samples shall be taken in the presence of the Engineer. Results shall be received by the Engineer directly from the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services.

Limestone: Based on these results the Contractor shall add limestone, if required, to bring the soil pH to 5.2 to 6.2 (opt. 5.7). The amount of limestone to be applied will be approved by the Engineer prior to application. Application of limestone will be considered incidental to the work of "Sodding" and no direct payment will be made for such.

Sulfur: Based on these results the Contractor shall add sulfur if the pH is greater than 7.0, to bring the soil pH to 5.2 to 6.2 (opt. 5.7). The amount of sulfur to be applied will be approved by the Engineer prior to application. Application of sulfur will be considered incidental to the work of "Sodding" and no direct payment will be made for such.

After soil preparation, lime or sulfur (if necessary), shall be uniformly distributed by mechanical means using a 42 inch drop type spreader and thoroughly mixed with the top five inches of the soil by discing, harrowing, or other approved methods.

The area shall then be harrowed, dragged, raked, or prepared by other approved methods which will give a lawn type finish. All trash, debris and stones larger than 1-1/2 inch in diameter or other obstructions that could interfere with the placing of the sod shall also be removed. The finished surface shall be moistened with water prior to placing the sod as directed by the Engineer.

(B) Placement

Sod handling and placement shall be a continuous process of cutting, transporting and installing including repairing seams and voids. Sod shall always be installed within 48 hours after being cut.

Any sod or portions of sod rejected by the Engineer during the initial placement shall be removed from the project and replaced with acceptable sod immediately. The Contractor shall cease any and all other placement of sod on the project until rejected sod has been replaced.

After sod has been placed, and staked where necessary, in accordance with Section 1664 of the *Standard Specifications*, it shall then be rolled or tamped carefully and firmly by means acceptable to the Engineer to ensure proper soil contact. If rolled, roller shall weigh 150#/ft. of roller width. Use of rubber tired equipment to roll shall not be allowed. Metal staples, 12 inches long unless otherwise approved, shall be made of 11 gauge new steel wire so as not to bend when pinned or driven through the sod. Extreme care shall be taken to prevent the installed sod from being torn or displaced.

(C) Irrigation

After rolling or tamping the sod, it shall be fertilized with (1/2 lbs. N/M) slow release fertilizer with a 1-1-1 ratio. Then it shall be watered for a minimum of 20 minutes of continuous irrigation no less than 3 times daily for the first 3 weeks of grow-in, during day time hours only.

In no case shall the time interval between sod placement and initial watering exceed 2 hours.

After three weeks of initial grow-in and proper irrigation, the turf shall be irrigated twice a week for a minimum of 1/2" of water per-application so that the turf receives no less than one inch of irrigation per-week.

Irrigation is to take place in the early morning or afternoon. In no case shall turf be irrigated in the evening or nighttime hours.

(D) Maintenance

The Contractor shall be responsible for all watering, mowing, fertilizing, and other maintenance required to maintain the livability and health of the sod from installation until final acceptance of the sod. Additional water shall be applied as needed and as directed by the Engineer to maintain the livability of the sod.

(E) Fertilization

Following 3 weeks after initial fertilization another application of a slow release fertilizer with a ratio of 2-1-3 shall be applied at a rate of (1-lbs. N/M). This application will continue on a month to month basis during the growing season.

Any sod or portions of sod rejected by the Engineer after placement but to prior to final acceptance shall be removed from the project and replaced with acceptable sod. Satisfactory replacement of sod shall begin within 10 days of notification. Failure to replace and repair damaged or dead sod as directed by the Engineer may result in sanctions under Articles 108-7 or 108-8 of the *Standard Specifications*.

(F) Observation Period

The Contractor shall maintain responsibility for the sod for a 60 day observation period beginning upon the satisfactory completion and acceptance of all sodding work required in the plans or as directed by the Engineer. The Contractor shall guarantee the sod under the payment and performance bond, refer to Article 103-7 of the *Standard Specifications*.

The Contractor shall be responsible for all watering, mowing and other maintenance required to maintain the livability of the sod from installation until final acceptance, including monitoring the sod to ensure all watering and other maintenance is performed as required.

After the first 30 days of the 60 day observation period, the Contractor and Engineer shall meet to review the project and identify dead or damaged sod to be replaced. The Contractor, at no additional expense to the Department, shall satisfactorily replace any sod that is not in a living and healthy condition as determined by the Engineer. Replacement sod shall be furnished and installed in accordance with the same requirements as for initial sodding operation, except that the amounts of limestone, sulfur, and water may be readjusted as directed by the Engineer. Satisfactory replacement of sod shall begin within 10 days of notification. Failure to replace and repair damaged or dead sod as directed by the Engineer may result in sanctions under Articles 108-7 or 108-8 of the *Standard Specifications*. Upon completion and acceptance of the sod repairs, the remaining 30 days of the observation period shall begin.

(G) Acceptance

Final acceptance of the sod will occur upon the satisfactory completion of the 60-day observation period, but not prior to the complete installation of the irrigation system and the initial acceptance of the planting.

At the time of final acceptance, the sod furnished and installed under this contract shall be in a living and healthy condition, as determined by the Engineer.

The sod shall be weed free at time of final acceptance.

Measurement and Payment

Sodding will be measured and paid at the contract unit price per square yard of sod installed and accepted.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item
Sodding

Pay Unit
Square Yard

TC-1

WORK ZONE TRAFFIC CONTROL GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL (TTC):

(7-16-13) (Rev. 7-18-17)

RWZ-1

Maintain traffic in accordance with Divisions 10, 11 and 12 of the *2012 Standard Specifications* and the following provisions:

Install Work Zone Advance Warning Signs in accordance with the detail drawing provided in these plans prior to beginning any other work. Use a lane closure or slow moving operation to complete the work, as necessary, unless otherwise indicated. Refer to Standard Drawing No. 1101.02, 1101.11, 1110.01, 1110.02, 1130.01, 1135.01 and 1180.01 of the *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings*. Use a moving operation only if the minimum speed maintained at all times is 3 mph with no stops that narrow or close a lane of travel. If the moving operation is progressing slower than 3 mph at any time, install a lane closure. Maintain the existing traffic pattern at all times, except in the immediate work zone where lane closures are allowed as determined by the Engineer.

Refer to attached details and Standard Drawing No. 1101.02, 1101.03, 1101.04, 1101.05, 1101.11, 1110.01, 1110.02, 1115.01, 1130.01, 1135.01, 1145.01, 1150.01, 1165.01, and 1180.01 of the *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings* when closing a lane of travel in a stationary work zone such as pavement patching, resurfacing, or pavement marking removal. Properly ballasted cones and skinny drums may be used instead of drums. However, drums are required for the upstream taper portion of lane closures in all applications. The stationary work zone shall be a maximum of 1 mile in length at any given time on 2 Lane, 2 Way facilities unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. A pilot vehicle operation may be used in conjunction with flaggers and the appropriate pilot vehicle warning signing as directed by the Engineer. During periods of construction inactivity, return the traffic pattern to the existing alignment and remove or cover any work zone signs. When covering work zone signs, use an opaque material that prevents reading of the sign at night by a driver using high beam headlights. Use material, which does not damage the sign sheeting. Replace any obliterated markings as required by other sections of the *2012 Standard Specifications* and the Engineer.

When personnel and/or equipment are working on the shoulder adjacent to and within 5 feet of an open travel lane, close the nearest open travel lane using Standard Drawing No. 1101.02 of the *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings*. When personnel and/or equipment are working within a lane of travel of an undivided facility, close the lane according to the traffic control plans, *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings* or as directed by the Engineer. Conduct the work so that all personnel and/or equipment remain within the closed travel lane. Do not work simultaneously, on both sides of an open travel way, within the same location, on a two-lane, two-way road. Perform work only when weather and visibility conditions allow safe operations as directed by the Engineer.

When utilizing a slow-moving operation for such items as pavement marking and marker placement, the operation shall consist of the vehicles and devices as shown on Roadway Standard Drawing No. 1101.02, sheet 11 or 12 of the *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings*. Traffic cones may be used when necessary to provide additional protection of wet pavement markings. Ballast all traffic cones so they will not be blown over by traffic.

TC-2

PAVING OPERATIONS:

1) Paving Lift Requirements and Time Limitations:

For paving lifts of 2.0" or less, bring all newly resurfaced lanes to the same station and elevation within 72 hours. If not brought up to the same station and elevation within 72 hours, the Contractor shall place portable "UNEVEN PAVEMENT" signs in advance of the uneven pavement and spaced every ½ mile along the section of uneven pavement. Once mitigated, all portable "UNEVEN PAVEMENT" signs shall be removed. No additional compensation will be made for these signs or any other type of portable warning signs as these are included in the "Temporary Traffic Control" contract pay item.

For paving lifts greater than 2", bring all newly resurfaced lanes to the same station and elevation by the end of each work day unless the Contractor utilizes the notched wedge paving methods as described below.

Failure to comply with the following requirements will result in a suspension of all other operations until all lanes of traffic are brought to the same station and elevation:

1. During paving operations, any paving lift greater than 2" for asphalt surface course mixes shall be mitigated by having an approved wedge apparatus on the paver that shapes the edge 1" vertically and the remaining at a maximum slope steepness of 2:1. For intermediate and base course mixes, use an approved wedge device that shapes the edge with a maximum slope steepness of 2:1. The maximum paving lift allowed to use this method is 3".
2. At the end of the work day, the Contractor shall place portable "UNEVEN PAVEMENT" signs in advance of the uneven pavement and spaced every ½ mile along the section of uneven pavement. Once mitigated, all portable "UNEVEN PAVEMENT" signs shall be removed. No additional compensation will be made for these signs or any other type of portable warning signs as these are included in the "Temporary Traffic Control" contract pay item.
3. In the next day's paving operation and not to exceed 72 hours, the Contractor shall bring up the adjacent lane to the same station and elevation before any further paving takes place on the project.

2) Asphalt Surface Treatments (AST)

For AST Operations, there's no drop-off condition to be signed. Stationary "LOOSE GRAVEL" and "UNMARKED PAVEMENT" signs shall replace "LOW/SOFT SHOULDER" signs. For placement and spacing of these signs, see the Signing Detail Sheet. All other advance warning signs are to be portable mounted. These signs are included as part of the temporary traffic control (Lump Sum) item.

TC-3

3) Fine Milling/Microsurfacing (Depths less than 1")

For fine milling operations less than 1", paving is not required in the same work period. The paving of the fine milled area is to be conducted within the next work period and not to exceed 72 hours. No advance warning signs are necessary for these conditions unless the paving operations exceed 72 hours. If this occurs, install portable "UNMARKED PAVEMENT" signs. These signs are incidental to the other items of work included in the temporary traffic control (Lump Sum) item.

4) Shoulder Drop-Off Requirements

Whenever paving operations create an edge of pavement drop-off greater than 2", within 72 hours, the Contractor shall backfill at a 6:1 slope from the edge and finished elevation of the pavement that has an edge of pavement drop-off as follows:

- (A) Drop-off that exceeds 2 inches on roadways with posted speed limits of 45 mph or greater.
- (B) Drop-off that exceeds 3 inches on roadways with posted speed limits less than 45 mph.

Backfill the edge of pavement drop-off with suitable compacted material, as approved by the Engineer. The material, equipment and labor associated with this operation will be at no expense to the Department. This work is not considered part of shoulder reconstruction.

PROJECT REQUIREMENTS:

Failure to comply with the following requirements will result in a suspension of all other operations:

1. Before working on ANY MAP, the Contractor shall submit a written construction sequence for traffic control and construction lighting for ALL MAPS to the Engineer at the first pre-construction meeting and the sequence must be approved before closing a lane of traffic. The Contractor and Engineer will coordinate with the Traffic Management Unit at 919-814-5000 or Traffic Services for additional traffic control guidance, as necessary.
2. Obtain written approval of the Engineer before working in more than one location or setting up additional lane closures. The maximum length of any one lane closure is 1 mile unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.
3. If Lane Closure Restrictions apply, see Special Provision, "Intermediate Contract Times and Liquidated Damages".
4. Contractor shall mill and pave lanes in an order such that water shall not accumulate.
5. Traffic Control for the milling and/or paving of ramps is to be done according to Standard Drawing Number 1101.02, Sheets 9 & 10 unless otherwise approved to be closed by the Engineer. If approved, Contractor will provide plans and devices for the detour at no additional cost to the department.

TC-4

6. If milled areas are not paved back within 72 hours, the Contractor is to furnish and install portable signs to warn drivers of the conditions. These are to include, but not limited to “Rough Road” (W8-8), “Uneven Lanes” (W8-11), and “Grooved Pavement” (W8-15) w/ Motorcycle Plaque mounted below. These are to be dual indicated on Multi-Lane Roadways with speed limits 45 mph and greater where lateral clearance can be obtained within the median areas. These portable signs are incidental to the other items of work included in the temporary traffic control (Lump Sum) pay item.

WORK ZONE SIGNING:

Description

Install advance/general warning work zone signs according to the Detail Drawing provided in these plans prior to beginning of work. Install and maintain signing in accordance with the attached drawings and Divisions 11 and 12 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

(A) Installation

All stationary Advance/General warning work zone signs require notification to existing Utility owners per Article 105-8 of the *2012 Standard Specifications* and Special Provision SP1 G115 within 3 to 12 full working days prior to installation.

Install Advance/General warning work zone signs before beginning work on a particular map. If signs are installed more than seven (7) calendar days prior to the beginning of work on a particular map, cover the signs until the work begins. Install each work zone Advance/General warning sign separately and not on the same post or stand with any other sign except where an advisory speed plate or directional arrow is used.

All stationary signing is to be installed as shown on the detail drawing(s) unless otherwise directed by the Engineer. The signs as shown on the detail drawing(s) are all that are required for a contractor to begin a resurfacing contract. Any additional signs requested by the Engineer shall be installed within 7 business days of the start of contract work. All sign locations are to be verified by the Engineer prior to installation. Once the signs have been installed and accepted, any sign relocations requested by the Department will be compensated in accordance with Article 104-7. Any additional signs other than the ones shown in the drawing will be compensated in accordance with Article 104-7.

No stationary -Y- Line advance warning signage is required unless there's more than 1,000 feet of resurfacing along the -Y- line. Whenever work proceeds through an intersection, portable signs shall be used for traffic control. There will be no direct compensation for any portable signing.

If there is a period of construction inactivity longer than 14 calendar days, remove or cover advance/general warning work zone signs. Uncover advance/general warning work zone signs no more than 7 calendar days before work resumes. All other operations may be suspended upon failure to comply with the above requirements. Such suspended operations would not be resumed until the above requirements are fulfilled.

TC-5

(B) Sign Removal

Once Maps on the Project are substantially complete, it's acceptable practice to remove the Stationary Work Zone Signs in lieu of waiting until all of the Maps are completed on the Project. A Map is substantially complete when the resurfacing operations are finished and the shoulders are brought up to the same elevation as the proposed pavement and when pavement markings (paint) are installed along the centerline and edge lines. The final pavement markings (ex. Thermoplastic/Polyurea) or pavement markers (Raised/Snowplowable) don't have to be installed for Maps to be considered substantially complete. Final pavement marking/markers are installed with portable signing according to Roadway Standard Drawing 1101.02, sheet 11 or 12. Any remaining punch list items requiring traffic control are compensated in the contract pay item for *Temporary Traffic Control*.

Stationary Work Zone Sign removal is a condition of final project acceptance.

(C) Lane Closure Work Zone Signs

Install any required lane closure signing needed during the life of the project in accordance with the Standard Drawing No. 1101.02, 1101.11 and 1110.02 of the *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings*. Any required portable signs for lane closures are compensated in the contract pay item for *Temporary Traffic Control*.

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT:

Temporary traffic control work, including, but not limited to installation and removal of portable signs, cones, drums, skinny drums, flaggers, AFAD's, changeable message boards, truck mounted attenuators, flashing arrow boards, and pilot vehicles will be paid at the contract lump sum price for *Temporary Traffic Control*. The *Temporary Traffic Control* pay item does not include work zone advance or general warning signs. Partial payments for *Temporary Traffic Control* will be made as follows: The cumulative total of the lump sum price for temporary traffic control will be equal to the percent complete (project) as calculated for each partial pay estimate. Additional flashing arrow boards and message boards beyond those shown in the contract, detail drawings or *Roadway Standard Drawings* required by the Engineer will be paid as extra work in accordance with Article 104-7 of the *Standard Specifications*.

The work of satisfactorily installing and removing work zone advance and/or general warning signs, including, but not limited to, furnishing, locating, installing, covering, uncovering and removing stationary signs will be measured for each required sign and paid at the contract price for *Work Zone Advance/General Warning Signing (SF)*. Payment for *Work Zone Advance/General Warning Signing* will be limited to a maximum of 90% of the total installed quantity. The remaining 10% will be paid once all signs have been removed.

The Lump Sum price for *Temporary Traffic Control* will include the work of four (4) flaggers per operation per map being utilized at the same time on any day. If a pilot vehicle is used for an operation, the Lump Sum Price for *Temporary Traffic Control* will include the work of five (5) flaggers. The operator of a pilot vehicle will be considered one of the five flaggers.

TC-6

Any additional flagging beyond the “included” amount covered in the *Temporary Traffic Control* pay item will be considered supplemental flagging and compensated at a rate of \$20.00 per hour for each additional flagger as approved by the Engineer.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item

Temporary Traffic Control

Work Zone Advance/General Warning Signing

Pay Unit

Lump Sum

Square Foot

DocuSigned by:
Steve Kite
E27CE30E1DFC442...

5/16/2017



TC-7

RESURFACING OPERATIONS:

(7-15-14)

RWZ-2

Coordinate the installation of items required by the contract documents and resurfacing operations such that these operations are completed in the order as agreed upon with the Engineer at the first pre-construction meeting. Refer to the Provisions, Typicals and Details unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.

Notify the Engineer 15 consecutive calendar days before resurfacing a bridge or its approaches. Patch and make repairs to bridge surface and its approaches before resurfacing occurs. Coordinate all operations on the bridge and its approaches with the Engineer.

Notify the Engineer 48 hours before resurfacing the areas of existing pavement that require patching. Patch these areas before resurfacing occurs. Allow full depth asphalt patching to cool to the point of supporting traffic without displacement or rutting before reopening closed lane. Coordinate the resurfacing operations of the patched areas with the Engineer.

Notify the Engineer 48 hours before milling or resurfacing will interfere with the existing Signal Loops. Loops may need to be placed in milled surface before resurfacing occurs. Coordinate all signal loop operations with the Engineer.

For partial or wheel track milling operations on two-way, two-lane facilities, mill and pave back by the end of each work day. For Partial or wheel track milling operation on multi-lane facilities, the lane being milled may be left closed and paved back within 72 hours.

The following options are available during Resurfacing and milling operations on two-way, two-lane facilities when the entire roadway or entire lane is to be milled:

- (A) Mill a single lane and pave back by the end of each work day.
- (B) Mill the entire width of roadway and pave back within 72 hours.

The following options are available during Resurfacing and milling operations on multi-lane facilities when all lanes or a single lane in one direction are to be milled:

- (A) Mill a single lane and pave back by the end of each work day.
- (B) Mill the entire width of pavement for all lanes to be milled in any direction daily and pave back within 72 hours.

Slope the pavement at the beginning and ending of the daily milling operation as directed by the Engineer. Sweep and remove all milled material from the roadway as soon as the daily milling operation is completed. Continue milling operations until the particular section of roadway being milled is complete. Remove any existing pavement adjacent to the milled area that has been damaged and replace with patch material as directed by the Engineer.

Operate equipment and conduct operations in the same direction as the flow of traffic. Maintain vehicular access in accordance with Article 1101-05 of the *2012 Standard Specifications* using suitable backfill material approved by the Engineer.

TC-8

Provide appropriate lighting in accordance with Section 1413 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

Milled Rumble Strips:

When utilized, milled rumble strips shall be installed in accordance with the *2012 Standard Specifications* and the 2012 Roadway Standard Drawing 665.01.

TC-9

PAVEMENT MARKINGS AND MARKERS:

(7-15-14)

RWZ-3

Markings: All Facilities

Pavement markings shall be installed in accordance with Standard Drawings 1205.01 through 1205.13 of the *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings* and Section 1205 of the *2012 Standard Specifications* with the exception of the 15 day edge line replacement requirement for two-lane, two-way roadways as described in Subarticle 1205-3(D) of the *2012 Standard Specifications*. For all two-lane, two-way facilities, edge lines can be replaced within 30 calendar days after they have been obliterated.

Type 3 Cold Applied Plastic may be used in lieu of Type 2 Cold Applied Plastic. If Type 3 Cold Applied Plastic is used, it shall be paid for using the Type 2 Cold Applied Plastic pay item.

Unless otherwise specified, Heated-in-Place Thermoplastic may be used in lieu of Extruded Thermoplastic for stop bars, symbols, characters and diagonals. If Heated-in-Place Thermoplastic is used, it shall be paid for using the Extruded Thermoplastic pay item.

Unless otherwise specified, Heated-in-Place Thermoplastic may be used in lieu of Cold Applied Plastic for stop bars, symbols, characters and diagonals on asphalt or concrete roadways. If Heated-in-Place Thermoplastic is used, it shall be paid for using the Cold Applied Plastic pay item.

Markers: All Facilities

Remove existing pavement markers in preparation for paving. Repair any pavement damage due to existing pavement marker removal prior to the end of the work day. Dispose of existing pavement markers as directed by the Engineer. No direct payment will be made for this work as it will be incidental to the paving operation.

Install permanent pavement markers within 60 calendar days after completing the resurfacing on each map. Pavement markers shall be installed in accordance with Standard Drawing 1205.12 and Standard Drawings 1250.01 through 1253.01 of the *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings* and Sections 1250 through 1253 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

Markings and Markers: All Facilities

Review and record the existing pavement markings and markers before resurfacing. Re-establish the new pavement markings and markers using the record of existing markings in conjunction with the *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings* unless otherwise directed by the engineer. Have existing or proposed "passing zones" reviewed by the engineer before installation. Submit the record of the existing pavement markings seven calendar days before the obliteration of any pavement markings.

Mainline pavement shall not be left milled, unmarked or uneven at the end of a paving season. If the Contractor begins any map and does not complete within the seasonal restrictions, including placement of final pavement markings or permanent markers, the Contractor shall be responsible for, at his expense, Paint in accordance with Article 1205-08 and Temporary Markers in accordance with Section 1251 of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS – TERMINATION OF CONTRACTS:**

(5-20-08)

Z-2

General Statute 143C-6-11. (h) Highway Appropriation is hereby incorporated verbatim in this contract as follows:

(h) Amounts Encumbered. – Transportation project appropriations may be encumbered in the amount of allotments made to the Department of Transportation by the Director for the estimated payments for transportation project contract work to be performed in the appropriation fiscal year. The allotments shall be multiyear allotments and shall be based on estimated revenues and shall be subject to the maximum contract authority contained in *General Statute 143C-6-11(c)*. Payment for transportation project work performed pursuant to contract in any fiscal year other than the current fiscal year is subject to appropriations by the General Assembly. Transportation project contracts shall contain a schedule of estimated completion progress, and any acceleration of this progress shall be subject to the approval of the Department of Transportation provided funds are available. The State reserves the right to terminate or suspend any transportation project contract, and any transportation project contract shall be so terminated or suspended if funds will not be available for payment of the work to be performed during that fiscal year pursuant to the contract. In the event of termination of any contract, the contractor shall be given a written notice of termination at least 60 days before completion of scheduled work for which funds are available. In the event of termination, the contractor shall be paid for the work already performed in accordance with the contract specifications.

Payment will be made on any contract terminated pursuant to the special provision in accordance with Subarticle 108-13(E) of the *2012 Standard Specifications*.

BIDS:

In accordance with GS 136-28.1(b), if the total bid amount of the contract exceeds \$5 million, the bid will not be considered for award.

DIVISION LET CONTRACT PREQUALIFICATION:

(07-01-14)(12-1-16)

SPD 01-410

Any firm that wishes to bid as a prime contractor shall be prequalified as a Bidder or PO Prime Contractor prior to submitting a bid. Information regarding prequalification can be found at: <https://connect.ncdot.gov/business/Prequal/Pages/default.aspx>.

Prior to performing the work, the prime contractor and/or subcontractor(s) shall be prequalified in the work code(s) which are identified as work items in the prime contractor's construction progress schedule that they will complete themselves. Any contractor identified as working outside their expertise may be considered in default of contract.

SAFETY VESTS:

All Contractors' personnel, all subcontractors and their personnel, and any material suppliers and their personnel must wear an OSHA approved reflective vest or outer garment at all times while on the project.

CONTRACTOR CLAIM SUBMITTAL FORM:

(2-12-14)

104-3

SPD 01-440

If the Contractor elects to file a written claim or requests an extension of contract time, it shall be submitted on the *Contractor Claim Submittal Form (CCSF)* available through the Construction Unit or at <https://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Pages/Construction-Resources.aspx> as Form CCSF under Construction Forms.

Any claims for additional compensation and/or extensions of the completion date shall be submitted to the Division Engineer in writing, with detailed justification, prior to submitting the final invoice payment. Once an invoice is received and accepted that is marked as “Final”, the Contractor shall be barred from recovery.

DRIVEWAYS AND PRIVATE PROPERTY:

The Contractor shall maintain access to driveways for all residents and property owners throughout the life of the project. The Contractor shall not perform work for private citizens or agencies in conjunction with this project or within the project limits of this contract.

COOPERATION WITH STATE FORCES:

The Contractor must cooperate with State forces working within the limits of this project as directed by the Engineer.

NCDOT GENERAL SEED SPECIFICATION FOR SEED QUALITY:

(5-17-11)

Z-3

Seed shall be sampled and tested by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory. When said samples are collected, the vendor shall supply an independent laboratory report for each lot to be tested. Results from seed so sampled shall be final. Seed not meeting the specifications shall be rejected by the Department of Transportation and shall not be delivered to North Carolina Department of Transportation warehouses. If seed has been delivered it shall be available for pickup and replacement at the supplier's expense.

Any re-labeling required by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory, that would cause the label to reflect as otherwise specified herein shall be rejected by the North Carolina Department of Transportation.

Seed shall be free from seeds of the noxious weeds Johnsongrass, Balloonvine, Jimsonweed, Witchweed, Itchgrass, Serrated Tussock, Showy Crotalaria, Smooth Crotalaria, Sicklepod, Sandbur, Wild Onion, and Wild Garlic. Seed shall not be labeled with the above weed species on the seed analysis label. Tolerances as applied by the Association of Official Seed Analysts will NOT be allowed for the above noxious weeds except for Wild Onion and Wild Garlic.

Tolerances established by the Association of Official Seed Analysts will generally be recognized. However, for the purpose of figuring pure live seed, the found pure seed and found germination percentages as reported by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory will be used. Allowances, as established by the NCDOT, will be recognized for minimum pure live seed as listed on the following pages.

The specifications for restricted noxious weed seed refers to the number per pound as follows:

<u>Restricted Noxious Weed</u>	<u>Limitations per Lb. Of Seed</u>	<u>Restricted Noxious Weed</u>	<u>Limitations per Lb. of Seed</u>
Blessed Thistle	4 seeds	Cornflower (Ragged Robin)	27 seeds
Cocklebur	4 seeds	Texas Panicum	27 seeds
Spurred Anoda	4 seeds	Bracted Plantain	54 seeds
Velvetleaf	4 seeds	Buckhorn Plantain	54 seeds
Morning-glory	8 seeds	Broadleaf Dock	54 seeds
Corn Cockle	10 seeds	Curly Dock	54 seeds
Wild Radish	12 seeds	Dodder	54 seeds
Purple Nutsedge	27 seeds	Giant Foxtail	54 seeds
Yellow Nutsedge	27 seeds	Horsenettle	54 seeds
Canada Thistle	27 seeds	Quackgrass	54 seeds
Field Bindweed	27 seeds	Wild Mustard	54 seeds
Hedge Bindweed	27 seeds		

Seed of Pensacola Bahiagrass shall not contain more than 7% inert matter, Kentucky Bluegrass, Centipede and Fine or Hard Fescue shall not contain more than 5% inert matter whereas a maximum of 2% inert matter will be allowed on all other kinds of seed. In addition, all seed shall not contain more than 2% other crop seed nor more than 1% total weed seed. The germination rate as tested by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture shall not fall below 70%, which includes both dormant and hard seed. Seed shall be labeled with not more than 7%, 5% or 2% inert matter (according to above specifications), 2% other crop seed and 1% total weed seed.

Exceptions may be made for minimum pure live seed allowances when cases of seed variety shortages are verified. Pure live seed percentages will be applied in a verified shortage situation. Those purchase orders of deficient seed lots will be credited with the percentage that the seed is deficient.

FURTHER SPECIFICATIONS FOR EACH SEED GROUP ARE GIVEN BELOW:

Minimum 85% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 83% pure live seed will not be approved.

Sericea Lespedeza
Oats (seeds)

Minimum 80% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 78% pure live seed will not be approved.

Tall Fescue (all approved varieties)
Kobe Lespedeza
Korean Lespedeza
Weeping Lovegrass
Carpetgrass

Bermudagrass
Browntop Millet
German Millet – Strain R
Clover – Red/White/Crimson

Minimum 78% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 76% pure live seed will not be approved.

Common or Sweet Sundangrass

Minimum 76% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 74% pure live seed will not be approved.

Rye (grain; all varieties)
Kentucky Bluegrass (all approved varieties)
Hard Fescue (all approved varieties)
Shrub (bicolor) Lespedeza

Minimum 70% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 70% pure live seed will not be approved.

Centipedegrass	Japanese Millet
Crownvetch	Reed Canary Grass
Pensacola Bahiagrass	Zoysia
Creeping Red Fescue	

Minimum 70% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 5% inert matter; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound.

Barnyard Grass
Big Bluestem
Little Bluestem
Bristly Locust
Birdsfoot Trefoil
Indiangrass
Orchardgrass
Switchgrass
Yellow Blossom Sweet Clover

ERRATA

(1-17-12) (Rev. 04-21-15)

Z-4

Revise the *2012 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Division 2

Page 2-7, line 31, Article 215-2 Construction Methods, replace “Article 107-26” with “Article 107-25”.

Page 2-17, Article 226-3, Measurement and Payment, line 2, delete “pipe culverts.”

Page 2-20, Subarticle 230-4(B), Contractor Furnished Sources, change references as follows: Line 1, replace “(4) Buffer Zone” with “(c) Buffer Zone”; **Line 12**, replace “(5) Evaluation for Potential Wetlands and Endangered Species” with “(d) Evaluation for Potential Wetlands and Endangered Species”; and **Line 33**, replace “(6) Approval” with “(4) Approval”.

Division 3

Page 3-1, after line 15, Article 300-2 Materials, replace “1032-9(F)” with “1032-6(F)”.

Division 4

Page 4-77, line 27, Subarticle 452-3(C) Concrete Coping, replace “sheet pile” with “reinforcement”.

Division 6

Page 6-7, line 31, Article 609-3 Field Verification of Mixture and Job Mix Formula Adjustments, replace “30” with “45”.

Page 6-10, line 42, Subarticle 609-6(C)(2), replace “Subarticle 609-6(E)” with “Subarticle 609-6(D)”.

Page 6-11, Table 609-1 Control Limits, replace “Max. Spec. Limit” for the Target Source of $P_{0.075}/P_{be}$ Ratio with “1.0”.

Page 6-40, Article 650-2 Materials, replace “Subarticle 1012-1(F)” with “Subarticle 1012-1(E)”

Division 7

Page 7-1, Article 700-3, CONCRETE HAULING EQUIPMENT, line 33, replace “completion” with “completion”.

Division 8

Page 8-23, line 10, Article 838-2 Materials, replace “Portland Cement Concrete, Class B” with “Portland Cement Concrete, Class A”.

Division 10

Page 10-166, Article 1081-3 Hot Bitumen, replace “Table 1081-16” with “Table 1081-2”, replace “Table 1081-17” with “Table 1081-3”, and replace “Table 1081-18” with “Table 1081-4”.

Division 12

Page 12-7, Table 1205-3, add “FOR THERMOPLASTIC” to the end of the title.

Page 12-8, Subarticle 1205-5(B), line 13, replace “Table 1205-2” with “Table 1205-4”.

Page 12-8, Table 1205-4 and 1205-5, replace “THERMOPLASTIC” in the title of these tables with “POLYUREA”.

Page 12-9, Subarticle 1205-6(B), line 21, replace “Table 1205-4” with “Table 1205-6”.

Page 12-11, Subarticle 1205-8(C), line 25, replace “Table 1205-5” with “Table 1205-7”.

Division 15

Page 15-4, Subarticle 1505-3(F) Backfilling, line 26, replace “Subarticle 235-4(C)” with “Subarticle 235-3(C)”.

Page 15-6, Subarticle 1510-3(B), after line 21, replace the allowable leakage formula with the following: $W = LD\sqrt{P} \div 148,000$

Page 15-6, Subarticle 1510-3(B), line 32, delete “may be performed concurrently or” and replace with “shall be performed”.

Page 15-17, Subarticle 1540-3(E), line 27, delete “Type 1”.

Division 17

Page 17-26, line 42, Subarticle 1731-3(D) Termination and Splicing within Interconnect Center, delete this subarticle.

Revise the *2012 Roadway Standard Drawings* as follows:

1633.01 Sheet 1 of 1, English Standard Drawing for Matting Installation, replace “1633.01” with “1631.01”.

PLANT AND PEST QUARANTINES:**(Imported Fire Ant, Gypsy Moth, Witchweed, Emerald Ash Borer, And Other Noxious Weeds)**

(3-18-03) (Rev. 12-20-16)

Z-04a

Within Quarantined Area

This project may be within a county regulated for plant and/or pests. If the project or any part of the Contractor's operations is located within a quarantined area, thoroughly clean all equipment prior to moving out of the quarantined area. Comply with federal/state regulations by obtaining a certificate or limited permit for any regulated article moving from the quarantined area.

Originating in a Quarantined County

Obtain a certificate or limited permit issued by the N.C. Department of Agriculture/United States Department of Agriculture. Have the certificate or limited permit accompany the article when it arrives at the project site.

Contact

Contact the N.C. Department of Agriculture/United States Department of Agriculture at 1-800-206-9333, 919-707-3730, or <http://www.ncagr.gov/plantindustry/> to determine those specific project sites located in the quarantined area or for any regulated article used on this project originating in a quarantined county.

Regulated Articles Include

1. Soil, sand, gravel, compost, peat, humus, muck, and decomposed manure, separately or with other articles. This includes movement of articles listed above that may be associated with cut/waste, ditch pulling, and shoulder cutting.
2. Plants with roots including grass sod.
3. Plant crowns and roots.
4. Bulbs, corms, rhizomes, and tubers of ornamental plants.
5. Hay, straw, fodder, and plant litter of any kind.
6. Clearing and grubbing debris.
7. Used agricultural cultivating and harvesting equipment.
8. Used earth-moving equipment.
9. Any other products, articles, or means of conveyance, of any character, if determined by an inspector to present a hazard of spreading imported fire ant, gypsy moth, witchweed, emerald ash borer, or other noxious weeds.

AWARD OF CONTRACT:

(6-28-77)(Rev 2/16/2016)

Z-6

“The North Carolina Department of Transportation, in accordance with the provisions of *Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964* (78 Stat. 252) and the Regulations of the Department of Transportation (*49 C.F.R., Part 21*), issued pursuant to such act, hereby notifies all bidders that it will affirmatively insure that the contract entered into pursuant to this advertisement will be awarded to the lowest responsible bidder without discrimination on the ground of race, color, or national origin”.

TITLE VI AND NONDISCRIMINATION**I. Title VI Assurance**

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "contractor") agrees as follows:

(1) Compliance with Regulations: The contractor shall comply with the Regulation relative to nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the Department of Transportation (hereinafter, "DOT") Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 21, as they may be amended from time to time, (hereinafter referred to as the Regulations), which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.

(2) Nondiscrimination: The Contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall not participate either directly or indirectly in the discrimination prohibited by section 21.5 of the Regulations, including employment practices when the contract covers a program set forth in Appendix B of the Regulations.

(3) Solicitations for Subcontractors, Including Procurements of Materials and Equipment: In all solicitations either by competitive bidding or negotiation made by the contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier shall be notified by the contractor of the contractor's obligations under this contract and the Regulations relative to nondiscrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin.

(4) Information and Reports: The contractor shall provide all information and reports required by the Regulations or directives issued pursuant thereto, and shall permit access to its books, records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) or the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Regulations, orders and instructions. Where any information required of a contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish this information the contractor shall so certify to the NCDOT, or the FHWA as appropriate, and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.

(5) Sanctions for Noncompliance: In the event of the contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination provisions of this contract, the NCDOT shall impose such contract sanctions as it or the FHWA may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:

- (a) Withholding of payments to the contractor under the contract until the contractor complies, and/or
- (b) Cancellation, termination or suspension of the contract, in whole or in part.

(6) Incorporation of Provisions: The contractor shall include the provisions of paragraphs (1) through (6) in every subcontract, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Regulations, or directives issued pursuant thereto.

The contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontractor procurement as the NCDOT or the FHWA may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for noncompliance: provided, however, that, in the event a contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or supplier as a result of such direction, the contractor may request the NCDOT to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the NCDOT, and, in addition, the contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

II. Title VI Nondiscrimination Program

Title VI of the 1964 Civil Rights Act, 42 U.S.C. 2000d, provides that: “No person in the United States shall, on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity receiving Federal financial assistance.” The broader application of nondiscrimination law is found in other statutes, executive orders, and regulations (see Section III, Pertinent Nondiscrimination Authorities), which provide additional protections based on age, sex, disability and religion. In addition, the 1987 Civil Rights Restoration Act extends nondiscrimination coverage to all programs and activities of federal-aid recipients and contractors, including those that are not federally-funded.

Nondiscrimination Assurance

The North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) hereby gives assurance that no person shall on the ground of race, color, national origin, sex, age, and disability, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the recipient, as provided by Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, the Civil Rights Restoration Act of 1987, and any other related Civil Rights authorities, whether those programs and activities are federally funded or not. *Obligation*

During the performance of this contract, the Contractor and its subcontractors are responsible for complying with NCDOT’s Title VI Program. The Contractor must ensure that NCDOT’s Notice of Nondiscrimination is posted in conspicuous locations accessible to all employees and subcontractors on the jobsite, along with the Contractor’s own Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Policy Statement. The Contractor shall physically incorporate this “**TITLE VI AND NONDISCRIMINATION**” language, in its entirety, into all its subcontracts on federally-assisted and state-funded NCDOT-owned projects, and ensure its inclusion by subcontractors into all subsequent lower tier subcontracts. The Contractor and its subcontractors shall also physically incorporate the **FHWA-1273**, in its entirety, into all subcontracts and subsequent lower tier subcontracts on Federal-aid highway construction contracts only. The Contractor is also responsible for making its subcontractors aware of NCDOT’s Discrimination Complaints Process, as follows:

FILING OF COMPLAINTS

1. **Applicability** – These complaint procedures apply to the beneficiaries of the NCDOT’s programs, activities, and services, including, but not limited to, members of the public, contractors, subcontractors, consultants, and other sub-recipients of federal and state funds.
2. **Eligibility** – Any person or class of persons who believes he/she has been subjected to discrimination or retaliation prohibited by any of the Civil Rights authorities, based upon race, color, sex, age, national origin, or disability, may file a written complaint with NCDOT’s Civil Rights office. The law prohibits intimidation or retaliation of any sort. The complaint may be filed by the affected individual or a representative, and must be in writing.
3. **Time Limits and Filing Options** – A complaint must be filed no later than 180 calendar days after the following:
 - The date of the alleged act of discrimination; or
 - The date when the person(s) became aware of the alleged discrimination; or
 - Where there has been a continuing course of conduct, the date on which that conduct was discontinued or the latest instance of the conduct.

Title VI and other discrimination complaints may be submitted to the following entities:

- **North Carolina Department of Transportation**, Office of Equal Opportunity & Workforce Services (EOWS), External Civil Rights Section, 1511 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, NC 27699-1511; 919-508-1808 or toll free 800-522-0453
- **US Department of Transportation**, Departmental Office of Civil Rights, External Civil Rights Programs Division, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590; 202-366-4070

Federal Highway Administration, North Carolina Division Office, 310 New Bern Avenue, Suite 410, Raleigh, NC 27601, 919-747-7010

Federal Highway Administration, Office of Civil Rights, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, 8th Floor, E81-314, Washington, DC 20590, 202-366-0693 / 366-0752

Federal Transit Administration, Office of Civil Rights, ATTN: Title VI Program Coordinator, East Bldg. 5th Floor – TCR, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590

Federal Aviation Administration, Office of Civil Rights, 800 Independence Avenue, SW, Washington, DC 20591, 202-267-3258

- **US Department of Justice**, Special Litigation Section, Civil Rights Division, 950 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20530, 202-514-6255 or toll free 877-218-5228

4. **Format for Complaints** – Complaints must be in **writing** and **signed** by the complainant(s) or a representative and include the complainant’s name, address, and telephone number. Complaints received by fax or e-mail will be acknowledged and processed. Allegations received by telephone will be reduced to writing and provided to the complainant for confirmation or revision before processing. Complaints will be accepted in other languages including Braille.
5. **Discrimination Complaint Form** – Contact NCDOT EOWS at the phone number above to receive a full copy of the Discrimination Complaint Form and procedures.
6. **Complaint Basis** – Allegations must be based on issues involving race, color, national origin, sex, age, or disability. The term “basis” refers to the complainant’s membership in a protected group category. Contact this office to receive a Discrimination Complaint Form.

Protected Categories	Definition	Examples	Applicable Statutes and Regulations	
			FHWA	FTA
Race	An individual belonging to one of the accepted racial groups; or the perception, based usually on physical characteristics that a person is a member of a racial group	Black/African American, Hispanic/Latino, Asian, American Indian/Alaska Native, Native Hawaiian/Pacific Islander, White	Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; 49 CFR Part 21; 23 CFR 200	Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; 49 CFR Part 21; Circular 4702.1B
Color	Color of skin, including shade of skin within a racial group	Black, White, brown, yellow, etc.		
National Origin	Place of birth. Citizenship is not a factor. Discrimination based on language or a person’s accent is also covered.	Mexican, Cuban, Japanese, Vietnamese, Chinese		

Sex	Gender	Women and Men	1973 Federal-Aid Highway Act	Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972
Age	Persons of any age	21 year old person	Age Discrimination Act of 1975	
Disability	Physical or mental impairment, permanent or temporary, or perceived.	Blind, alcoholic, paraplegic, epileptic, diabetic, arthritic	Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990	

III. Pertinent Nondiscrimination Authorities

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest agrees to comply with the following non-discrimination statutes and authorities, including, but not limited to:

- Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000d *et seq.*, 78 stat. 252), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin); and 49 CFR Part 21.
- The Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, (42 U.S.C. § 4601), (prohibits unfair treatment of persons displaced or whose property has been acquired because of Federal or Federal-aid programs and projects);
- Federal-Aid Highway Act of 1973, (23 U.S.C. § 324 *et seq.*), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of sex);
- Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, (29 U.S.C. § 794 *et seq.*), as amended, (prohibits discrimination on the basis of disability); and 49 CFR Part 27;
- The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, (42 U.S.C. § 6101 *et seq.*), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of age);
- Airport and Airway Improvement Act of 1982, (49 USC § 471, Section 47123), as amended, (prohibits discrimination based on race, creed, color, national origin, or sex);
- The Civil Rights Restoration Act of 1987, (PL 100-209), (Broadened the scope, coverage and applicability of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, The Age Discrimination Act of 1975 and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, by expanding the definition of the terms “programs or activities” to include all of the programs or activities of the Federal-aid recipients, sub-recipients and contractors, whether such programs or activities are Federally funded or not);
- Titles II and III of the Americans with Disabilities Act, which prohibit discrimination on the basis of disability in the operation of public entities, public and private transportation systems, places of public accommodation, and certain testing entities (42 U.S.C. §§ 12131 – 12189) as implemented by Department of Transportation regulations at 49 C.F.R. parts 37 and 38;
- The Federal Aviation Administration’s Non-discrimination statute (49 U.S.C. § 47123) (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, and sex);
- Executive Order 12898, Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations, which ensures discrimination against minority populations by discouraging programs, policies, and activities with disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects on minority and low-income populations;

- Executive Order 13166, Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency, and resulting agency guidance, national origin discrimination includes discrimination because of limited English proficiency (LEP). To ensure compliance with Title VI, you must take reasonable steps to ensure that LEP persons have meaningful access to your programs (70 Fed. Reg. at 74087 to 74100);
- Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended, which prohibits you from discriminating because of sex in education programs or activities (20 U.S.C. 1681 et seq).
- Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000e *et seq.*, Pub. L. 88-352), (prohibits employment discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin);
- 49 CFR Part 26, regulation to ensure nondiscrimination in the award and administration of DOT-assisted contracts in the Department's highway, transit, and airport financial assistance programs, as regards the use of Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBEs);
- Form FHWA-1273, "Required Contract Provisions," a collection of contract provisions and proposal notices that are generally applicable to *all Federal-aid construction projects* and must be made a part of, and physically incorporated into, *all federally-assisted contracts*, as well as appropriate subcontracts and purchase orders, particularly Sections II (Nondiscrimination) and III (Nonsegregated Facilities).

MINORITY AND FEMALE EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS:

Z-7

NOTICE OF REQUIREMENTS FOR AFFIRMATIVE ACTION TO ENSURE EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY (*EXECUTIVE NUMBER 11246*)

1. The goals and timetables for minority and female participation, expressed in percentage terms for the Contractor's aggregate workforce in each trade on all construction work in the covered area, see as shown on the attached sheet entitled "Employment Goals for Minority and Female participation".

These goals are applicable to all the Contractor's construction work (whether or not it is Federal or federally assisted) performed in the covered area. If the Contractor performs construction work in a geographical area located outside of the covered area, it shall apply the goals established for such geographical area where the work is actually performed. With regard to this second area, the Contractor also is subject to the goals for both its federally involved and nonfederally involved construction.

The Contractor's compliance with the Executive Order and the regulations in *41 CFR Part 60-4* shall be based on its implementation of the Equal Opportunity Clause, specific affirmative action obligations required by the specifications set forth in *41 CFR 60-4.3(a)*, and its effort to meet the goals. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the contract, and in each trade and the Contractor shall make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority or female employees or trainees from Contractor to Contractor or from project to project or the sole purpose of meeting the Contractor's goals shall be a violation of the contract, the executive Order and the regulations in *41 CFR Part 60-4*. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed.

2. As used in this Notice and in the contract resulting from this solicitation, the "covered area" is the county or counties shown on the cover sheet of the proposal form and contract.

**EMPLOYMENT GOALS FOR MINORITY
AND FEMALE PARTICIPATION**

Economic Areas

Area 023 29.7%

Bertie County
Camden County
Chowan County
Gates County
Hertford County
Pasquotank County
Perquimans County

Area 024 31.7%

Beaufort County
Carteret County
Craven County
Dare County
Edgecombe County
Green County
Halifax County
Hyde County
Jones County
Lenoir County
Martin County
Nash County
Northampton County
Pamlico County
Pitt County
Tyrrell County
Washington County
Wayne County
Wilson County

Area 025 23.5%

Columbus County
Duplin County
Onslow County
Pender County

Area 026 33.5%

Bladen County
Hoke County
Richmond County
Robeson County
Sampson County
Scotland County

Area 027 24.7%

Chatham County
Franklin County
Granville County
Harnett County
Johnston County
Lee County
Person County
Vance County
Warren County

Area 028 15.5%

Alleghany County
Ashe County
Caswell County
Davie County
Montgomery County
Moore County
Rockingham County
Surry County
Watauga County
Wilkes County

Area 029 15.7%

Alexander County
Anson County
Burke County
Cabarrus County
Caldwell County
Catawba County
Cleveland County
Iredell County
Lincoln County
Polk County
Rowan County
Rutherford County
Stanly County

Area 0480 8.5%

Buncombe County
Madison County

Area 030 6.3%

Avery County
Cherokee County
Clay County
Graham County
Haywood County
Henderson County
Jackson County
McDowell County
Macon County
Mitchell County
Swain County
Transylvania County
Yancey County

SMSA AreasArea 5720 26.6%

Currituck County

Area 9200 20.7%

Brunswick County

New Hanover County

Area 2560 24.2%

Cumberland County

Area 6640 22.8%

Durham County

Orange County

Wake County

Area 1300 16.2%

Alamance County

Area 3120 16.4%

Davidson County

Forsyth County

Guilford County

Randolph County

Stokes County

Yadkin County

Area 1520 18.3%

Gaston County

Mecklenburg County

Union County

Goals for FemaleParticipation in Each Trade

(Statewide) 6.9%

REQUIRED CONTRACT PROVISIONS FEDERAL - AID CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS:

FHWA - 1273 Electronic Version - May 1, 2012

Z-8

- I. General
- II. Nondiscrimination
- III. Nonsegregated Facilities
- IV. Davis-Bacon and Related Act Provisions
- V. Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act Provisions
- VI. Subletting or Assigning the Contract
- VII. Safety: Accident Prevention
- VIII. False Statements Concerning Highway Projects
- IX. Implementation of Clean Air Act and Federal Water Pollution Control Act
- X. Compliance with Governmentwide Suspension and Debarment Requirements
- XI. Certification Regarding Use of Contract Funds for Lobbying

ATTACHMENTS

- A. Employment and Materials Preference for Appalachian Development Highway System or Appalachian Local Access Road Contracts (included in Appalachian contracts only)

I. GENERAL

- 1. Form FHWA-1273 must be physically incorporated in each construction contract funded under Title 23 (excluding emergency contracts solely intended for debris removal). The contractor (or subcontractor) must insert this form in each subcontract and further require its inclusion in all lower tier subcontracts (excluding purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services).

The applicable requirements of Form FHWA-1273 are incorporated by reference for work done under any purchase order, rental agreement or agreement for other services. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor, lower-tier subcontractor or service provider.

Form FHWA-1273 must be included in all Federal-aid design-build contracts, in all subcontracts and in lower tier subcontracts (excluding subcontracts for design services, purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services). The design-builder shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor, lower-tier subcontractor or service provider.

Contracting agencies may reference Form FHWA-1273 in bid proposal or request for proposal documents, however, the Form FHWA-1273 must be physically incorporated (not referenced) in all contracts, subcontracts and lower-tier subcontracts (excluding purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services related to a construction contract).

- 2. Subject to the applicability criteria noted in the following sections, these contract provisions shall apply to all work performed on the contract by the contractor's own organization and with the assistance of workers under the contractor's immediate superintendence and to all work performed on the contract by piecework, station work, or by subcontract.
- 3. A breach of any of the stipulations contained in these Required Contract Provisions may be sufficient grounds for withholding of progress payments, withholding of final payment, termination of the contract, suspension / debarment or any other action determined to be appropriate by the contracting agency and FHWA.

4. Selection of Labor: During the performance of this contract, the contractor shall not use convict labor for any purpose within the limits of a construction project on a Federal-aid highway unless it is labor performed by convicts who are on parole, supervised release, or probation. The term Federal-aid highway does not include roadways functionally classified as local roads or rural minor collectors.

II. NONDISCRIMINATION

The provisions of this section related to 23 CFR Part 230 are applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related construction subcontracts of \$10,000 or more. The provisions of 23 CFR Part 230 are not applicable to material supply, engineering, or architectural service contracts.

In addition, the contractor and all subcontractors must comply with the following policies: Executive Order 11246, 41 CFR 60, 29 CFR 1625-1627, Title 23 USC Section 140, the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 USC 794), Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, and related regulations including 49 CFR Parts 21, 26 and 27; and 23 CFR Parts 200, 230, and 633.

The contractor and all subcontractors must comply with: the requirements of the Equal Opportunity Clause in 41 CFR 60-1.4(b) and, for all construction contracts exceeding \$10,000, the Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications in 41 CFR 60-4.3.

Note: The U.S. Department of Labor has exclusive authority to determine compliance with Executive Order 11246 and the policies of the Secretary of Labor including 41 CFR 60, and 29 CFR 1625-1627. The contracting agency and the FHWA have the authority and the responsibility to ensure compliance with Title 23 USC Section 140, the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 USC 794), and Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, and related regulations including 49 CFR Parts 21, 26 and 27; and 23 CFR Parts 200, 230, and 633.

The following provision is adopted from 23 CFR 230, Appendix A, with appropriate revisions to conform to the U.S. Department of Labor (US DOL) and FHWA requirements.

1. **Equal Employment Opportunity:** Equal employment opportunity (EEO) requirements not to discriminate and to take affirmative action to assure equal opportunity as set forth under laws, executive orders, rules, regulations (28 CFR 35, 29 CFR 1630, 29 CFR 1625-1627, 41 CFR 60 and 49 CFR 27) and orders of the Secretary of Labor as modified by the provisions prescribed herein, and imposed pursuant to 23 U.S.C. 140 shall constitute the EEO and specific affirmative action standards for the contractor's project activities under this contract. The provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.) set forth under 28 CFR 35 and 29 CFR 1630 are incorporated by reference in this contract. In the execution of this contract, the contractor agrees to comply with the following minimum specific requirement activities of EEO:
 - a. The contractor will work with the contracting agency and the Federal Government to ensure that it has made every good faith effort to provide equal opportunity with respect to all of its terms and conditions of employment and in their review of activities under the contract.
 - b. The contractor will accept as its operating policy the following statement:
"It is the policy of this Company to assure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, religion, sex, color, national origin, age or disability. Such action shall include: employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship, pre-apprenticeship, and/or on-the-job training."
2. **EEO Officer:** The contractor will designate and make known to the contracting officers an EEO Officer who will have the responsibility for and must be capable of effectively administering and promoting an active EEO program and who must be assigned adequate authority and responsibility to do so.
3. **Dissemination of Policy:** All members of the contractor's staff who are authorized to hire, supervise, promote, and discharge employees, or who recommend such action, or who are substantially involved in such action, will be made fully cognizant of, and will implement, the contractor's EEO policy and contractual responsibilities to provide EEO in each grade and classification of employment. To ensure that the above agreement will be met, the following actions will be taken as a minimum:
 - a. Periodic meetings of supervisory and personnel office employees will be conducted before the start of work and then not less often than once every six months, at which time the contractor's EEO policy and its implementation will be reviewed and explained. The meetings will be conducted by the EEO Officer.
 - b. All new supervisory or personnel office employees will be given a thorough indoctrination by the EEO Officer, covering all major aspects of the contractor's EEO obligations within thirty days following their reporting for duty with the contractor.
 - c. All personnel who are engaged in direct recruitment for the project will be instructed by the EEO Officer in the contractor's procedures for locating and hiring minorities and women.
 - d. Notices and posters setting forth the contractor's EEO policy will be placed in areas readily accessible to employees, applicants for employment and potential employees.
 - e. The contractor's EEO policy and the procedures to implement such policy will be brought to the attention of employees by means of meetings, employee handbooks, or other appropriate means.
4. **Recruitment:** When advertising for employees, the contractor will include in all advertisements for employees the notation: "An Equal Opportunity Employer." All such advertisements will be placed in publications having a large circulation among minorities and women in the area from which the project work force would normally be derived.
 - a. The contractor will, unless precluded by a valid bargaining agreement, conduct systematic and direct recruitment through public and private employee referral sources likely to yield qualified minorities and women. To meet this requirement, the contractor will identify sources of potential minority group employees, and establish with such identified sources procedures whereby minority and women applicants may be referred to the contractor for employment consideration.
 - b. In the event the contractor has a valid bargaining agreement providing for exclusive hiring hall referrals, the contractor is expected to observe the provisions of that agreement to the extent that the system meets the contractor's compliance with EEO contract provisions. Where implementation of such an agreement has the effect of discriminating against minorities or women, or obligates the contractor to do the same, such implementation violates Federal nondiscrimination provisions.
 - c. The contractor will encourage its present employees to refer minorities and women as applicants for employment. Information and procedures with regard to referring such applicants will be discussed with employees.
5. **Personnel Actions:** Wages, working conditions, and employee benefits shall be established and administered, and personnel actions of every type, including hiring, upgrading, promotion, transfer, demotion, layoff, and termination, shall be taken without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability. The following procedures shall be followed:
 - a. The contractor will conduct periodic inspections of project sites to insure that working conditions and employee facilities do not indicate discriminatory treatment of project site personnel.
 - b. The contractor will periodically evaluate the spread of wages paid within each classification to determine any evidence of discriminatory wage practices.
 - c. The contractor will periodically review selected personnel actions in depth to determine whether there is evidence of discrimination. Where evidence is found, the contractor will promptly take corrective action. If the review indicates that the discrimination may extend beyond the actions reviewed, such corrective action shall include all affected persons.

- d. The contractor will promptly investigate all complaints of alleged discrimination made to the contractor in connection with its obligations under this contract, will attempt to resolve such complaints, and will take appropriate corrective action within a reasonable time. If the investigation indicates that the discrimination may affect persons other than the complainant, such corrective action shall include such other persons. Upon completion of each investigation, the contractor will inform every complainant of all of their avenues of appeal.
6. **Training and Promotion:**
- The contractor will assist in locating, qualifying, and increasing the skills of minorities and women who are applicants for employment or current employees. Such efforts should be aimed at developing full journey level status employees in the type of trade or job classification involved.
 - Consistent with the contractor's work force requirements and as permissible under Federal and State regulations, the contractor shall make full use of training programs, i.e., apprenticeship, and on-the-job training programs for the geographical area of contract performance. In the event a special provision for training is provided under this contract, this subparagraph will be superseded as indicated in the special provision. The contracting agency may reserve training positions for persons who receive welfare assistance in accordance with 23 U.S.C. 140(a).
 - The contractor will advise employees and applicants for employment of available training programs and entrance requirements for each.
 - The contractor will periodically review the training and promotion potential of employees who are minorities and women and will encourage eligible employees to apply for such training and promotion.
7. **Unions:** If the contractor relies in whole or in part upon unions as a source of employees, the contractor will use good faith efforts to obtain the cooperation of such unions to increase opportunities for minorities and women. Actions by the contractor, either directly or through a contractor's association acting as agent, will include the procedures set forth below:
- The contractor will use good faith efforts to develop, in cooperation with the unions, joint training programs aimed toward qualifying more minorities and women for membership in the unions and increasing the skills of minorities and women so that they may qualify for higher paying employment.
 - The contractor will use good faith efforts to incorporate an EEO clause into each union agreement to the end that such union will be contractually bound to refer applicants without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability.
 - The contractor is to obtain information as to the referral practices and policies of the labor union except that to the extent such information is within the exclusive possession of the labor union and such labor union refuses to furnish such information to the contractor, the contractor shall so certify to the contracting agency and shall set forth what efforts have been made to obtain such information.
 - In the event the union is unable to provide the contractor with a reasonable flow of referrals within the time limit set forth in the collective bargaining agreement, the contractor will, through independent recruitment efforts, fill the employment vacancies without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability; making full efforts to obtain qualified and/or qualifiable minorities and women. The failure of a union to provide sufficient referrals (even though it is obligated to provide exclusive referrals under the terms of a collective bargaining agreement) does not relieve the contractor from the requirements of this paragraph. In the event the union referral practice prevents the contractor from meeting the obligations pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and these special provisions, such contractor shall immediately notify the contracting agency.
8. **Reasonable Accommodation for Applicants / Employees with Disabilities:** The contractor must be familiar with the requirements for and comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act and all rules and regulations established there under. Employers must provide reasonable accommodation in all employment activities unless to do so would cause an undue hardship.
9. **Selection of Subcontractors, Procurement of Materials and Leasing of Equipment:** The contractor shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurement of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure nondiscrimination in the administration of this contract.
- The contractor shall notify all potential subcontractors and suppliers and lessors of their EEO obligations under this contract.
 - The contractor will use good faith efforts to ensure subcontractor compliance with their EEO obligations.
10. **Assurance Required by 49 CFR 26.13(b):**
- The requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 and the State DOT's U.S. DOT-approved DBE program are incorporated by reference.
 - The contractor or subcontractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of DOT-assisted contracts. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as the contracting agency deems appropriate.
11. **Records and Reports:** The contractor shall keep such records as necessary to document compliance with the EEO requirements. Such records shall be retained for a period of three years following the date of the final payment to the contractor for all contract work and shall be available at reasonable times and places for inspection by authorized representatives of the contracting agency and the FHWA.
- The records kept by the contractor shall document the following:
 - The number and work hours of minority and non-minority group members and women employed in each work classification on the project;
 - The progress and efforts being made in cooperation with unions, when applicable, to increase employment opportunities for minorities and women; and
 - The progress and efforts being made in locating, hiring, training, qualifying, and upgrading minorities and women;
 - The contractors and subcontractors will submit an annual report to the contracting agency each July for the duration of the project, indicating the number of minority, women, and non-minority group employees currently engaged in each work classification required by the contract work. This information is to be reported on Form FHWA-1391. The staffing data should represent the project work force on board in all or any part of the last payroll period preceding the end of July. If on-the-job training is being required by special provision, the contractor will be required to collect and report training data. The employment data should reflect the work force on board during all or any part of the last payroll period preceding the end of July.

III. NONSEGREGATED FACILITIES

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related construction subcontracts of \$10,000 or more.

The contractor must ensure that facilities provided for employees are provided in such a manner that segregation on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin cannot result. The contractor may neither require such segregated use by written or oral policies nor tolerate such use by employee custom. The contractor's obligation extends further to ensure that its employees are not assigned to perform their services at any location, under the contractor's control, where the facilities are segregated. The term "facilities" includes waiting rooms, work areas, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, restrooms, washrooms, locker rooms, and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing provided for employees. The contractor shall provide separate or single-user restrooms and necessary dressing or sleeping areas to assure privacy between sexes.

IV. DAVIS-BACON AND RELATED ACT PROVISIONS

This section is applicable to all Federal-aid construction projects exceeding \$2,000 and to all related subcontracts and lower-tier subcontracts (regardless of subcontract size). The requirements apply to all projects located within the right-of-way of a roadway that is functionally classified as Federal-aid highway. This

excludes roadways functionally classified as local roads or rural minor collectors, which are exempt. Contracting agencies may elect to apply these requirements to other projects.

The following provisions are from the U.S. Department of Labor regulations in 29 CFR 5.5 "Contract provisions and related matters" with minor revisions to conform to the FHWA-1273 format and FHWA program requirements.

1. Minimum wages

- a. All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work, will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the contractor and such laborers and mechanics.

Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph 1.d. of this section; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: Provided, That the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classification and wage rates conformed under paragraph 1.b. of this section) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.

- b. (1) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:
- (i) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and
 - (ii) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and
 - (iii) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.
- (2) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
- (3) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Wage and Hour Administrator for determination. The Wage and Hour Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
- (4) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to paragraphs 1.b.(2) or 1.b.(3) of this section, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.
- c. Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.
- d. If the contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program, Provided, That the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.

2. **Withholding.** The contracting agency shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor, withhold or cause to be withheld from the contractor under this contract, or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of the work, all or part of the wages required by the contract, the contracting agency may, after written notice to the contractor, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.

3. Payrolls and basic records

- a. Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work. Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.

- b. (1) The contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the contracting agency. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(3)(i), except that full social security numbers and home addresses shall not be included on weekly transmittals. Instead the payrolls shall only need to include an individually identifying number for each employee (e.g. , the last four digits of the employee's social security number). The required weekly payroll information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 is available for this purpose from the Wage

and Hour Division Web site at <http://www.dol.gov/esa/whd/forms/wh347instr.htm> or its successor site. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors. Contractors and subcontractors shall maintain the full social security number and current address of each covered worker, and shall provide them upon request to the contracting agency for transmission to the State DOT, the FHWA or the Wage and Hour Division of the Department of Labor for purposes of an investigation or audit of compliance with prevailing wage requirements. It is not a violation of this section for a prime contractor to require a subcontractor to provide addresses and social security numbers to the prime contractor for its own records, without weekly submission to the contracting agency.

- (2) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:
 - (i) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be provided under §5.5 (a)(3)(ii) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5, the appropriate information is being maintained under §5.5 (a)(3)(i) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5, and that such information is correct and complete;
 - (ii) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in Regulations, 29 CFR part 3;
 - (iii) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.
- (3) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph 3.b.(2) of this section.
- (4) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under section 1001 of title 18 and section 231 of title 31 of the United States Code.

- c. The contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph 3.a. of this section available for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of the contracting agency, the State DOT, the FHWA, or the Department of Labor, and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, the FHWA may, after written notice to the contractor, the contracting agency or the State DOT, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR 5.12.

4. Apprentices and trainees

- a. Apprentices (programs of the USDOL). Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice.

The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed.

Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination.

In the event the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

- b. Trainees (programs of the USDOL). Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration.

The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration.

Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed.

In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

- c. Equal employment opportunity. The utilization of apprentices, trainees and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR part 30.
- d. Apprentices and Trainees (programs of the U.S. DOT). Apprentices and trainees working under apprenticeship and skill training programs which have been certified by the Secretary of Transportation as promoting EEO in connection with Federal-aid highway construction programs are not subject to the requirements of paragraph 4 of this Section IV. The straight time hourly wage rates for apprentices and trainees under such programs will be established by the particular programs. The ratio of apprentices and trainees to journeymen shall not be greater than permitted by the terms of the particular program.

5. **Compliance with Copeland Act requirements.** The contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR part 3, which are incorporated by reference in this contract.

6. **Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert Form FHWA-1273 in any subcontracts and also require the subcontractors to include Form FHWA-1273 in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5.
7. **Contract termination:** debarment. A breach of the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5 may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.
8. **Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act requirements.** All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 CFR parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.
9. **Disputes concerning labor standards.** Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this contract shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 CFR parts 5, 6, and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.
10. **Certification of eligibility.**
 - a. By entering into this contract, the contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).
 - b. No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).
 - c. The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.

V. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT

The following clauses apply to any Federal-aid construction contract in an amount in excess of \$100,000 and subject to the overtime provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act. These clauses shall be inserted in addition to the clauses required by 29 CFR 5.5(a) or 29 CFR 4.6. As used in this paragraph, the terms laborers and mechanics include watchmen and guards.

1. **Overtime requirements.** No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.
2. **Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages.** In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section, the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section, in the sum of \$10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section.
3. **Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages.** The FHWA or the contracting agency shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (2.) of this section.
4. **Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraph (1.) through (4.) of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1.) through (4.) of this section.

VI. SUBLETTING OR ASSIGNING THE CONTRACT

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts on the National Highway System.

1. The contractor shall perform with its own organization contract work amounting to not less than 30 percent (or a greater percentage if specified elsewhere in the contract) of the total original contract price, excluding any specialty items designated by the contracting agency. Specialty items may be performed by subcontract and the amount of any such specialty items performed may be deducted from the total original contract price before computing the amount of work required to be performed by the contractor's own organization (23 CFR 635.116).
 - a. The term "perform work with its own organization" refers to workers employed or leased by the prime contractor, and equipment owned or rented by the prime contractor, with or without operators. Such term does not include employees or equipment of a subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor, agents of the prime contractor, or any other assignees. The term may include payments for the costs of hiring leased employees from an employee leasing firm meeting all relevant Federal and State regulatory requirements. Leased employees may only be included in this term if the prime contractor meets all of the following conditions:
 - (1) the prime contractor maintains control over the supervision of the day-to-day activities of the leased employees;
 - (2) the prime contractor remains responsible for the quality of the work of the leased employees;
 - (3) the prime contractor retains all power to accept or exclude individual employees from work on the project; and
 - (4) the prime contractor remains ultimately responsible for the payment of predetermined minimum wages, the submission of payrolls, statements of compliance and all other Federal regulatory requirements.
 - b. "Specialty Items" shall be construed to be limited to work that requires highly specialized knowledge, abilities, or equipment not ordinarily available in the type of contracting organizations qualified and expected to bid or propose on the contract as a whole and in general are to be limited to minor components of the overall contract.
2. The contract amount upon which the requirements set forth in paragraph (1) of Section VI is computed includes the cost of material and manufactured products which are to be purchased or produced by the contractor under the contract provisions.
3. The contractor shall furnish (a) a competent superintendent or supervisor who is employed by the firm, has full authority to direct performance of the work in accordance with the contract requirements, and is in charge of all construction operations (regardless of who performs the work) and (b) such other of its own organizational resources (supervision, management, and engineering services) as the contracting officer determines is necessary to assure the performance of the contract.
4. No portion of the contract shall be sublet, assigned or otherwise disposed of except with the written consent of the contracting officer, or authorized representative, and such consent when given shall not be construed to relieve the contractor of any responsibility for the fulfillment of the contract. Written consent will be given only after the contracting agency has assured that each subcontract is evidenced in writing and that it contains all pertinent provisions and requirements of the prime contract.

5. The 30% self-performance requirement of paragraph (1) is not applicable to design-build contracts; however, contracting agencies may establish their own self-performance requirements.

VII. SAFETY: ACCIDENT PREVENTION

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

1. In the performance of this contract the contractor shall comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws governing safety, health, and sanitation (23 CFR 635). The contractor shall provide all safeguards, safety devices and protective equipment and take any other needed actions as it determines, or as the contracting officer may determine, to be reasonably necessary to protect the life and health of employees on the job and the safety of the public and to protect property in connection with the performance of the work covered by the contract.
2. It is a condition of this contract, and shall be made a condition of each subcontract, which the contractor enters into pursuant to this contract, that the contractor and any subcontractor shall not permit any employee, in performance of the contract, to work in surroundings or under conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous to his/her health or safety, as determined under construction safety and health standards (29 CFR 1926) promulgated by the Secretary of Labor, in accordance with Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3704).
3. Pursuant to 29 CFR 1926.3, it is a condition of this contract that the Secretary of Labor or authorized representative thereof, shall have right of entry to any site of contract performance to inspect or investigate the matter of compliance with the construction safety and health standards and to carry out the duties of the Secretary under Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C.3704).

VIII. FALSE STATEMENTS CONCERNING HIGHWAY PROJECTS

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

In order to assure high quality and durable construction in conformity with approved plans and specifications and a high degree of reliability on statements and representations made by engineers, contractors, suppliers, and workers on Federal-aid highway projects, it is essential that all persons concerned with the project perform their functions as carefully, thoroughly, and honestly as possible. Willful falsification, distortion, or misrepresentation with respect to any facts related to the project is a violation of Federal law. To prevent any misunderstanding regarding the seriousness of these and similar acts, Form FHWA-1022 shall be posted on each Federal-aid highway project (23 CFR 635) in one or more places where it is readily available to all persons concerned with the project:

18 U.S.C. 1020 reads as follows:

"Whoever, being an officer, agent, or employee of the United States, or of any State or Territory, or whoever, whether a person, association, firm, or corporation, knowingly makes any false statement, false representation, or false report as to the character, quality, quantity, or cost of the material used or to be used, or the quantity or quality of the work performed or to be performed, or the cost thereof in connection with the submission of plans, maps, specifications, contracts, or costs of construction on any highway or related project submitted for approval to the Secretary of Transportation; or

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement, false representation, false report or false claim with respect to the character, quality, quantity, or cost of any work performed or to be performed, or materials furnished or to be furnished, in connection with the construction of any highway or related project approved by the Secretary of Transportation; or

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement or false representation as to material fact in any statement, certificate, or report submitted pursuant to provisions of the Federal-aid Roads Act approved July 1, 1916, (39 Stat. 355), as amended and supplemented;

Shall be fined under this title or imprisoned not more than 5 years or both."

IX. IMPLEMENTATION OF CLEAN AIR ACT AND FEDERAL WATER POLLUTION CONTROL ACT

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

By submission of this bid/proposal or the execution of this contract, or subcontract, as appropriate, the bidder, proposer, Federal-aid construction contractor, or subcontractor, as appropriate, will be deemed to have stipulated as follows:

1. That any person who is or will be utilized in the performance of this contract is not prohibited from receiving an award due to a violation of Section 508 of the Clean Water Act or Section 306 of the Clean Air Act.
2. That the contractor agrees to include or cause to be included the requirements of paragraph (1) of this Section X in every subcontract, and further agrees to take such action as the contracting agency may direct as a means of enforcing such requirements.

X. CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, INELIGIBILITY AND VOLUNTARY EXCLUSION

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts, design-build contracts, subcontracts, lower-tier subcontracts, purchase orders, lease agreements, consultant contracts or any other covered transaction requiring FHWA approval or that is estimated to cost \$25,000 or more – as defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200.

1. Instructions for Certification – First Tier Participants:

- a. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective first tier participant is providing the certification set out below.
- b. The inability of a person to provide the certification set out below will not necessarily result in denial of participation in this covered transaction. The prospective first tier participant shall submit an explanation of why it cannot provide the certification set out below. The certification or explanation will be considered in connection with the department or agency's determination whether to enter into this transaction. However, failure of the prospective first tier participant to furnish a certification or an explanation shall disqualify such a person from participation in this transaction.
- c. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when the contracting agency determined to enter into this transaction. If it is later determined that the prospective participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the contracting agency may terminate this transaction for cause of default.
- d. The prospective first tier participant shall provide immediate written notice to the contracting agency to whom this proposal is submitted if any time the prospective first tier participant learns that its certification was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.
- e. The terms "covered transaction," "debarred," "suspended," "ineligible," "participant," "person," "principal," and "voluntarily excluded," as used in this clause, are defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200. "First Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction between a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds and a participant (such as the prime or general contract). "Lower Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction under a First Tier Covered Transaction (such as subcontracts). "First Tier Participant" refers to the participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Participant" refers any participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a First Tier Participant or other Lower Tier Participants (such as subcontractors and suppliers).

- f. The prospective first tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency entering into this transaction.
- g. The prospective first tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include the clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower Tier Covered Transactions," provided by the department or contracting agency, entering into this covered transaction, without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions exceeding the \$25,000 threshold.
- h. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant is responsible for ensuring that its principals are not suspended, debarred, or otherwise ineligible to participate in covered transactions. To verify the eligibility of its principals, as well as the eligibility of any lower tier prospective participants, each participant may, but is not required to, check the Excluded Parties List System website (<https://www.epls.gov/>), which is compiled by the General Services Administration.
- i. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require the establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of the prospective participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
- j. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph (f) of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency may terminate this transaction for cause or default.

* * * * *

2. Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion – First Tier Participants:

- a. The prospective first tier participant certifies to the best of its knowledge and belief, that it and its principals:
 - (1) Are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participating in covered transactions by any Federal department or agency;
 - (2) Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction or contract under a public transaction; violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property;
 - (3) Are not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entity (Federal, State or local) with commission of any of the offenses enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this certification; and
 - (4) Have not within a three-year period preceding this application/proposal had one or more public transactions (Federal, State or local) terminated for cause or default.
- b. Where the prospective participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to this proposal.

2. Instructions for Certification - Lower Tier Participants:

(Applicable to all subcontracts, purchase orders and other lower tier transactions requiring prior FHWA approval or estimated to cost \$25,000 or more - 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200)

- a. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective lower tier is providing the certification set out below.
- b. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was entered into. If it is later determined that the prospective lower tier participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department, or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment.
- c. The prospective lower tier participant shall provide immediate written notice to the person to which this proposal is submitted if at any time the prospective lower tier participant learns that its certification was erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.
- d. The terms "covered transaction," "debarred," "suspended," "ineligible," "participant," "person," "principal," and "voluntarily excluded," as used in this clause, are defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200. You may contact the person to which this proposal is submitted for assistance in obtaining a copy of those regulations. "First Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction between a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds and a participant (such as the prime or general contract). "Lower Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction under a First Tier Covered Transaction (such as subcontracts). "First Tier Participant" refers to the participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Participant" refers to any participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a First Tier Participant or other Lower Tier Participants (such as subcontractors and suppliers).
- e. The prospective lower tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency with which this transaction originated.
- f. The prospective lower tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include this clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower Tier Covered Transaction," without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions exceeding the \$25,000 threshold.
- g. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant is responsible for ensuring that its principals are not suspended, debarred, or otherwise ineligible to participate in covered transactions. To verify the eligibility of its principals, as well as the eligibility of any lower tier prospective participants, each participant may, but is not required to, check the Excluded Parties List System website (<https://www.epls.gov/>), which is compiled by the General Services Administration.
- h. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
- i. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph e of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment.

* * * * *

Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion--Lower Tier Participants:

1. The prospective lower tier participant certifies, by submission of this proposal, that neither it nor its principals is presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participating in covered transactions by any Federal department or agency.
2. Where the prospective lower tier participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to this proposal.

* * * * *

XI. CERTIFICATION REGARDING USE OF CONTRACT FUNDS FOR LOBBYING

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts which exceed \$100,000 (49 CFR 20).

1. The prospective participant certifies, by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:
 - a. No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
 - b. If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions.
2. This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.
3. The prospective participant also agrees by submitting its bid or proposal that the participant shall require that the language of this certification be included in all lower tier subcontracts, which exceed \$100,000 and that all such recipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

ON-THE-JOB TRAINING:

(10-16-07) (Rev. 4-21-15)

Z-10

Description

The North Carolina Department of Transportation will administer a custom version of the Federal On-the-Job Training (OJT) Program, commonly referred to as the Alternate OJT Program. All contractors (existing and newcomers) will be automatically placed in the Alternate Program. Standard OJT requirements typically associated with individual projects will no longer be applied at the project level. Instead, these requirements will be applicable on an annual basis for each contractor administered by the OJT Program Manager.

On the Job Training shall meet the requirements of 23 CFR 230.107 (b), 23 USC – Section 140, this provision and the On-the-Job Training Program Manual.

The Alternate OJT Program will allow a contractor to train employees on Federal, State and privately funded projects located in North Carolina. However, priority shall be given to training employees on NCDOT Federal-Aid funded projects.

Minorities and Women

Developing, training and upgrading of minorities and women toward journeyman level status is a primary objective of this special training provision. Accordingly, the Contractor shall make every effort to enroll minority and women as trainees to the extent that such persons are available within a reasonable area of recruitment. This training commitment is not intended, and shall not be used, to discriminate against any applicant for training, whether a member of a minority group or not.

Assigning Training Goals

The Department, through the OJT Program Manager, will assign training goals for a calendar year based on the contractors' past three years' activity and the contractors' anticipated upcoming year's activity with the Department. At the beginning of each year, all contractors eligible will be contacted by the Department to determine the number of trainees that will be assigned for the upcoming calendar year. At that time the Contractor shall enter into an agreement with the Department to provide a self-imposed on-the-job training program for the calendar year. This agreement will include a specific number of annual training goals agreed to by both parties. The number of training assignments may range from 1 to 15 per contractor per calendar year. The Contractor shall sign an agreement to fulfill their annual goal for the year.\

Training Classifications

The Contractor shall provide on-the-job training aimed at developing full journeyman level workers in the construction craft/operator positions. Preference shall be given to providing training in the following skilled work classifications:

Equipment Operators	Office Engineers
Truck Drivers	Estimators
Carpenters	Iron / Reinforcing Steel Workers
Concrete Finishers	Mechanics
Pipe Layers	Welders

The Department has established common training classifications and their respective training requirements that may be used by the contractors. However, the classifications established are not all-inclusive. Where the training is oriented toward construction applications, training will be allowed in lower-level management positions such as office engineers and estimators. Contractors shall submit new classifications for specific job functions that their employees are performing. The Department will review and recommend for acceptance to FHWA the new classifications proposed by contractors, if applicable. New classifications shall meet the following requirements:

Proposed training classifications are reasonable and realistic based on the job skill classification needs, and

The number of training hours specified in the training classification is consistent with common practices and provides enough time for the trainee to obtain journeyman level status.

The Contractor may allow trainees to be trained by a subcontractor provided that the Contractor retains primary responsibility for meeting the training and this provision is made applicable to the subcontract. However, only the Contractor will receive credit towards the annual goal for the trainee.

Where feasible, 25 percent of apprentices or trainees in each occupation shall be in their first year of apprenticeship or training. The number of trainees shall be distributed among the work classifications on the basis of the contractor's needs and the availability of journeymen in the various classifications within a reasonable area of recruitment.

No employee shall be employed as a trainee in any classification in which they have successfully completed a training course leading to journeyman level status or in which they have been employed as a journeyman.

Records and Reports

The Contractor shall maintain enrollment, monthly and completion reports documenting company compliance under these contract documents. These documents and any other information as requested shall be submitted to the OJT Program Manager.

Upon completion and graduation of the program, the Contractor shall provide each trainee with a certification Certificate showing the type and length of training satisfactorily completed.

Trainee Interviews

All trainees enrolled in the program will receive an initial and Trainee/Post graduate interview conducted by the OJT program staff.

Trainee Wages

Contractors shall compensate trainees on a graduating pay scale based upon a percentage of the prevailing minimum journeyman wages (Davis-Bacon Act). Minimum pay shall be as follows:

60 percent	of the journeyman wage for the first half of the training period
75 percent	of the journeyman wage for the third quarter of the training period
90 percent	of the journeyman wage for the last quarter of the training period

In no instance shall a trainee be paid less than the local minimum wage. The Contractor shall adhere to the minimum hourly wage rate that will satisfy both the NC Department of Labor (NCDOL) and the Department.

Achieving or Failing to Meet Training Goals

The Contractor will be credited for each trainee employed by him on the contract work who is currently enrolled or becomes enrolled in an approved program and who receives training for at least 50 percent of the specific program requirement. Trainees will be allowed to be transferred between projects if required by the Contractor's scheduled workload to meet training goals.

If a contractor fails to attain their training assignments for the calendar year, they may be taken off the NCDOT's Bidders List.

Measurement and Payment

No compensation will be made for providing required training in accordance with these contract documents.

NAME CHANGE FOR NCDENR:

(1-19-16)

Z-11

Wherever in the 2012 Standard Specifications, Project Special Provisions, Standard Special Provisions, Permits or Plans that reference is made to "NCDENR" or "North Carolina Department of Environment and Natural Resources", replace with "NCDEQ" or North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality" respectively, as the case may be.

MINIMUM WAGES**GENERAL DECISION NC170104 01/06/2017 NC104**

Z-104

Date: January 6, 2017

General Decision Number: NC170104 01/06/2017 NC104

Superseded General Decision Numbers: NC20160104

State: North Carolina

Construction Type: HIGHWAY

COUNTIES:

Beaufort	Granville	Pasquotank
Bertie	Halifax	Perquimans
Bladen	Harnett	Robeson
Camden	Hertford	Sampson
Carteret	Hyde	Scotland
Chowan	Jones	Tyrrell
Columbus	Lenoir	Vance
Craven	Martin	Warren
Dare	Northampton	Washington
Duplin	Pamlico	Wilson
Gates		

HIGHWAY CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS (excluding tunnels, building structures in rest area projects & railroad construction; bascule, suspension & spandrel arch bridges designed for commercial navigation, bridges involving marine construction; and other major bridges).

Note: Under Executive Order (EO) 13658, an hourly minimum wage of \$10.20 for calendar year 2017 applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2015. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must pay all workers in any classification listed on this wage determination at least \$10.20 per hour (or the applicable wage rate listed on this wage determination, if it is higher) for all hours spent performing on the contract for calendar year 2017. The EO minimum wage rate will be adjusted annually. Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts.

Modification Number
0

Publication Date
01/06/2017

SUNC2014-006 11/17/2014

	Rates	Fringes
BLASTER	21.85	
CARPENTER	13.72	
CEMENT MASON/CONCRETE FINISHER	14.26	
ELECTRICIAN		
Electrician	18.69	2.66
Telecommunications Technician	14.72	1.67
IRONWORKER	16.32	
LABORER		
Asphalt Raker and Spreader	12.42	

	Rates	Fringes
Asphalt Screed/Jackman	13.48	
Carpenter Tender	10.85	
Cement Mason/Concrete Finisher Tender	11.35	
Common or General	10.12	
Guardrail/Fence Installer	13.39	
Pipelayer	13.31	
Traffic Signal/Lighting Installer	16.88	
PAINTER		
Bridge	19.62	
POWER EQUIPMENT OPERATORS		
Asphalt Broom Tractor	13.28	
Bulldozer Fine	18.46	
Bulldozer Rough	14.09	
Concrete Grinder/Groover	24.66	
Crane Boom Trucks	17.25	
Crane Other	21.48	
Crane Rough/All-Terrain	19.00	
Drill Operator Rock	15.43	1.61
Drill Operator Structure	19.12	
Excavator Fine	17.61	
Excavator Rough	12.99	
Grader/Blade Fine	16.73	
Grader/Blade Rough	15.28	
Loader 2 Cubic Yards or Less	10.28	
Loader Greater Than 2 Cubic Yards	13.58	
Material Transfer Vehicle (Shuttle Buggy)	17.39	
Mechanic	18.63	
Milling Machine	14.38	
Off-Road Hauler/Water Tanker	9.30	
Oiler/Greaser	13.45	
Pavement Marking Equipment	11.87	
Paver Asphalt	15.53	
Roller Asphalt Breakdown	12.13	
Roller Asphalt Finish	13.65	
Roller Other	10.48	
Scraper Finish	13.98	
Scraper Rough	10.17	
Slip Form Machine	19.29	
Tack Truck/Distributor Operator	14.56	
TRUCK DRIVER		
GVWR of 26,000 Lbs or Less	10.35	
GVWR of 26,000 Lbs or Greater	12.04	

Welders – Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

Note: Executive Order (EO) 13706, Establishing Paid Sick Leave for Federal Contractors applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2017. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must provide employees with 1 hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours they work, up to 56 hours of paid sick leave each year. Employees must be permitted to use paid sick leave for their own illness, injury or other health-related needs, including preventive care; to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is ill, injured, or has other health-related needs, including preventive care; or for

reasons resulting from, or to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is a victim of, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking. Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts.

Unlisted classifications needed for work not included within the scope of the classifications listed may be added after award only as provided in the labor standards contract clauses (29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(ii)).

The body of each wage determination lists the classification and wage rates that have been found to be prevailing for the cited type(s) of construction in the area covered by the wage determination. The classifications are listed in alphabetical order of "identifiers" that indicate whether the particular rate is a union rate (current union negotiated rate for local), a survey rate (weighted average rate) or a union average rate (weighted union average rate).

Union Rate Identifiers

A four letter classification abbreviation identifier enclosed in dotted lines beginning with characters other than "SU" or "UAVG" denotes that the union classification and rate were prevailing for that classification in the survey. Example: PLUM0198-005 07/01/2014. PLUM is an abbreviation identifier of the union which prevailed in the survey for this classification, which in this example would be Plumbers. 0198 indicates the local union number or district council number where applicable, i.e., Plumbers Local 0198. The next number, 005 in the example, is an internal number used in processing the wage determination. 07/01/2014 is the effective date of the most current negotiated rate, which in this example is July 1, 2014.

Union prevailing wage rates are updated to reflect all rate changes in the collective bargaining agreement (CBA) governing this classification and rate.

Survey Rate Identifiers

Classifications listed under the "SU" identifier indicate that no one rate prevailed for this classification in the survey and the published rate is derived by computing a weighted average rate based on all the rates reported in the survey for that classification. As this weighted average rate includes all rates reported in the survey, it may include both union and non-union rates. Example: SULA2012-007 5/13/2014. SU indicates the rates are survey rates based on a weighted average calculation of rates and are not majority rates. LA indicates the State of Louisiana. 2012 is the year of survey on which these classifications and rates are based. The next number, 007 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 5/13/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

Survey wage rates are not updated and remain in effect until a new survey is conducted.

Union Average Rate Identifiers

Classification(s) listed under the UAVG identifier indicate that no single majority rate prevailed for those classifications; however, 100% of the data reported for the classifications was union data. EXAMPLE: UAVG-OH-0010 08/29/2014. UAVG indicates that the rate is a weighted union average rate. OH indicates the state. The next number, 0010 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 08/29/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

A UAVG rate will be updated once a year, usually in January of each year, to reflect a weighted average of the current negotiated/CBA rate of the union locals from which the rate is based.

WAGE DETERMINATION APPEALS PROCESS

1.) Has there been an initial decision in the matter? This can be:

- * an existing published wage determination
- * a survey underlying a wage determination
- * a Wage and Hour Division letter setting forth a position on a wage determination matter
- * a conformance (additional classification and rate) ruling

On survey related matters, initial contact, including requests for summaries of surveys, should be with the Wage and Hour Regional Office for the area in which the survey was conducted because those Regional Offices have responsibility for the Davis-Bacon survey program. If the response from this initial contact is not satisfactory, then the process described in 2.) and 3.) should be followed.

With regard to any other matter not yet ripe for the formal process described here, initial contact should be with the Branch of Construction Wage Determinations. Write to:

Branch of Construction Wage Determinations
Wage and Hour Division
U. S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20210

2.) If the answer to the question in 1.) is yes, then an interested party (those affected by the action) can request review and reconsideration from the Wage and Hour Administrator (See 29 CFR Part 1.8 and 29 CFR Part 7). Write to:

Wage and Hour Administrator
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20210

The request should be accompanied by a full statement of the interested party's position and by any information (wage payment data, project description, area practice material, etc.) that the requestor considers relevant to the issue.

3.) If the decision of the Administrator is not favorable, an interested party may appeal directly to the Administrative Review Board (formerly the Wage Appeals Board). Write to:

Administrative Review Board
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20210

4.) All decisions by the Administrative Review Board are final.

END OF GENERAL DECISION

Firm Name and Address	Item No.	Item Description	* Agreed upon Unit Price	** Dollar Volume of Item
Name Address				
Name Address				
Name Address				
Name Address				
Name Address				
Name Address				

* The Dollar Volume shown in this column shall be the Actual Price Agreed Upon by the Prime Contractor and the DBE subcontractor, and these prices will be used to determine the percentage of the DBE participation in the contract.

**** Dollar Volume of DBE Subcontractor** \$ _____

Percentage of Total Contract Bid Price _____%

** Dollar Volume of DBE Subcontractor Percentage of Total Contract Bid Price:
 If firm is a Material Supplier Only, show Dollar Volume as 60% of Agreed Upon Amount from Letter of Intent.
 If firm is a Manufacturer, show Dollar Volume as 100% of Agreed Upon Amount from Letter of Intent.

County : Dare, Hyde

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
ROADWAY ITEMS						
0001	0000100000-N	800	MOBILIZATION	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0002	0000400000-N	801	CONSTRUCTION SURVEYING	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0003	0043000000-N	226	GRADING	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0004	0050000000-E	226	SUPPLEMENTARY CLEARING & GRUB-BING	0.3 ACR		
0005	0057000000-E	226	UNDERCUT EXCAVATION	200 CY		
0006	0255000000-E	SP	GENERIC GRADING ITEM (WASHED #57 STONE)	33 TON		
0007	0331000000-E	SP	GENERIC DRAINAGE ITEM (CONCRETE SPILLWAY LIP)	2.5 CY		
0008	0542000000-E	310	*** PVC PIPE CULVERTS (8")	18 LF		
0009	0986000000-E	SP	GENERIC PIPE ITEM (8" PREFORATED PVC PIPE)	182 LF		
0010	1121000000-E	520	AGGREGATE BASE COURSE	1,358 TON		
0011	1519000000-E	610	ASPHALT CONC SURFACE COURSE, TYPE S9.5B	800 TON		
0012	1575000000-E	620	ASPHALT BINDER FOR PLANT MIX	50 TON		
0013	1858000000-E	710	***** PORT CEM CONC PAVEMENT, RAMPS (WITH DOWELS) (6")	175 SY		
0014	1902000000-N	710	SURFACE TESTING CONCRETE PAVE- MENT	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0015	1924000000-N	725	FIELD LABORATORY RENTAL, PORT CEM CONC PAVEMENT	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0016	2022000000-E	815	SUBDRAIN EXCAVATION	25 CY		
0017	2026000000-E	815	GEOTEXTILE FOR SUBSURFACE DRAINS	122 SY		
0018	2591000000-E	848	4" CONCRETE SIDEWALK	82 SY		

County : Dare, Hyde

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0019	2605000000-N	848	CONCRETE CURB RAMP	3 EA		
0020	2759000000-N	SP	GENERIC PAVING ITEM (CONCRETE WHEEL STOPS)	46 EA		
0021	2759000000-N	SP	GENERIC PAVING ITEM (REMOVE & REPLACE CONCRETE CURB RAMP)	6 EA		
0022	3533000000-E	866	CHAIN LINK FENCE, *** FABRIC (72")	790 LF		
0023	3539000000-E	866	METAL LINE POSTS FOR *** CHAIN LINK FENCE (72")	70 EA		
0024	3545000000-E	866	METAL TERMINAL POSTS FOR *** CHAIN LINK FENCE (72")	15 EA		
0025	3551000000-E	866	METAL GATE POSTS FOR *** CHAIN LINK FENCE, SINGLE GATE (72", SINGLE GATE)	2 EA		
0026	3564000000-E	866	SINGLE GATES, *** HIGH, *** WIDE, *** OPENING (72" X 6' X 6')	1 EA		
0027	3572000000-E	867	CHAIN LINK FENCE RESET	340 LF		
0028	3656000000-E	876	GEOTEXTILE FOR DRAINAGE	150 SY		
0029	4116100000-N	904	SIGN ERECTION, RELOCATE, TYPE **** (GROUND MOUNTED) (METAL)	3 EA		
0030	4413000000-E	SP	WORK ZONE ADVANCE/GENERAL WARNING SIGNING	128 SF		
0031	4457000000-N	SP	TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0032	4685000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (4", 90 MILS)	5,076 LF		
0033	4686000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (4", 120 MILS)	25 LF		
0034	4695000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (8", 90 MILS)	950 LF		

County : Dare, Hyde

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0035	4697000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (8", 120 MILS)	40 LF		
0036	4710000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING LINES (24", 120 MILS)	110 LF		
0037	4721000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING CHARACTER (120 MILS)	7 EA		
0038	4725000000-E	1205	THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKING SYMBOL (90 MILS)	24 EA		
0039	4895000000-N	SP	GENERIC PAVEMENT MARKING ITEM (STEEL PIPE BOLLARDS)	2 EA		
0040	5709300000-E	1520	6" FORCE MAIN SEWER	300 LF		
0041	6000000000-E	1605	TEMPORARY SILT FENCE	1,625 LF		
0042	6006000000-E	1610	STONE FOR EROSION CONTROL, CLASS A	75 TON		
0043	6015000000-E	1615	TEMPORARY MULCHING	0.5 ACR		
0044	6018000000-E	1620	SEED FOR TEMPORARY SEEDING	100 LB		
0045	6021000000-E	1620	FERTILIZER FOR TEMPORARY SEEDING	0.5 TON		
0046	6071010000-E	SP	WATTLE	30 LF		
0047	6084000000-E	1660	SEEDING & MULCHING	0.5 ACR		
0048	6087000000-E	1660	MOWING	0.5 ACR		
0049	6090000000-E	1661	SEED FOR REPAIR SEEDING	50 LB		
0050	6093000000-E	1661	FERTILIZER FOR REPAIR SEEDING	0.25 TON		
0051	6096000000-E	1662	SEED FOR SUPPLEMENTAL SEEDING	50 LB		
0052	6102000000-E	1664	SODDING	400 SY		
0053	6108000000-E	1665	FERTILIZER TOPDRESSING	0.25 TON		

County : Dare, Hyde

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0054	6114500000-N	1667	SPECIALIZED HAND MOWING	10	MHR	
0055	6132000000-N	SP	GENERIC EROSION CONTROL ITEM (CONCRETE WASHOUT STRUCTURE)	2	EA	

STRUCTURE ITEMS

0056	8860000000-N	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM (HATTERAS TERMINAL PASSENGER S HELTER)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0057	8860000000-N	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM (OCRACoke TERMINAL BATHROOMS)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0058	8860000000-N	SP	GENERIC STRUCTURE ITEM (OCRACoke TERMINAL PASSENGER S HELTER)	Lump Sum	L.S.	

1458/Aug02/Q13489.3/D226012410000/E58

Total Amount Of Bid For Entire Project :

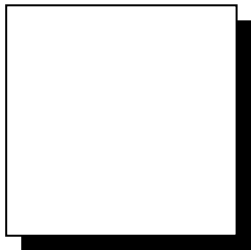
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

NCDOT HATTERAS ISLAND PASSENGER TERMINALS

Hatteras Island, NC

SCO #17-17067-01A

JKF Project No. 2016-26
May 1, 2017



Specification No.



625 Lynndale Ct. Suite F
Greenville, NC 27858
252-355-1068 Phone
252-355-0216 Fax
jkf@jkf-arch.com

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS TABLE OF CONTENTS
NCDOT HATTERAS ISLAND
PASSENGER TERMINALS
Hatteras Island, NC
SCO #17-17067-01A

Division	Section Title	Pages
DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS		
012500.....	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES.....	3
012600.....	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES.....	2
012900.....	PAYMENT PROCEDURES.....	3
013100.....	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION	7
013200.....	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION	5
013300.....	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES	9
014000.....	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS.....	9
015000.....	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS.....	10
016000.....	PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS.....	5
017300.....	EXECUTION	7
017700.....	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES	5
017823.....	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.....	4
017839.....	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS	3
DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE		
033000.....	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE	15
DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES		
061000.....	ROUGH CARPENTRY	7
061063.....	EXTERIOR ROUGH CARPENTRY.....	4
061300.....	HEAVY TIMBER CONSTRUCTION	5
061516.....	WOOD ROOF DECKING	3
061533.....	WOOD PATIO DECKING.....	5
061600.....	SHEATHING	4
062013.....	EXTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY	7
DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION		
073113.....	ASPHALT SHINGLES.....	7
079200.....	JOINT SEALANTS.....	8
DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS		
081113.....	HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES	5
085200.....	WOOD WINDOWS.....	5
087100.....	DOOR HARDWARE.....	6
DIVISION 09 - FINISHES		
093013.....	CERAMIC TILING.....	6
DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES		

101423.....	PANEL SIGNAGE.....	4
102800.....	TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES.....	4
DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK		
316219.....	TIMBER PILES	5
DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS		
321313.....	CONCRETE PAVING.....	10
321726.....	TACTILE WARNING SURFACING.....	3
OTHER		
	GEOTECHNICAL REPORT	60

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS



Architectural



Structural

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use Contractor's Standard Form.
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.

- h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
 - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 60 days after Notice to Proceed.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - b. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided.

- c. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- d. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- e. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- f. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- h. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- i. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
2. Within time specified in Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.

- a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
- b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
- c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.

- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.

2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor via The NC State Construction Interscope System.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE OR FIELD ORDER

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on Field Order Form. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the Schedule of Values with preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 1. Correlate line items in the Schedule of Values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
 - a. Application for Payment forms with Continuation Sheets.
 - b. Submittals Schedule.
 - c. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 2. Submit the Schedule of Values to Architect at earliest possible date but no later than 21 days after notice to proceed. Provide separate schedule for each Armory.
- B. Format and Content: Use the Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the Schedule of Values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
 - 1. Submit draft of **AIA Document G703 Continuation Sheets**.
 - 2. Arrange the Schedule of Values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
 - 3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with the Project Manual table of contents. Provide several line items for principal subcontract amounts, where appropriate.
 - 4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
 - 5. Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction Work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Forms: Use **AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 Continuation Sheets** as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. **Architect** will return incomplete applications without action.
 - 1. Entries shall match data on the Schedule of Values and Contractor's Construction Schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 - 2. Include amounts of Approved Change Orders issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
- E. Transmittal: Submit 4 signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to **Architect** by a method ensuring receipt **within 24 hours**. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
 - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- F. Initial Payment: Initial Application for Payment will not be reviewed or executed until the following administrative submittals are submitted and approved by the Architect:
 - 1. Project Schedule.
 - 2. List of Subcontractors, materials, products.
 - 3. Schedule of Values.
 - 4. Submittal Schedule.
- G. Final Payment Application: Submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
 - 1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
 - 2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
 - 3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
 - 4. NC State Construction Forms "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
 - 5. NC State Construction Forms "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
 - 6. NC State Construction Forms "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
 - 7. Summary of all MBE's paid for project. Use Appendix E to Summarize.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General coordination procedures.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
 - 4. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
 - 4. Name of Product and Manufacturer to be provided by the Subcontractor.
 - 5. Submit Subcontract List within 30 days of Notice to Proceed.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 30 days of Notice to Proceed, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
 - 1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
 - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Coordination: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
 - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- C. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
 - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- D. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 - 5. Progress meetings.
 - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 - 7. Project closeout activities.
 - 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- E. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
 - 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
 - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to the coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
 - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
 - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - g. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
 - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
 - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
 - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
 7. Electrical Work: Show the following:

- a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
 - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
 - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
 - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
- a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

1.7 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
 2. Project number.
 3. Date.
 4. Name of Contractor.
 5. Name of Architect.
 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 7. RFI subject.
 8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 12. Contractor's signature.
 13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.

1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log monthly. Contractor's standard form acceptable to the Architect
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
1. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
 2. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

1.8 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Conduct the conference to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Tentative construction schedule.
 - b. Phasing.
 - c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
 - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.

- e. Lines of communications.
- f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
- g. Procedures for RFIs.
- h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
- i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
- j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
- k. Submittal procedures.
- l. Preparation of record documents.
- m. Use of the premises.
- n. Work restrictions.
- o. Working hours.
- p. Owner's occupancy requirements.
- q. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
- r. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
- s. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
- t. Construction waste management and recycling.
- u. Parking availability.
- v. Office, work, and storage areas.
- w. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
- x. First aid.
- y. Security.
- z. Progress cleaning.

4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

B. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.

- 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
- 2. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
- 3. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
- 4. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

C. Progress Meetings: Architect will conduct progress meetings at monthly intervals.

- 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
- 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
- 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project. Contractor shall provide a written summary of the project status in the following format at each meeting:
 - a. Review outstanding items from previous minutes.
 - b. Contractors current status complete with written summary.
 - c. Contractors work to be performed next period, written summary.
 - d. Change Order status

- e. Shop Drawing status.
 - f. Project Schedule.
 - g. Other.

 - h. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
- a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- D. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
- 1. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 3. Daily construction reports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- D. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- E. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
 - 2. PDF electronic file.
 - 3. Two paper copies.

- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
- C. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
 - 1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
- D. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Project Acceptance.
 - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
 - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
 - 2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
 - 3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
 - 4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
 - 5. Pre-Final: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Project Acceptance and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary to schedule Final Inspections.
 - 6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.

- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
 - a. Uninterruptible services.
 - b. Use of premises restrictions.
 - c. Environmental control.
 2. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Subcontract awards.
 - b. Submittals.
 - c. Purchases.
 - d. Mockups.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Sample testing.
 - g. Deliveries.
 - h. Installation.
 - i. Tests and inspections.
 - j. Adjusting.
 - k. Curing.
 - l. Building flush-out.
 - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
 3. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
 - a. Structural completion.
 - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 - c. Permanent space enclosure.
 - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
 - e. Completion of electrical installation.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Pre-final inspections, and final completion, and the following interim milestones:
1. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 2. Power on Building.
 3. Critical inspections such as under slab rough-in, above ceiling inspections, wall rough-ins, etc.
- E. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
1. Unresolved issues.
 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 4. Notations on returned submittals.
 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.
- F. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor

intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.

- G. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

2.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (GANTT CHART)

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's construction schedule within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
 - 1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

2.3 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
 - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
 - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 - 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 - 4. Equipment at Project site.
 - 5. Material deliveries.
 - 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
 - 7. Accidents.
 - 8. Meetings and significant decisions.
 - 9. Unusual events (see special reports).
 - 10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 - 11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
 - 12. Emergency procedures.
 - 13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 14. Change Orders received and implemented.
 - 15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
 - 16. Services connected and disconnected.
 - 17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
 - 18. Partial completions and occupancies.

2.4 SPECIAL REPORTS

- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Architect within seven day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

- C. Submit 5-year weather data for the previous 5-years at the beginning of the Project within 30 days of Notice to Proceed. Data shall indicate the average number of days per month with precipitation that will serve as baseline for any weather days to be claimed in excess of the 5-year averages.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
 - 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
 - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION 013200

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
 - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.

3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
 - b. Finalize the schedule such that all shop drawings required for the project are submitted within 90 days of Notice to Proceed.
4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.
 - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
 - g. Scheduled date of fabrication.
 - h. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
 - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
 - j. Activity or event number.

1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings will not be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 1. Initial Review: Allow 20 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 20 days for review of each resubmittal.

4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 20 days for initial review of each submittal.

D. Paper Submittals: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification.

1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
2. Include the following information for processing and recording action taken:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Name of subcontractor.
 - f. Name of supplier.
 - g. Name of manufacturer.
 - h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - l. Other necessary identification.
3. Additional Paper Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
4. Transmittal for Paper Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will discard submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
 - a. Transmittal Form for Paper Submittals: Use Contractor's Standard Transmittal.
 - b. Transmittal Form for Paper Submittals: Provide locations on form for the following information:
 - 1) Project name.
 - 2) Date.
 - 3) Destination (To:).
 - 4) Source (From:).
 - 5) Name and address of Architect.
 - 6) Name of Construction Manager.
 - 7) Name of Contractor.
 - 8) Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - 9) Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - 10) Category and type of submittal.
 - 11) Submittal purpose and description.
 - 12) Specification Section number and title.
 - 13) Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - 14) Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - 15) Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - 16) Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
 - 17) Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - 18) Remarks.
 - 19) Signature of transmitter.

- E. Electronic Submittals (Limit to those submittals pre-approved for electronic submission by the Architect): Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - a. File name shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number project identifier (e.g., 061000.01-PCC Science). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 061000.01.A-PCC Science).
 3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use electronic form acceptable to Architect, containing the following information:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name and address of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - g. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - h. Category and type of submittal.
 - i. Submittal purpose and description.
 - j. Specification Section number and title.
 - k. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - l. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - m. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - n. Related physical samples submitted directly.
 - o. Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - p. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
 - q. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - r. Other necessary identification.
 - s. Remarks.
- F. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- G. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

- J. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 - 1. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 - 2. Action Submittals: Submit up to 5 paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
 - 3. Informational Submittals: Submit up to 5 paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
 - 4. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
 - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
 - b. Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
 - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
 - 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.

5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
 6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Up to 5 paper copies of Product Data unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file (when permitted).
 - b. Up to 5 opaque copies of each submittal. Architect will retain two copies; remainder will be returned.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Generic description of Sample.
 - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - c. Sample source.
 - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
 3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
 4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.

- a. Number of Samples: Submit 2 full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.

- 5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain 1 Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.

- E. Coordination Drawing Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

- F. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation."

- G. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."

- H. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

- I. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

- J. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

- K. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.

- L. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

- M. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.

- N. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.

- O. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- P. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- R. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- S. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
 - 2. Date of evaluation.
 - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
 - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
 - 5. Description of product.
 - 6. Test procedures and results.
 - 7. Limitations of use.
- T. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- U. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- V. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- W. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit up to 5 paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action, as follows:
 - 1. Reviewed: Information submitted is in compliance with Contract Documents.
 - 2. Reviewed as Noted: Information submitted is in compliance with Contract Documents except as noted.
 - 3. Revise and Resubmit: Submittal does not meet Contract Documents or is incomplete, and must be resubmitted.
 - 4. Not Reviewed: Incomplete submittal, was not required or does not require review.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
 - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
 - 1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
 - 2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
 - 3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes, doors, windows, millwork, casework, specialties, furnishings and equipment, and lighting.

- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
 - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
 - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data : For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
 - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
 - 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
 - 1. Specification Section number and title.
 - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 - 3. Description of test and inspection.
 - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
 - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
 - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
 - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
 - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- C. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
 - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
 - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- D. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified.

Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.

- E. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Date of issue.
2. Project title and number.
3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
8. Complete test or inspection data.
9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
 - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
 - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
 - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.

- c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
 - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
 - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
 - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
- 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
 - 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
 - 5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
 - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
- 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
 - 2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
- 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 - 2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.

3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. **Manufacturer's Field Services:** Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- D. **Manufacturer's Technical Services:** Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. **Retesting/Reinspecting:** Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. **Testing Agency Responsibilities:** Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. **Associated Services:** Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- H. **Coordination:** Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.

1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency and special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, as indicated in Statement of Special Inspections attached to this Section, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.

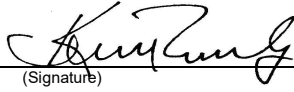
1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

Statement of Special Inspections

Project: NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal
Location: Hatteras Island, North Carolina
Owner's Representative: NCDOT – Sterling Baker
Owner's Address: NCDOT, Raleigh, NC

This Statement of Special Inspections is submitted as a condition for permit issuance in accordance with the Special Inspection requirements of the 2012 North Carolina State Building Code. It includes a Schedule of Special Inspection Services applicable to this project as well as the name of the Special Inspector and the identity of other approved agencies intended to be retained for conducting these inspections. This Statement of Special Inspections was prepared by the following Designers of Record:

Structural	Kevin M. Roomsburg, P.E. (Type or print name)	 (Signature)	7-25-2017 (Date)
Architectural	John K. Farkas, AIA (Type or print name)	 (Signature)	 (Date)
Mechanical	 (Type or print name)	 (Signature)	 (Date)
Other	 (Type or print name)	 (Signature)	 (Date)

The Special Inspector shall keep records of all inspections and shall furnish inspection reports to the State Construction Office and the Designers of Record. Discovered discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Contractor for correction. If such discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the State Construction Office and the Designers of Record. The Special Inspections program does not relieve the Contractor of his or her responsibilities.

Interim reports shall be submitted to the State Construction Office, Owner, and the Designers of Record.

Interim Report Frequency: Monthly

A Final Report of Special Inspections documenting completion of all required Special Inspections and correction of any discrepancies should be submitted prior to issuance of a Certificate of Use and Occupancy.

Job Site safety and means and methods of construction are solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

Owner's Authorization

Accepted for the SCO by:

Signature Date

Signature Date

Schedule of Special Inspection Services

The following sheets comprise the required schedule of special inspections for this project. The construction divisions which require special inspections for this project are as follows.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Structural Steel | <input type="checkbox"/> Sprayed Fire Resistant Material |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cold-Formed Steel Framing | <input type="checkbox"/> Intumescent Fire-Resistant Coatings |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Concrete Construction | <input type="checkbox"/> Exterior Insulation & Finish System |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Masonry – Level 1 ^a | <input type="checkbox"/> Smoke Control |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wood Construction | <input type="checkbox"/> Retaining Walls Exceeding 5 Feet |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Soils | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wind-Resisting Components (1705.4) ^b |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Driven Deep Foundations | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wind Requirements (1706) ^c |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cast-in-Place Deep Foundations | <input type="checkbox"/> Seismic Resistance ^d |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Helical Pile Foundations | |

a. Occupancy Category IV structures, as defined by 1604.5 of the North Carolina Building Code, may require Level 2 inspection of masonry construction. The SER shall review Code sections 1704.5.1 and 1704.5.3 and adjust the Schedule of Special Inspection Services as needed.

b. Special inspections for Wind Resistance are applicable to those areas defined by 1705.4 of the North Carolina Building Code. Wind Resistance Special Inspections are only effective if the 1704.1.2 base triggers apply.

c. Special Inspections for Wind Requirements are applicable to those areas defined by 1706.1 of the North Carolina Building Code. Wind Requirements are effective even if the 1704.1.2 base triggers do not apply.

d. Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance are applicable to those structures defined by 1707.1 of the North Carolina Building Code. Seismic Requirements are only effective if the 1704.1.2 base triggers apply.

Inspection Agents	Qualifications	Address
1. Special Inspector TBD	SI	
2. Structural Engineer of Record Kevin M. Roomsburg, P.E.	SER	748 Lord Dunmore Drive Virginia Beach, VA 23464
3. Testing Laboratory TBD	ITL	
4. Other		

Note: The inspection and testing agent shall be engaged by the Owner's Agent, and not by the Contractor or Subcontractor whose work is to be inspected or tested. Any conflict of interest must be disclosed to the State Construction Office, prior to commencing work.

Seismic Design Category: A B C D

Basic Wind Speed: 90-109mph 110-119mph ≥120mph

Wind Exposure Category: B C D

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Structural Steel

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Fabricator Certification/Quality Control Procedures	N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure fabricator meets the requirements of NCSBC 1704.2.2 • Collect certificate of compliance from fabricator at completion of fabrication
2. Welding	N/A N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuous inspection of complete and partial joint penetration welds, multipass fillet welds, plug and slot welds, and single-pass fillet welds > 5/16" in accordance with NCSBC Table 1704.3 • Periodic inspection of single-pass fillet welds ≤ 5/16" • Collect certificate of compliance for weld filler material • Identify use of approved filler material and in accordance with AWS D1.1
3. Metal Deck	N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collect material data sheets for decking and connectors or fasteners • Periodic inspection of welds and / or mechanical fasteners
4. Structural Details	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of steel framing and joint details
5. Bolting	N/A N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collect material data sheets for bolts, nuts, and washers • Collect certificate of compliance from bolt supplier • Periodic inspection of snug-tight, pretensioned, and slip critical joints in accordance with NCSBC Table 1704.3 • Continuous inspection of pretensioned and slip-critical joints using turn-of-nut without matchmarking or calibrated wrench methods of installation
6. Material Certification	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collect certified mill test reports

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Cold-Formed Steel Framing

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Plant Certification/ Quality Control Procedures for Pre- Engineered Wall Panels Assembled Off-Job Site	N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure wall panel fabricator meets the requirements of NCSBC 1704.2.2 • Collect certificate of compliance from wall panel fabricator at completion of fabrication
2. Mechanical Connections	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of all field connections including anchorage to the structural frame
3. Welding	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of all field connections including anchorage to the structural frame
4. Framing Details	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection framing and details
5. Cold-formed Steel Trusses	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For trusses clear spanning 60 feet or more, verify that both temporary and permanent restraints and braces are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Concrete Construction

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Mix Design/Material Certifications	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Collect mix designs and verify appropriate mix use during specific installation
2. Reinforcement Installation	1/3 1 N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Periodic inspection of reinforcing steel, including prestressing tendons and welded wire fabric Collection of certified mill test reports Continuous inspection of reinforcing steel welding in accordance with Table 1704.3, Item 5b
3. Concrete Placement/Monitoring Fresh Concrete, Sampling & prep of test samples	3 3 3 N/A 3 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Continuous inspection of cast-in-place concrete placement Continuous monitoring of sampling of fresh concrete, slump test, air content test, temperature of concrete and creation of strength test specimens Periodic inspection of formwork Periodic verification of concrete strength prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and structural slabs Continuous inspection of bolts to be installed in concrete prior to and during placement Periodic inspection of anchors installed in hardened concrete
4. Curing & Protection	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Periodic inspections of curing techniques
5. Structural Precast Concrete Members	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Periodic inspection of attachment of precast members
6. Post-Tensioned Concrete Members	N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Periodic verification of posttensioned concrete strength (f'_{ci}) prior to force transfer Continuous inspection of force application to prestressing tendons Continuous inspection of grouting procedures at bonded prestressing tendons included in the lateral force resisting system

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Masonry

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Material Certification	N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collect mix design for mortar • Collect mix design for grout • Certificates of Compliance for masonry constituents
2. Mixing of Mortar & Grout	N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of site prepared mortar, site-prepared grout, and grout for bonded tendons • Continuous verification of slump flow and VSI as self-consolidating grout is delivered to the site
3. Installation of Masonry	N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of construction of mortar joints, prior to beginning masonry construction and during construction • Periodically verify the type, size, and location of anchors and their attachment to the structure • Periodically verify size and location of structural elements
4. Reinforcement Installation	N/A N/A N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify location of reinforcement and connections to structure as construction begins • Continuous inspection of reinforcing steel welding in accordance with Table 1704.3, Item 5b • Prior to grouting periodically verify size, grade, and placement of reinforcement and connection of masonry to structural frame • Periodically verify prestressing technique • During construction, continuously monitor the application and measurement of prestressing force
5. Grouting Operations	N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prior to grouting, periodically verify conforming cleanliness of grout space and placement of the reinforcement and connectors • Continuous observation of the placement of all grout • Continuously observe the grouting of prestressing bonded tendons
6. Weather Protection	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodically verify protection techniques for construction of masonry below 40°F and above 90°F
7. Observation of the Evaluation of Masonry Strength	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic observation of the preparation of grout specimens, mortar specimens and or prisms.

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Wood

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Inspection of Fabricators	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ensure fabricator meets the requirements of NCSBC 1704.2 verifying adequate quality control procedures for prefabricated wood structural elements and assemblies are in place
2. High-load diaphragms	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Periodic inspection of Table 2306.2.1(2) high-load diaphragm sheathing panels, fasteners, and framing members at adjoining panel edges.
3. Heavy Timber	1/3	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Periodic inspection to verify connections, member sizes and details are installed in accordance with the plans and approved submittal package.

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Soils

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1.Site Preparation	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Determine that the subgrade has been prepared in accordance with the approved soils report and the construction document
2. Fill Placement	<p>N/A</p> <p>N/A</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic classification and testing of compacted fill materials • Continuous observation of materials used, densities, and lift thickness ensuring compliance with the approved soils report and the construction documents
3. Evaluation	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Determine that the materials below shallow foundations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Driven Deep Foundations ^{a b}

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Material Verification	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuously verify pile materials, sizes, and lengths comply with the construction documents
2. Pile Testing	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuously observe dynamic pile tests ensuring compliance with the construction documents
3. Installation	3 3 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuous observation of the driving operations • Continuously observe pile placement, location, plumbness, blow count, penetration, tip and butt elevations, and anomalies • Maintain complete and accurate records

a. For steel elements, perform additional inspections in accordance with Section 1704.3 of the North Carolina Building Code and the companion Schedules included herein

b. For concrete elements and concrete-filled elements, perform additional inspections in accordance with Section 1704.4 of the North Carolina Building Code and the companion Schedules included herein

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Cast-in-Place Deep Foundations ^a

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Material Verification	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuously verify pile materials comply with the construction documents
2. Pile Testing	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuously observe pile load tests and determine capacities of test elements ensuring compliance with the construction documents
3. Installation	N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuous observation of the drilling operations • Continuously verify pile placement, location, plumbness, diameters, lengths, rock embedment, end-bearing strata capacity, concrete or grout volumes, and anomalies • Maintain complete and accurate records

a. For concrete elements and concrete-filled elements, perform additional inspections in accordance with Section 1704.4 of the North Carolina Building Code and the companion Schedules included herein

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Helical Pile Foundations

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Quality Control Procedures	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Collect Certificate of Compliance from fabricator
2. Installation of Helical Piles	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Continuously observe the installation equipment used, pile placement, location, tip elevations, final depth, and final installation torque

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Sprayed On Fire Resistant Materials

Item	Qualification	Scope
1. Preparation	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodically inspect preparation of substrate prior to installation in accordance with approved fire resistance design and approved manufacturer's written instructions
2. Application	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodically inspect that substrate has minimum ambient temperature before and after application as specified by the fire resistance design and approved manufacturer's written instructions • Test thickness of sprayed on material per the instruction of Section 1704.12.4, the fire resistance design, and the approved manufacturer's written instructions • Periodically test Density of sprayed on material per fire resistance design and approved manufacturer's written instructions • Periodically test bond Strength to ensure a value greater than 150 pounds per square foot.

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Mastic and Intumescent Fire-Resistant Coatings

Item	Qualification	Scope
1. Preparation	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Periodically inspect preparation of substrate prior to installation in accordance with approved fire resistance design, approved manufacturer's written instructions, and the requirements of AWCI 12-B
1. Application	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Periodically observe application of fire-resistant coatings ensuring compliance with approved fire resistance design, approved manufacturer's written instructions, and the requirements of AWCI 12-B

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Retaining Walls Exceeding 5 Feet

Item	Qualification	Scope
1.Retaining Systems	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• All retaining walls exceeding 5 feet in height require special inspections. Refer to the applicable material schedules for explicit requirements
1. Application	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Periodic examination of backfill materials for compliance with the approved specifications• Confirm that all subsoil drainage piping is undamaged, drains freely to the designated outlet or structure, and has been installed per the approved engineered design

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS)

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Application	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Verify that EIFS is installed in conformance with project specifications• For EIFS incorporating drainage over a water-resistive barrier, periodically confirm that the water-barrier and drainage strip are installed in conformance with project specifications

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Smoke Control

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Smoke Evacuation System	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• During erection of ductwork and prior to concealment leak test and record locations of devices• Upon completion of smoke control system perform pressure difference testing, flow measurements and detection and control verification

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Wind-Resisting Components

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Contractor Statement of Responsibility	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prior to any work taking place, each contractor responsible for the construction of a wind-resisting material, system, or component shall submit a written statement of responsibility to the Special Inspector for distribution to the Building Official and Owner
2. Wind-resisting components	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the wind-resisting materials, systems, components, and connections listed below ensuring all items are installed in conformance with the project documents

Main Wind-Force Resisting System(s):

Timber columns

Wind-Resisting Components Subject to Continuous Special Inspections:

Wind-Resisting Components Subject to Periodic Special Inspections:

Timber connections.

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Special Inspections for Wind Requirements

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Structural Wood	N/A 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuously observe field gluing operations pertinent to the main wind force-resisting system • Periodically inspect all nailing, anchoring, and fastening of components within the main windforce-resisting system
2. Cold-Formed Steel Light-Frame Construction	N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodically inspect welding operations at elements of the main windforce-resisting system • Periodically inspect all screw attachment, bolting, anchoring, and fastening of components within the main windforce-resisting system
3. Wind-resisting components	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodically inspect the roof cladding and wall cladding components and connections listed below ensuring all items are installed in conformance with the project documents

Structural Wood and Cold-Formed Steel Light-Frame Construction Main Wind-Force Resisting System(s) Subject to Special Inspections:

Timber connections.

Roof Cladding Components Subject to Periodic Special Inspections:

Wall Cladding Components Subject to Periodic Special Inspections:

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance^a

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Contractor Statement of Responsibility	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prior to any work taking place, each contractor responsible for the construction of a seismic-resisting material, system, or component shall submit a written statement of responsibility to the Special Inspector for distribution to the Building Official and Owner
3. Mechanical and electrical components	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collect manufacturer certificates and verify compliance with ASCE7 requirements for nonstructural components • Periodic inspection during the anchorage of electrical equipment used for emergency power systems • Periodic inspection of piping systems intended to carry flammable, combustible, or highly toxic contents and their associated mechanical units. • Periodic inspection during the installation of vibration isolation systems accommodating nominal clearances of ¼ inch or less • Periodic inspection of HVAC ductwork that will contain hazardous materials
4. Seismic isolation system	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of isolator units and energy dissipation devices during fabrication and installation • Oversee testing program per ASCE7 requirements
5. Structural Steel	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Testing and inspection program per AISC 341 - Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

a. The Special Inspections listed reflect North Carolina code requirements for Seismic Design Category C. The SER shall review Code sections 1705 and 1707 and adjust the Schedule of Special Inspection Services for structures of greater seismic hazard.

Main Wind-Force Resisting System(s):

Seismic-Resisting Components Subject to Continuous Special Inspections:

Seismic-Resisting Components Subject to Periodic Special Inspections:

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Owner Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Owner Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Owner will pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.
- E. Owner shall pay for all temporary electrical, water, and sewer services required for the project. Coordinate any tap fees, electrical service fees, and/or impact fees with local utility companies and local jurisdiction.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- D. Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage.

1. Describe delivery, handling, and storage provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
 2. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
- E. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify further options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate. Include the following:
1. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
 2. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
 3. Waste handling procedures.
 4. Other dust-control measures.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in 2012 NC Building Code, the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.
- B. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E 84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.
- C. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
 - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
 - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 12 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack and marker boards.
 - 3. Drinking water.
 - 4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
 - 5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
 - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
 - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
 - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction.
- C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
 - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
 - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping from existing facilities in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- E. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- F. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
 - 1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.
- G. Electric Power Service: Use existing electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
- H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
 - 2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.
- I. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line(s) for each field office.

3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.

2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Project Acceptance. Personnel remaining after Project Acceptance will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.
1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Temporary Use of Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
 2. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
- D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- E. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
 2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- G. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated at the end of this Section. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
 3. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.
- H. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings.
 - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant- protection zones.
 - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
 - 3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
 - 4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- F. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- G. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
 - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
 - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys each to Owner and Architect.
- H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- I. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- J. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.

1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- K. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

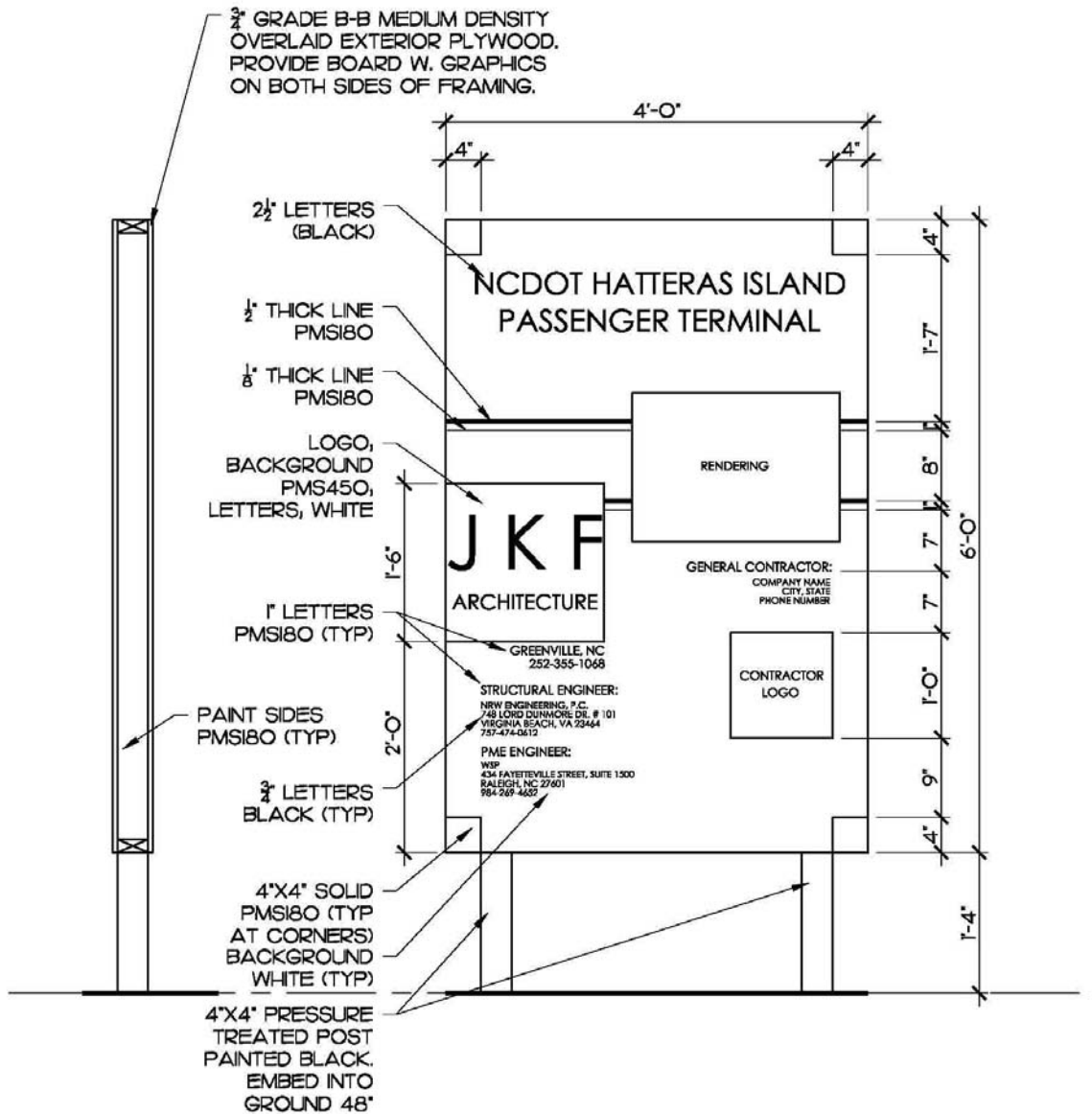
3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
- B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
 5. Do not install material that is wet.
 6. Discard, replace, or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
 7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
 2. Use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.
 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.

- a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.
- b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
- c. Remove materials that can not be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
 - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
- D. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- E. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Project Acceptance. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
 - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
 - 2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.



END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Requests: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
 - 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.

- a. Form of Approval: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- 1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
 - 2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
- 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
 - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
 - 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
 - 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
- 1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
 - 2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
 - 3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
 - 4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
 - 5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
 - 6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
 - 7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
 - 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
 - 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
 - 3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
 - 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
 - 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 - 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
 - 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
 - 6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
 - 1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - 2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - 3. Products:

- a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product.
4. Manufacturers:
- a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.
5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
- 1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
 - 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
 - 4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
 - 5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Construction layout.
 - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
 - 3. Installation of the Work.
 - 4. Cutting and patching.
 - 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
 - 6. Progress cleaning.
 - 7. Starting and adjusting.
 - 8. Protection of installed construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
 - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
 - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
 - 1. Description of the Work.
 - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
 - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
 - 4. Recommended corrections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.

1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.

1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

- C. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas.
- D. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- E. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
 - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
- F. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
 - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
 - 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
 - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Project Acceptance.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Project Acceptance.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 017300

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Project Acceptance procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
 - 5. Repair of the Work.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Pre-Final.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Per State Construction Close-out List.
- C. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- D. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.6 PRE-FINAL PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

- B. Submittals Prior to Pre-Final Inspection by Architect: Complete the following a minimum of 7 days prior to requesting Architect's Pre-Final inspection. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 3. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
 4. Contractor's statement of completion with request for designer's Pre-Final inspection
 5. Certificate of Occupancy by Local Authority Having Jurisdiction:
 6. Installer's Fire Alarm System Record of Completion (Certification) as required by NFPA 72:
 7. Installer's Sprinkler System Record of Material and Test Reports as required by:
 - a. NFPA 13-(Sprinkler Systems)
 - b. NFPA 14-(Standpipe and Hose Systems)
 - c. NFPA 20-(Centrifugal Fire Pumps)
 - d. Local Approval Letter of Sprinkler System Design
 8. Dept. of Labor Approval for Elevator.
 9. Dept. of Labor Approval for Boiler & Pressure Vessels
 10. Domestic Water Test Report and Acceptance for Use:
 11. Laboratory Hood Certification
 12. Engineer's Approval of Test and Balance Report(TAB)
 13. NEC Load Tests: Battery Powered Emergency Devices
 14. Emergency Generator Load Test
 15. Installer's Electrical Service Ground Test Report
- C. Inspection: Submit a written request for Pre-Final inspection a minimum of 7 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.
 3. A Final Inspection with State Construction will not be scheduled until the Contractor completes the punchlist items in particular all life-safety related items.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Complete all punchlist items from Pre-Final inspection.
 2. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 3. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 4. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
 5. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
 6. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 7. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.

8. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- B. Procedures Prior to Final Acceptance: Complete the following a minimum of 7 days prior to requesting State Construction inspection for determining date of Final Acceptance. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - C. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements.
 1. State Construction, the Architect, and the Owner may accept the Project and issue a Project Acceptance Form for minor items. These items are to be completed within 30 days after acceptance. Failure to complete the outstanding items will necessitate issuance of a 15 notice by the Architect, after which the Owner may initiate completion of the outstanding items and withhold any costs incurred from the Contractor's final payment request.
 2. Reinspection: If the Project is not accepted, request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
- 1.8 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES
- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties effective the day after Project Acceptance.
 - B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
 - C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
 - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
 - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
 - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
 - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
 - p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
 - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
 - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
 - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
 - 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
 - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
 - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
 - 2. Three paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.

- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at Pre-Final Inspection. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 7 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
 - 1. List of documents.
 - 2. List of systems.
 - 3. List of equipment.
 - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Table of contents.
 - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
 - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
 - 2. Name and address of Project.
 - 3. Name and address of Owner.
 - 4. Date of submittal.
 - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 - 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 - 7. Name and contact information for Architect.

8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- F. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
 - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
 - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
 5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
 - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record Specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
 - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
 - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
 - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
 - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
 - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
 - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
 - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
 - g. Actual equipment locations.
 - h. Duct size and routing.
 - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
 - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
 - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
 - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
 - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
- 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
- 1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 - 2. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Name of Contractor.

2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
- 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
 - 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
 - 4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
 - 5. Note related Change Orders and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as paper copy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
 - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing Drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- D. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
 - 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Admixtures.
 - 3. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
 - 4. Curing compounds.

5. Floor and slab treatments.
6. Bonding agents.
7. Adhesives.
8. Semirigid joint filler.
9. Joint-filler strips.
10. Repair materials.

B. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:

1. Aggregates: Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete mixtures.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1, and as follows:
1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
1. ACI 301.
 2. ACI 117.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
 2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
 - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
 - b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
 - c. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
 - d. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
 3. Overlaid Finnish birch plywood.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- D. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

- E. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
 - 1. Furnish units that leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
 - 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
 - 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, as drawn.
- C. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
 - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
 - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989/C 989M, Grade 100 or 120.
 - 4. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595/C 595M, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag or Type IP, portland-pozzolan
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33/C 33M, Class 4S coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.

- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
- F. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
- G. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
- H. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.6 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.

2.7 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
 - 1. Types I and II, nonload bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

2.8 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150/C 150M, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150/C 150M, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
 3. Slag Cement: 50 percent.
 4. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Slag Cement: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 3. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures

2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

A. Footings: Normal-weight concrete.

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.50.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.

B. Slabs-on-Grade: Normal-weight concrete.

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45.
3. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd.
4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
5. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

2.11 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.12 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.

1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd..
3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.

B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.

- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 - 1. Class B, 1/4 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- E. Construct forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 - 1. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are not acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.

- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 - 3. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
 - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
 - 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.

2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.
- C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view.

3.8 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- C. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete, and elsewhere as indicated.
 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.9 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

3.10 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:

- a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
- a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
 - b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
 - c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer.
4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- F. Concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.11 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.

3.12 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.

1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.

C. Inspections:

1. Steel reinforcement placement.
2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.

D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231/C 231M, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
 - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - b. Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
7. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
8. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
9. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
10. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
11. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.

12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
13. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Framing with dimension lumber.
 - 2. Framing with timber.
 - 3. Wood blocking and nailers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
- B. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
2. Power-driven fasteners.
3. Post-installed anchors.
4. Metal framing anchors.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
 3. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 19 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4b for items in contact with ground.
 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
 - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.

2.3 TIMBER/ LUMBER FRAMING

- A. Comply with the following requirements, according to grading rules of grading agency indicated:
 - 1. Species and Grade: Southern pine; No. 1 grade; SPIB.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 - 1. Blocking.
 - 2. Nailers.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 the following species:
 - 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather or in ground contact, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

2.6 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those of products of manufacturers listed. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors shall be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.
- B. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; structural steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
 - 1. Use for wood-preserved-treated lumber and where indicated.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 316.
 - 1. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

- D. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch-long seat and 1-1/4-inch-wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
 - 1. Thickness: 0.062 inch.
- E. Bridging: Rigid, V-section, nailless type, 0.050 inch thick, length to suit joist size and spacing.
- F. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches wide by 0.062 inch thick. Tie fits over top of rafter or truss and fastens to both sides of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
- G. Floor-to-Floor Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying floor wall studs to band joists, 1-1/4 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick by 36 inches long.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; 1-inch nominal thickness, compressible to 1/32 inch; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.
- C. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locatenailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- D. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- E. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- G. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

- H. Comply with AWP A M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- I. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- J. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
 - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- K. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- L. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
 - 1. Comply with approved fastener patterns where applicable.
 - 2. Use common nails unless otherwise indicated. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of 2-inch nominal thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions. Fasten plates to supporting construction unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For exterior walls, provide 2-by-4-inch nominal- size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For interior partitions and walls, provide 2-by-4-inch nominal size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than 96 inches high, using members of 2-inch nominal thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.

- B. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs, except that two studs may be used for interior non-load-bearing partitions.
- C. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Support headers on jamb studs.
 - 1. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings 60 inches and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth indicated or, if not indicated, according to Table R502.5(1) or Table R502.5(2), as applicable, in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

3.4 FLOOR JOIST FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install floor joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2 inches of bearing on wood or metal. Attach floor joists as follows:
 - 1. Where supported on wood members, by toe nailing or by using metal framing anchors.
 - 2. Where framed into wood supporting members, by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers.
- B. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds 48 inches.
- C. Do not notch in middle third of joists; limit notches to one-sixth depth of joist, one-third at ends. Do not bore holes larger than one-third depth of joist; do not locate closer than 2 inches from top or bottom.
- D. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist at ends of joists unless nailed to header or band.
- E. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams, girders, or partitions not less than 4 inches or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist over supports.
- F. Provide solid blocking between joists under jamb studs for openings.
- G. Under non-load-bearing partitions, provide double joists separated by solid blocking equal to depth of studs above.
- H. Provide bridging of type indicated below, at intervals of 96 inches o.c., between joists.
 - 1. Diagonal wood bridging formed from bevel-cut, 1-by-3-inch nominal-size lumber, double-crossed and nailed at both ends to joists.
 - 2. Solid full depth bridging nailed at both ends to joists.

3.5 CEILING JOIST AND RAFTER FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Ceiling Joists: Install with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
 - 1. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate, and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide 1-by-8-inch nominal-size or 2-by-4-inch nominal-size stringers spaced 48 inches o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.

- B. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.
 - 1. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.
- C. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions if any.

3.6 TIMBER FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Install timber beams with crown edge up and provide not less than 4 inches of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports as indicated if not continuous.
- B. Install wood posts using metal anchors indicated.
- C. Treat ends of timber beams and posts exposed to weather by dipping in water-repellent preservative for 15 minutes.

3.7 STAIR FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Provide stair framing members of size, space, and configuration indicated or, if not indicated, to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Size: 2-by-12-inch nominal size, minimum.
 - 2. Material: solid lumber.
 - 3. Notching: Notch rough carriages to receive treads, risers, and supports; leave at least 3-1/2 inches of effective depth.
 - 4. Spacing: At least three framing members for each 36-inch clear width of stair.
- B. Provide stair framing with no more than 3/16-inch variation between adjacent treads and risers and no more than 3/8-inch variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061300 - HEAVY TIMBER CONSTRUCTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes framing using timbers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Timbers: Lumber of 5 inches nominal or greater in least dimension.
- B. Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
 - 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
 - 2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
 - 3. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
 - 4. SPIB: Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (The).
 - 5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
 - 6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products and timber connectors.
 - 1. For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
 - 2. For timber connectors. Include installation instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: The contractor shall prepare detailed shop drawings of the timber trusses including timber sizes, dimensions, grades, edge treatment, surface treatment, finishes and connection details. All steel plates and brackets shall be approved by the architect prior to fabrications. Trusses shall be designed to withstand the dead, live, snow and wind loads indicated. The contractor shall have the trusses designed by a professional engineer registered in the State of North Carolina. All design calculations and design data shall be sealed and submitted to the architect for approval.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates:
 - 1. For timbers specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by ALSC's Board of Review.

2. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

- B. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber-grading agency for exposed timber not marked with grade stamp.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contractor and erector shall have not less than 5 years' experience in fabrication and erection of heavy timber framing.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Schedule delivery of materials to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIMBER

- A. Comply with DOC PS 20 and with grading rules of lumber-grading agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review as applicable.
 1. Factory mark each item of timber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 2. For exposed timber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, apply grade stamps to surfaces that are not exposed to view, or omit grade stamps and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
- B. Timber Species and Grade: Southern pine; No. 1, SPIB.
- C. Moisture Content: Provide timber that is unseasoned at time of dressing but with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of fabrication.
- D. Dressing: Provide **dressed timber (S4S)** unless otherwise indicated. Edges shall be chamfered to allow for solid bearing at steel support brackets.

2.2 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Pressure treat materials with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4b for items in contact with the ground.
- B. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.

1. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- C. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
- D. Use process that does not include water repellents or other substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
- E. After treatment, redry materials to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- F. Mark treated materials with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
1. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that is not exposed.

2.3 TIMBER CONNECTORS

- A. Timber joints shall be fabricated to produce tight fitting joints after assembly. Provisions shall be made in the joinery to allow for dimensional changes associated with timber drying shrinkage.
- B. Provide stainless-steel bolts, 3/4 inch unless otherwise indicated, complying with ASTM F 593, Alloy Group 1 or 2; provide nuts complying with ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2; and, where indicated, provide flat washers.
- C. Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:
1. Stainless-steel plate and flat bars complying with ASTM A 666, Type 316.
 2. Stainless-steel bars and shapes complying with ASTM A 276, Type 316.
 3. Stainless-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 666, Type 316.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
- B. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Camber: Fabricate horizontal members and inclined members with a slope of less than 1:1, with natural convex bow (crown) up, to provide camber.
- B. Shop fabricate members by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks, and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
- C. Fabricate connections with minimum dimensions as shown on the contract drawings.
- D. Pre-drill for fasteners and assembly of units.

- E. Where preservative-treated members are indicated, fabricate (cut, drill, surface, and sand) before treatment to greatest extent possible. Where fabrication must be done after treatment, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
- F. Coat crosscuts with end sealer.
- G. Seal Coat: After fabricating and surfacing each unit, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit except for treated wood where the treatment included a water repellent.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Erect heavy timber framing true and plumb. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
 - 1. Install horizontal and sloping members with crown edge up, and provide not less than 4 inches of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports with metal strap ties if not continuous.
 - 2. Handle and temporarily support heavy timber framing to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.
- B. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
- C. Fitting: Fit members by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing.
 - 1. Predrill for fasteners using timber connectors as templates.
 - 2. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks, and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
 - 3. Coat crosscuts with end sealer.
 - 4. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
 - a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
 - b. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
- D. Install timber connectors as indicated.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
 - 2. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged heavy timber framing if repairs are not approved by Architect.

END OF SECTION 061300

SECTION 061516 - WOOD ROOF DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes solid-sawn wood roof decking

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For preservative-treated wood products, include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Schedule delivery of wood roof decking to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings. Stack wood roof decking with surfaces that are to be exposed in the final Work protected from exposure to sunlight.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD ROOF DECKING, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.

2.2 SOLID-SAWN WOOD ROOF DECKING

- A. Standard for Solid-Sawn Wood Roof Decking: Comply with AITC 112.
- B. Roof Decking Species Southern pine.
- C. Roof Decking Nominal Size: 2 by 6.
- D. Roof Decking Grade: Dense Select Decking.

- E. Grade Stamps: Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency. Apply grade stamp to surfaces that are not exposed to view.
- F. Moisture Content: Provide wood roof decking with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- G. Face Surface: Smooth.
- H. Edge Pattern: Channel grooved.

2.3 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Pressure treat wood roof decking according to AWP A U1; Use Category UC3B.
- B. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 - 1. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use products that do not contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- C. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
- D. After treatment, redry materials to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- E. After dressing and fabricating roof decking, apply copper naphthenate according to AWP A M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than 1/16 inch.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Solid-Sawn Roof Decking: Provide fastener size and type complying with AITC 112 for thickness of deck used.
- B. Nails: Common; complying with ASTM F 1667, Type I, Style 10.
- C. Spikes: Round; complying with ASTM F 1667, Type III, Style 3.
- D. Fastener Material: Stainless Steel.
- E. Sealants: Latex, complying with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and recommended by sealant manufacturer and manufacturer of substrates for intended application.
- F. Penetrating Sealer: Clear sanding sealer complying with Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" and compatible with topcoats specified for use over it.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Shop Fabrication: Where preservative-treated roof decking is indicated, complete cutting, trimming, surfacing, and sanding before treating.
- B. Predrill roof decking for lateral spiking to adjacent units to comply with AITC 112.
- C. Seal Coat: After fabricating and surfacing roof decking, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer.

- D. Apply indicated finish materials to comply with Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" in fabrication shop.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine support framing in areas to receive wood roof decking for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of wood roof decking.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install solid-sawn wood roof decking to comply with AITC 112.
 - 1. Locate end joints for combination simple and two-span continuous lay-up.
- B. Where preservative-treated roof decking must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
 - 1. For solid-sawn roof decking, use inorganic boron (SBX).
- C. Apply joint sealant to seal roof decking at exterior walls at the following locations:
 - 1. Between roof decking and supports located at exterior walls.
 - 2. Between roof decking and exterior walls that butt against underside of roof decking.
 - 3. Between tongues and grooves of roof decking over exterior walls and supports at exterior walls.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged roof decking if repairs are not approved by Architect.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide water-resistive barrier over roof decking as the Work progresses to protect roof decking until roofing is applied.
- B. If, despite protection, roof decking becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061516

SECTION 062013 - EXTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior wood and cellular PVC trim.
 - 2. Lumber and Plywood siding.
 - 3. Lumber and Plywood soffits.
 - 4. Exterior stairs and railings.
- B. MDO: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material.
 - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced before shipment to Project site to levels specified.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product involving selection of colors, profiles, or textures.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. For each species and cut of lumber and panel products, with half of exposed surface finished; 50 sq. in. for lumber and 8 by 10 inches for panels.
 - 2. For hardboard siding, 50 sq. in. for board types and 8 by 10 inches for panels.
 - 3. For cellular PVC trim, with half of exposed surface finished; 50 sq. in..

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Compliance Certificates:
 - 1. For lumber that is not marked with grade stamp.
 - 2. For preservative-treated wood that is not marked with treatment-quality mark.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
2. Cellular PVC trim.

C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecast weather conditions permit work to be performed and at least one coat of specified finish can be applied without exposure to rain, snow, or dampness.

1. For exterior ornamental wood columns, comply with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty for Cellular PVC Trim: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace trim that fails due to defects in manufacturing within specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, deterioration, delamination, and excessive swelling from moisture.

1. Warranty Period: 25 years from date of Project Acceptance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated.

- B. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of inspection agency, indicating grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.
 - 1. For exposed lumber, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece, or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by inspection agency.
- C. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
- D. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWA U1; Use Category UC3a.
 - 1. Kiln dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 18 percent, respectively.
 - 2. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 - 3. For exposed items indicated to receive transparent finish, do not use chemical formulations that contain colorants or that bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
 - 4. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
 - 5. Mark lumber with treatment-quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standard Committee's Board of Review.
 - a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
 - 6. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. For exposed plywood indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark back of each piece.
 - 7. Application: Where indicated All exterior lumber and plywood.

2.3 EXTERIOR TRIM

- A. Lumber Trim for Clear Finish:
 - 1. Species and Grade: Western red cedar, Clear Heart VG (Vertical Grain); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.
 - 3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
 - 4. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).
- B. Cellular PVC Trim: Extruded, expanded PVC with a small-cell microstructure, recommended by manufacturer for exterior use, made from UV- and heat-stabilized rigid material.
 - 1. Density: Not less than 31 lb/cu. ft..
 - 2. Heat Deflection Temperature: Not less than 130 deg F, according to ASTM D 648.
 - 3. Coefficient of Thermal Expansion: Not more than 4.5×10^{-5} inches/inch x deg F.
 - 4. Water Absorption: Not more than 1 percent, according to ASTM D 570.
 - 5. Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less, according to ASTM E 84.

2.4 LUMBER SIDING

- A. Provide kiln-dried lumber siding complying with DOC PS 20.
- B. Species and Grade: Clear VG (Vertical Grain) Heart western red cedar; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- C. Pattern: Bevel siding, S1S2E, actual overall dimensions of 5-1/2 by 11/16 inch, measured on the face and thick edge.

2.5 PLYWOOD SIDING

- A. Plywood Type: APA-rated siding, pressure-preservative treated, in panel sizes indicated.
 - 1. Face Grade: 303-OC.
- B. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
- C. Face Species: Western red cedar.
- D. Pattern: Texture 1-11; grooves 4 inches o.c.
- E. Surface: Smooth.

2.6 PLYWOOD SOFFITS

- A. Plywood Type: Exterior, Grade A-C.
 - 1. Face Grade: 303-OC.
- B. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
- C. Face Species: Western red cedar.
- D. Pattern: Texture 1-11; grooves 4 inches o.c.
- E. Surface: Smooth.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Exterior Finish Carpentry: Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.
 - 1. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, provide stainless-steel fasteners.
 - 2. For applications not otherwise indicated, provide stainless-steel fasteners.
- B. Wood Glue: Waterproof resorcinol glue recommended by manufacturer for exterior carpentry use.
- C. Flashing: Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing materials installed in exterior finish carpentry.
 - 1. Horizontal Joint Flashing for Panel Siding: Preformed, stainless-steel, Z-shaped flashing.

- D. Sealants: Latex, complying with ASTM C 834 Type OP, Grade NF and applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and recommended by sealant and substrate manufacturers for intended application.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Back out or kerf backs of standing and running trim wider than 5 inches, except members with ends exposed in finished work.
- B. Ease edges of lumber less than 1 inch in nominal thickness to 1/16-inch radius and edges of lumber 1 inch or more in nominal thickness to 1/8-inch radius.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Prime lumber and moldings to be painted, including both faces and edges, unless factory primed. Cut to required lengths and prime ends. Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated or finished, inadequately seasoned, or too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements.
 - 1. Do not use manufactured units with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
- B. Install exterior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
 - 1. Scribe and cut exterior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining exterior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.
 - 3. Install stairs with no more than 3/16-inch variation between adjacent treads and risers and with no more than 3/8-inch variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.
 - 4. Coordinate exterior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate exterior finish carpentry.

3.4 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Install flat-grain lumber with bark side exposed to weather.
- B. Install cellular PVC trim to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install trim with minimum number of joints as is practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches long, except where necessary.
 - 1. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
 - 2. Stagger end joints in adjacent and related members.
- D. Fit exterior joints to exclude water. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints, with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints, where necessary for alignment.
- E. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 SIDING INSTALLATION

- A. Install siding to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Horizontal Lumber Siding: Apply starter strip along bottom edge of sheathing or sill. Install first course of siding, with lower edge at least 1/8 inch below starter strip and subsequent courses lapped 1 inch over course below. Nail at each stud. Do not allow nails to penetrate more than one thickness of siding.
 - 1. Leave 1/8-inch gap at trim and corners unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, and apply sealant.
 - 2. Butt joints only over framing or blocking, nailing top and bottom on each side and staggering joints in subsequent courses.
 - 3. Install prefabricated outside corners as recommended by manufacturer of siding materials.
- C. Plywood Siding: Install panels with edges over framing or blocking. Nail at 6 inches o.c. at panel perimeter and 12 inches o.c. at intermediate supports unless manufacturer recommends closer spacing. Leave 1/16-inch gap between adjacent panels and 1/8-inch gap at perimeter, openings, and horizontal joints unless otherwise recommended by panel manufacturer.
 - 1. Seal butt joints at inside and outside corners and at trim locations.
 - 2. Install continuous metal flashing at horizontal panel joints.
 - 3. Apply battens and corner trim as indicated. Countersink nail heads, fill flush, and sand filler.
 - 4. Conceal fasteners to greatest practical extent by placing in grooves of siding pattern or by concealing with applied trim or battens as detailed. Do not nail through overlapping pieces.
- D. Flashing: Install metal flashing as indicated on Drawings and as recommended by siding manufacturer.
- E. Finish: Apply finish within two weeks of installation.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Replace exterior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements. Exterior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean exterior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
- B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 062013

SECTION 073113 - ASPHALT SHINGLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Asphalt shingles.
 - 2. Underlayment.
 - 3. Metal flashing and trim.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
 - 1. Asphalt Shingles: Full size.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For asphalt shingles to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Asphalt Shingles: 100 sq. ft. of each type, in unbroken bundles.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store roofing materials in a dry, well-ventilated location protected from weather, sunlight, and moisture according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Store underlayment rolls on end on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double stack rolls.
- C. Protect unused roofing materials from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing work is not in progress.
- D. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to prevent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace asphalt shingles that fail within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Manufacturing defects.
 - 2. Material Warranty Period: 30 years from date of Project Acceptance, prorated, with first 20 years nonprorated.
 - 3. Wind-Speed Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will resist blow-off or damage caused by wind speeds of up to 130 mph for 15 years from date of Project Acceptance.
 - 4. Workmanship Warranty Period: Two years from date of Project Acceptance.
- B. Roofing Installer's Warranty: On warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of asphalt-shingle roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Project Acceptance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Provide asphalt shingles and related roofing materials identical to those of assemblies tested for Class A fire resistance according to ASTM E 108 or UL 790 by Underwriters

Laboratories or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.2 GLASS-FIBER-REINFORCED ASPHALT SHINGLES

- A. Three-Tab-Strip, SBS-Modified Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462/D 3462M, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; with tabs regularly spaced and complying with UL 2218, Class 4.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Tamko
 - b. CertainTeed
 - c. Owens-Corning
 - d. GAF
 2. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
 3. Color and Blends: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Manufacturer's standard units to match asphalt shingles.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Granular Surfaced: ASTM D 1970/D 1970M, minimum of 40-mil-thick sheet; glass-fiber-mat-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt; mineral-granule surfaced; with release backing; cold applied.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle Residential; a division of Carlisle Construction Materials.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. GAF.
- B. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970/D 1970M, minimum of 40-mil-thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release backing; cold applied.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Atlas EPS; a Division of Atlas Roofing Corporation.
 - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
 - c. CertainTeed Roofing Corporation.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.
- B. Roofing Nails: ASTM F 1667; aluminum, stainless-steel, copper, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire shingle nails, minimum 0.120-inch-diameter, sharp-pointed, with a minimum 3/8-inch-diameter flat head and of sufficient length to penetrate 3/4 inch into solid wood decking or extend at least 1/8 inch through OSB or plywood sheathing.
 - 1. Shank: Barbed.
 - 2. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.

2.5 METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. General: Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 1. Sheet Metal: Stainless steel.
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item.
 - 1. Apron Flashings: Fabricate with lower flange a minimum of 4 inches over and 4 inches beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and 6 inches up the vertical surface.
 - 2. Drip Edges: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet with 2-inch roof-deck flange and 1-1/2-inch fascia flange with 3/8-inch drip at lower edge.
- C. Vent Pipe Flashings: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, at least 1/16 inch thick. Provide lead sleeve sized to slip over and turn down into pipe, soldered to skirt at slope of roof, and extending at least 4 inches from pipe onto roof.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing and blocking or metal clips and that installation is within flatness tolerances.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and completely anchored; and that provisions have been made for flashings and penetrations through asphalt shingles.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with underlayment manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.

- B. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install, wrinkle free, on roof deck. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install lapped in direction that sheds water. Lap sides not less than 3-1/2 inches. Lap ends not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.

3.3 METAL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal flashings and other sheet metal to comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 1. Install metal flashings according to recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual" and NRCA's "NRCA Guidelines for Asphalt Shingle Roof Systems."
- B. Apron Flashings: Extend lower flange over and beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and up the vertical surface.
- C. Rake Drip Edges: Install rake drip-edge flashings over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
- D. Eave Drip Edges: Install eave drip-edge flashings below underlayment and fasten to roof sheathing.
- E. Pipe Flashings: Form flashing around pipe penetrations and asphalt shingles. Fasten and seal to asphalt shingles as recommended by manufacturer.

3.4 ASPHALT-SHINGLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install asphalt shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions, recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual," and recommendations in NRCA's "NRCA Guidelines for Asphalt Shingle Roof Systems."
- B. Install starter strip along lowest roof edge, consisting of an asphalt-shingle strip at least 7 inches wide with self-sealing strip face up at roof edge.
 - 1. Extend asphalt shingles 1/2 inch over fasciae at eaves and rakes.
 - 2. Install starter strip along rake edge.
- C. Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with manufacturer's recommended offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
- D. Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with one-third-tab offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
- E. Install asphalt shingles by single-strip column or racking method, maintaining uniform exposure. Install full-length first course followed by cut second course, repeating alternating pattern in succeeding courses.
- F. Fasten asphalt-shingle strips with a minimum of six roofing nails located according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Where roof slope exceeds 21:12, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots after fastening with additional roofing nails.
 - 2. Where roof slope is less than 4:12, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.
 - 3. When ambient temperature during installation is below 50 deg F, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.

- G. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Maintain same exposure of cap shingles as roofing shingle exposure. Lap cap shingles at ridges to shed water away from direction of prevailing winds. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.
 - 1. Fasten ridge cap asphalt shingles to cover ridge vent without obstructing airflow.

3.5 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS <Insert name> of <Insert address>, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("the work") on the following project:
 - 1. Owner: <Insert name of Owner>.
 - 2. Address: <Insert address>.
 - 3. Building Name/Type: <Insert information>.
 - 4. Address: <Insert address>.
 - 5. Area of the Work: <Insert information>.
 - 6. Acceptance Date: <Insert date>.
 - 7. Warranty Period: <Insert time>.
 - 8. Expiration Date: <Insert date>.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant the work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of the work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain the work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
 - 1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to the work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
 - a. Lightning;
 - b. Peak gust wind speed exceeding 130 mph;
 - c. Fire;
 - d. Failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
 - e. Faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
 - f. Vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
 - g. Activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
 - 2. When the work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
 - 3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to the work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of the work.
 - 4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of the work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on

date of the alterations, but only to the extent the alterations affect the work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform the alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting the alterations, notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that the alterations would likely damage or deteriorate the work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.

5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of the change, but only to the extent the change affects the work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect the work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on the work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of the work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this **<Insert day>** day of **<Insert month>**, **<Insert year>**.

1. Authorized Signature: **<Insert signature>**.
2. Name: **<Insert name>**.
3. Title: **<Insert title>**.

END OF SECTION 073113

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
 - 2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
 - 3. Urethane joint sealants.
 - 4. Immersible joint sealants.
 - 5. Silyl-terminated polyether joint sealants.
 - 6. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
 - 7. Polysulfide joint sealants.
 - 8. Butyl joint sealants.
 - 9. Latex joint sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Project Acceptance.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Project Acceptance.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the following:
1. Architectural sealants shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 2. Sealants and sealant primers for nonporous substrates shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 3. Sealants and sealant primers for nonporous substrates shall have a VOC content of 775 g/L or less.
- C. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
- B. Silicone, S, NS, 50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T and NT.
- C. Silicone, S, P, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C 1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

2.4 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

2.5 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.

2.6 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Provide flush joint profile at all locations according to Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
 - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:

- a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - b. Perform one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
 - 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 - 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
 - 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
 - 5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:

- a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, P, 50, T, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
- 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
 - b. Joints between metal panels.
 - c. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - d. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors windows and louvers.
 - e. Control and expansion joints in ceilings.
 - f. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
- 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, P, 100/50, T, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
- 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry, walls and partitions.
 - d. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement.
- 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and elevator entrances.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - c. Around perimeter of floors, ceiling, and doors, in Clean Room, Dressing, and DCON.
 - d. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

- G. Joint-Sealant Application: Concealed mastics.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Aluminum thresholds.
 - b. Sill plates.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, P, 25, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 316219 - TIMBER PILES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes 10" x 10" square timber piles.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Contract Sum: Base Contract Sum on number and dimensions of piles indicated from tip to cutoff, plus not less than 12 inches of overlength for cutting piles at cutoff elevations. From the data obtained as a result of driving the test piles, the Contractors Geotechnical Engineer will determine and list the calculated pile tip elevations for all piles. The Architect reserves the right to take up to 3 working days to review test pile driving records and take up to 3 additional working days to review and approve the contractor prepared schedule of pile lengths and locations.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For timber piles. Show fabrication and installation details for piles, including details of driving shoes, tips or boots, and pile butt protection.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
- B. Timber pile treatment data as follows, including chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material:
 - 1. For each type of preservative-treated timber product, include certification by treating plant stating type of preservative solution and pressure process used, net amount of preservative retained, and compliance with applicable standards.
 - 2. For waterborne-treated products, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels indicated before shipment to Project site.

- C. Pile-Driving Equipment Data: Include type, make, and rated energy range; weight of striking part of hammer; weight of drive cap; and, type, size, and properties of hammer cushion.
- D. Dynamic Pile Test Reports: Submit within three days of completing each test.
- E. Pile-Driving Records: Submit within three days of driving each pile.
- F. Certified Piles Survey: Submit within seven days of pile driving completion.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Material Certificates: For preservative-treated piles. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
 - 1. Installer's responsibility includes engaging a qualified professional engineer to prepare pile-driving records.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. General:
 - 1. Provide a minimum of 4 test piles (2 at each site). Test piles shall be of the same size and type and driven in the same manner as specified for production piles. Confirmation of the pile capacity and determination of production pile lengths shall be determined by the Contractor's Geotechnical Engineer utilizing a Pile Dynamic Analyzer (PDA) during the driving and restriking of the test piles. Keep a record for each test pile and every unusual occurrence during pile driving. Record every increase or decrease of driving resistance and bring it to the attention of the Architect. Properly located test piles may be used in the finished work. Furnish test piles 48 inches longer than production piles.
 - 2. Determination of actual length of piles is based on results of PDA pile tests.
- B. Test Pile-Driving Records: Prepare driving records for each test pile. Include same data as required for driving records of permanent piles.
- C. Test piles that comply with requirements, including location tolerances, may be used on Project.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver piles to Project site in such quantities and at such times to ensure continuity of installation. Handle and store piles at Project site to prevent breaks, cuts, abrasions, or other physical damage and as required by AWP4 M4.
 - 1. Do not drill holes or drive spikes or nails into pile below cutoff elevation.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protect structures, underground utilities, and other construction from damage caused by pile driving.
- B. Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is included elsewhere in the Project Manual for information only.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIMBER PILES

- A. Timber Piles: 10" x 10" Southern Pine No. 1.
- B. Pressure-treat round timber piles according to AWPA U1 as follows:
 - 1. Service Condition: UC4C Ground Contact, Extreme Duty
 - 2. Treatment: Waterborne preservative.

2.2 PILE ACCESSORIES

- A. Driving Shoes: Fabricate from ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-rolled carbon-steel strip to suit pile-tip dimensions, and secure to pile tip so as to not affect pile alignment during driving.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Pile Tips: Cut and shape pile tips to accept driving shoes. Fit and fasten driving shoes to pile tips according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Pile Butt: Trim pile butt and cut perpendicular to longitudinal axis of pile. Chamfer and shape butt to fit tightly to driving cap of hammer.
- C. Field-Applied Wood Preservative: Treat field cuts, holes, and other penetrations according to AWPA M4.
 - 1. Coal-tar roofing cement for treating drilled holes or sealing cutoffs shall be free of asbestos.
- D. Pile Splices: Splices are not permitted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Conditions: Do not start pile-driving operations until earthwork fills have been completed.

3.2 DRIVING EQUIPMENT

- A. Pile Hammer: Air-, steam-, hydraulic-, or diesel-powered type capable of consistently delivering adequate peak-force duration and magnitude to develop the ultimate capacity required for type and size of pile driven and character of subsurface material anticipated.

- B. Hammer Cushions and Driving Caps: Between hammer and top of pile, provide hammer cushion and steel driving cap as recommended by hammer manufacturer and as required to drive pile without damage.
- C. Leads: Use fixed, semifixed, or hanging-type pile-driver leads that hold the full length of pile firmly in position and in axial alignment with hammer.

3.3 DRIVING PILES

- A. General: Continuously drive piles to elevations or penetration resistance established by dynamic load testing of piles or to refusal (4 blows per inch). Establish and maintain axial alignment of leads and piles before and during driving.
- B. Predrilling: Provide pre-excavated holes if determine acceptable by the Contractor's Geotechnical Engineer during the test pile installation. Drill holes with a diameter less than the largest cross-section dimension of pile.
 - 1. Firmly seat pile in predrilled hole by driving with reduced energy before starting final driving.
- C. Heaved Piles: Redrive heaved piles to tip elevation at least as deep as original tip elevation with a driving resistance at least as great as original driving resistance.
- D. Driving Tolerances: Drive piles without exceeding the following tolerances, measured at pile heads:
 - 1. Location: 4 inches from location indicated after initial driving, and 6 inches after pile driving is completed.
 - 2. Plumb: Maintain 1 inch in 48 inches from vertical, or a maximum of 4 inches, measured when pile is aboveground in leads.
- E. Withdraw damaged or defective piles and piles that exceed driving tolerances, and install new piles within driving tolerances.
 - 1. Fill holes left by withdrawn piles using cohesionless soil material such as gravel, broken stone, and gravel-sand mixtures. Place and compact in lifts not exceeding 72 inches.
 - 2. Fill holes left by withdrawn piles as directed by Architect.
- F. Abandon and cut off rejected piles as directed by Architect. Cut off butts of driven piles square with pile axis and at elevations indicated.
 - 1. Cover cut-off piling surfaces with minimum three coats of preservative treatment according to AWPA M4.
- G. Pile-Driving Records: Maintain accurate driving records for each pile. Include the following data:
 - 1. Project name and number.
 - 2. Name of Contractor.
 - 3. Pile species.
 - 4. Pile location in pile group and designation of pile group.
 - 5. Sequence of driving in pile group.
 - 6. Pile dimensions.
 - 7. Ground elevation.
 - 8. Elevation of tips after driving.
 - 9. Final tip and cutoff elevations of piles after driving pile group.
 - 10. Records of re-driving.
 - 11. Type, make, model, and rated energy of hammer.

12. Weight and stroke of hammer.
13. Type of pile-driving cap used.
14. Cushion material and thickness.
15. Actual stroke and blow rate of hammer.
16. Pile-driving start and finish times, and total driving time.
17. Time, pile-tip elevation, and reason for interruptions.
18. Number of blows for every 12 inches of penetration, and number of blows per 1 inch for the last 6 inches of driving.
19. Pile deviations from location and plumb.
20. Preboring, or special procedures used.
21. Unusual occurrences during pile driving.

H. Certified Piles Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a piles survey showing final location of piles in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks.

1. Notify Architect when deviations from locations exceed allowable tolerances.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Pile foundations.

B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Dynamic Pile (PDA) Testing: High-strain dynamic monitoring shall be performed and reported according to ASTM D 4945 during initial driving and during restriking on four single piles at each site.

3.5 DISPOSAL

A. Remove withdrawn piles and cutoff sections of piles from site and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 316219

SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes Concrete Paving Including the Following:
 - 1. Walks.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Concrete Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
 - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
 - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
 - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
- B. Hot-Weather Concrete Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
 - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 - 2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap, so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
 - 3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet or less.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Deformed-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, flat sheet.
- B. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 plain-steel bars; zinc coated (galvanized) after fabrication according to ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I coating. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- C. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded-wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete specified, and as follows:
 - 1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
 - 2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
- D. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780/A 780M.

2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, gray portland cement Type I.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C.
 - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989/C 989M, Grade 100 or 120.
 - 4. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595/C 595M, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag cement.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33/C 33M, Class 4S, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.

- D. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
- E. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.

2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry or cotton mats.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
- F. White, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B, dissipating.

2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber in preformed strips.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy-Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
 - 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- D. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid, set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch.
- E. Rock Salt: Sodium chloride crystals, kiln dried, coarse gradation with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch sieve and 85 percent retained on a No. 8 sieve.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
 - 2. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that comply with or exceed requirements.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, slag cement, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
 - 1. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1-1/2 percent for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Concrete Mixtures: Normal-weight concrete.
 - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4500 psi.
 - 2. Maximum W/C Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
 - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
 - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
 - 1. For concrete batches of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
 - 2. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd..
 - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Proof-roll with a pneumatic-tired and loaded, 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded-wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Use galvanized-steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material.
- F. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch overlap of adjacent mats.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
 - 1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
 - 3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 - 4. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 - 5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
 - 1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 30 feet unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
 - 3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
 - 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
 - 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
 - 6. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete paving:
 - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - a. Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
 - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
 - a. Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
 - 3. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement dowels and joint devices.
- H. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
- I. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
 - 1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
 - 2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
 - 3. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing moisture-retaining-cover curing curing compound or a combination of these as follows:
 - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

3.9 PAVING TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
 - 1. Elevation: 3/4 inch.
 - 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Surface: Gap below 10-feet-long; unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch.
 - 4. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches of tie bar.
 - 5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch.
 - 6. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch.
 - 7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches of dowel.
 - 8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
 - 9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
 - 10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231/C 231M, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when it is 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
- G. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- I. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.11 REPAIR AND PROTECTION
- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.

- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Project Acceptance inspections.

END OF SECTION 321313

SECTION 321726 - TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cast-in-place detectable warning tiles.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of tactile warning surface, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated, showing edge condition, truncated-dome pattern, texture, color, and cross section; with fasteners and anchors.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.
- B. Weather Limitations for Adhesive Application:
 - 1. Apply adhesive only when ambient temperature is above 50 deg F and when temperature has not been below 35 deg F for 12 hours immediately before application. Do not apply when substrate is wet or contains excess moisture.
- C. Weather Limitations for Mortar and Grout:
 - 1. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 - 2. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602. Provide artificial shade and windbreaks, and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 100 deg F and higher.
 - a. When ambient temperature exceeds 100 deg F, or when wind velocity exceeds 8 mph and ambient temperature exceeds 90 deg F, set unit pavers within 1 minute of spreading setting-bed mortar.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TACTILE WARNING SURFACING, GENERAL

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for tactile warning surfaces.
 - 1. For tactile warning surfaces composed of multiple units, provide units that when installed provide consistent side-to-side and end-to-end dome spacing that complies with requirements.

2.2 DETECTABLE WARNING TILES

- A. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Accessible truncated-dome detectable warning tiles with replaceable surface configured for setting flush in new concrete walkway surfaces, with slip-resistant surface treatment on domes and field of tile.
 - 1. Material: Molded glass- and carbon-fiber-reinforced polyester.
 - 2. Color: Safety yellow.
 - 3. Shapes and Sizes:
 - a. Rectangular panel, As noted on plans.
 - 4. Dome Spacing and Configuration: 1.67-inch spacing, in manufacturer's standard pattern.
 - 5. Mounting:
 - a. Permanently embedded detectable warning tile wet-set into freshly poured concrete.
 - b. Detectable warning tile set into formed recess in concrete and adhered with mortar.
 - c. Replaceable detectable warning tile wet-set into freshly poured concrete and surface-fastened to permanently embedded anchors.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: As recommended by manufacturer for adhering tactile warning surfacing unit to pavement.
- B. Sealant: As recommended by manufacturer for sealing perimeter of tactile warning surfacing unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement is in suitable condition to begin installation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Verify that installation of tactile warning surfacing will comply with accessibility requirements upon completion.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

- A. General: Prepare substrate and install tactile warning surfacing according to manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Place tactile warning surfacing units in dimensions and orientation indicated. Comply with location requirements of AASHTO MP 12.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF DETECTABLE WARNING TILES

- A. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles:
 - 1. Set each detectable warning tile accurately and firmly in place and completely seat tile back and embedments in wet concrete by tamping or vibrating. If necessary, temporarily apply weight to tiles to ensure full contact with concrete.
 - 2. Set surface of tile flush with surrounding concrete and adjacent tiles, with variations between tiles and between concrete and tiles not exceeding plus or minus 1/8 inch from flush.
 - 3. Protect exposed surfaces of installed tiles from contact with wet concrete. Complete finishing of concrete paving surrounding tiles. Remove concrete from tile surfaces.
 - 4. Clean tiles using methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace tactile warning surfacing that is broken or damaged or does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect. Replace using tactile warning surfacing installation methods acceptable to Architect.
- B. Protect tactile warning surfacing from damage and maintain free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material.

END OF SECTION 321726



April 13, 2017

Mr. Tim Hayes, P.E.
WSP / Parsons Brinckerhoff
434 Fayetteville Street, Suite 1500
Raleigh, North Carolina 27601

Reference: **REPORT OF SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION**
 NCDOT Passenger Terminals and Parking Lots
 Hatteras and Ocracoke Islands, North Carolina
 ESP Project No. E4A-FN65.300

Dear Mr. Hayes:

ESP Associates, P.A. (ESP) has completed the subsurface exploration for the proposed passenger terminals on Hatteras and Ocracoke Islands, North Carolina. This exploration was performed in general accordance with our Proposal No. E4A-17028, dated February 14, 2017. Authorization to proceed with this study was provided by written execution of our proposal by Mr. Brock Laforty with WSP/Parsons Brinckerhoff.

The purpose of the exploration was to evaluate the general subsurface conditions within the proposed building and pavement areas with regard to the design and construction of the pile foundation and pavement systems. This report presents our findings, conclusions and recommendations for foundation design, as well as construction considerations for the proposed pile foundations and paved areas.

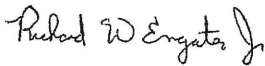
ESP appreciates the opportunity to assist you during this phase of the project. If you should have any questions concerning this report, or if we may be of further assistance, please contact us.

Sincerely,

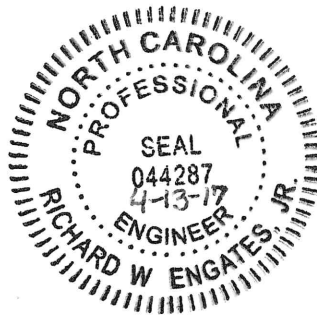
ESP Associates, P.A.



Benjamin R. Long, EI
Project Manager



Richard W. Engates Jr., PE
N.C. Registration No. 44287



BRL/RWE/db

Copies Submitted: (3)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	SITE AND PROJECT DESCRIPTION	1
1.2	PURPOSE OF SERVICES	1
2.0	EXPLORATION PROCEDURES	2
2.1	FIELD	2
2.2	LABORATORY	3
3.0	SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS	4
3.1	PHYSIOGRAPHY AND AREA GEOLOGY	4
3.2	SUBSURFACE	4
3.3	SUBSURFACE WATER	6
4.0	CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS	6
4.1	GENERAL	6
4.2	SITE DEVELOPMENT	6
4.3	EXISTING FILL	7
4.4	FOUNDATION SUPPORT	8
4.5	FLOOR SLABS	10
4.6	SEISMIC CLASS	11
4.7	PAVEMENT AREAS	11
4.8	TEMPORARY DEWATERING	12
4.9	DRAINAGE	12
5.0	CONSTRUCTION CONSIDERATIONS	13
5.1	EXISTING UTILITIES	13
5.2	SITE PREPARATION	13
5.3	EFFECTS OF CONSTRUCTION	14
6.0	LIMITATIONS OF REPORT	15

APPENDIX

FIELD EXPLORATION PROCEDURES
BORING LOCATION PLAN
LEGEND TO SOIL CLASSIFICATION AND SYMBOLS
GEOTECHNICAL BORING REPORT BORE LOGS (B-1 THROUGH B-6)
SEISMIC REPORT FIGURES
PILE BEARING CAPACITY FIGURES
TABLES OF FRICTION ANGLES
LABORATORY TEST RESULTS

INTRODUCTION

1.1 SITE AND PROJECT DESCRIPTION

The sites are located on Hatteras Island and Ocracoke Island in North Carolina. The initial site plans are for the construction of covered passenger shelters adjacent to their respective existing Visitor's Centers. Each Passenger Ferry Terminal Shelter will be an open-aired, approximately 1,500 square feet structure with a 500 square foot veranda. The shelters will have a concrete slab-on-grade floor with timber framing. The structure foundations are assumed to be timber piles. The Hatteras terminal will have two parking lot areas along Coast Guard Road within walking distance of the shelter.

The location of the proposed Hatteras shelter is paved and located between the ferry loading area and Visitor's Center. The parking areas will be located behind the Visitor's Center and Maintenance building. The proposed Ocracoke shelter will be located between the Visitor's Center and Irvin Garrish Highway.

1.2 PURPOSE OF SERVICES

The purpose of the exploration was to evaluate the general subsurface conditions within the proposed building and pavement areas with regard to the design and construction of the pile foundation and pavement systems. This report presents our findings, conclusions and recommendations for foundation design, as well as construction considerations for the proposed pile foundations and paved areas. This report also contains a brief description of the field and laboratory testing procedures performed for this study and a discussion of the soil conditions encountered at the site.

2.0 EXPLORATION PROCEDURES

2.1 FIELD

Five (5) soil test borings (Borings B-1 through B-3, B-5 and B-6) and one (1) hand auger boring (Boring B-4) supplemented with Dynamic Cone Penetrometer (DCP) Testing were performed at the approximate locations shown on the attached “Boring Location Plan,” Figure 1. The borings were located in the field by a representative from our office using the Boring Location Map provided by Mr. Tim Hayes with WSP/Parsons Brinckerhoff sent via email on January 18 (Hatteras) and February 6, 2017 (Ocracoke). Existing buildings were used as references for measuring distances and approximating right angles. The soil test borings were extended to depths ranging between 5 and 40 feet below the existing ground surface using a 4-wheel drive, truck mounted CME 45 drill rig. Mud rotary drilling was used to advance the solid stem auger borings into the ground. The hand auger boring (Boring B-4) was manually advanced to a depth of approximately 5 feet below the existing ground surface.

Standard Penetration Tests were performed at designated intervals in the soil test borings (Borings B-1 through B-3, B-5 and B-6) in general accordance with ASTM D 1586 in order to obtain data for estimating soil strength and consistency. In conjunction with the penetration testing, split-spoon soil samples were recovered for soil classification and potential laboratory testing. Water level measurements were attempted at the termination of drilling.

The DCP test procedure used during our evaluation of Boring B-4 is as follows. The cone point of the penetrometer is first seated into the bearing material to embed the point. The cone point is driven three 1-3/4 inch intervals using a 15 pound weight falling 20 inches. The penetrometer test result is the number of blows required to drive the cone point 1-3/4-inches. The penetrometer test result is similar to the Standard Penetration Resistance (N-value), as defined by ASTM D 1586. When properly evaluated, the penetrometer test results provide an index for estimating soil strength and relative density.

While in the field, a representative of the geotechnical engineer visually examined each sample to evaluate the type of soil encountered, soil plasticity, moisture condition, organic content, presence of lenses and seams, colors and apparent geological origin. The results of the visual soil classifications for the borings, as well as field test results, are presented on the individual “Geotechnical Boring Report Bore Log,” included in the Appendix. Similar soils were grouped into strata on the logs. The strata lines represent approximate boundaries between the soil types; however, the actual transition between soil types in the field may be gradual in both the horizontal and vertical directions.

While coordinating with the Parks and Recreation Department for access to the Ocracoke Ferry Terminal site, it was discovered that it was a historic location. Because of this, an archaeologist retained by WSP/Parsons Brinckerhoff was present during these borings to assess any cultural material discovered.

Shear Wave Velocity Testing

ESP collected surface wave seismic data at the sites and analyzed the data to provide an approximate shear wave velocity distribution of the subsurface. The purpose of the study was to develop a shear wave velocity model to determine the Seismic Site Class for each specific site, as per the 2015 North Carolina State Building Code (the 2012 International Building Code as modified by North Carolina), which references the seismic site class requirements of ASCE 7-10.

The surface wave seismic data was collected at the sites along an approximate 115-foot long alignment oriented approximately northwest-southeast near the center of the site on Hatteras Island and north to south along the center of the site at Ocracoke Island. The distance between the source location and the first geophone was 25 feet for the record selected for processing. The selected record had 15 stacked blows with a 20-pound sledgehammer.

2.2 LABORATORY

Select samples of the on-site soils obtained during the field testing program were tested in the laboratory. Tests performed included grain size distribution, Standard Proctor compaction, and an organic content test. The limited testing program was designed to determine selected engineering properties of the on-site soils relative to their use for the project. The results of the soil tests performed for this study, along with a brief description of the laboratory procedures used, are presented in the Appendix.

3.0 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

3.1 PHYSIOGRAPHY AND AREA GEOLOGY

The referenced properties are located on Hatteras and Ocracoke Islands in North Carolina which is in the Coastal Plain Physiographic Province. The Coastal Plain Physiographic Province is comprised of interbedded silts, sands and clays deposited by marine or fluvial action. The virgin soils encountered in this area are the product of surficial and quaternary deposits. In areas not altered by erosion or disturbed by the activities of man, the typical soil profile consists of coarse to fine sands to silty sands.

3.2 SUBSURFACE

The subsurface conditions as indicated by the borings generally consist of topsoil/grassmat underlain by coastal plain deposits. The generalized subsurface conditions at the site are described below. For more detailed soil descriptions and stratifications at a particular boring location, the attached “Geotechnical Boring Report Bore Log” should be reviewed.

Surface (Hatteras): An approximately 2 inch thick layer of asphalt underlain by approximately 4 inches of aggregate base course (ABC) stone was encountered at the surface of Borings B-1 and

B-2. A topsoil/grassmat layer approximately 2 to 3 inches thick was encountered at the surface in Borings B-3 through B-4.

Surface (Ocracoke): A topsoil/grassmat layer approximately 2 to 3 inches thick was encountered at the surface in Borings B-5 through B-6.

Fill (Hatteras): Underlying the surface material in Boring B-3, fill materials were encountered. The fill material consisted of loose, tan to brown, silty sand. Standard Penetration Resistances (N-values) ranged from 5 to 9 blows per foot (bpf). Fill depths were approximately 4 feet below grade.

Fill (Ocracoke): Underlying the surface material in Borings B-5 and B-6, fill materials were encountered. The fill material consisted of loose to medium dense, tan to brown, silty sand. Standard Penetration Resistances (N-values) ranged from 3 to 17 blows per foot (bpf). Fill depths were approximately 4 feet below grade.

Coastal Plain Deposits: Underlying the surface material in Borings B-1 through B-6, coastal plain deposits were encountered. The soils encountered generally consist of loose to medium dense sand and silty sand. Portions of the sand materials contained interbedded clayey silt. Organic material was encountered within the Coastal Plain Deposits in Boring B-4 at a depth of approximately 4 feet below the existing grade in the proposed parking area. The organic material consisted of black clayey material with an anaerobic odor. Standard Penetration Resistances (N-values) in the coastal plain deposits ranged from 3 to 57 blows per foot (bpf). The soil test borings were terminated within the coastal plain deposits at depths ranging from approximately 25 feet to 40 feet below the existing ground surface. The hand auger boring (Boring B-4) was terminated in the coastal plain deposits at a depth of approximately 5 feet below the existing ground surface.

3.3 SUBSURFACE WATER

Water was encountered during drilling at depths ranging between approximately 1.8 and 2.6 feet below the existing ground surface in Borings B-1 through B-6. All borings were terminated below the water table. For safety reasons, the boreholes were backfilled upon completion. Hole cave-in depths ranged between approximately 2 and 4 feet below the existing ground surface.

Subsurface water levels tend to fluctuate with seasonal and climatic variations, as well as with some types of construction operations. Therefore, water may be encountered during construction at depths not indicated during this study.

4.0 CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

4.1 GENERAL

Our conclusions and recommendations are based on the project information previously discussed and on the data obtained from the field and laboratory testing program. If the structural loading, geometry or proposed building locations are changed or significantly differ from those discussed, or if conditions are encountered during construction that differ from those encountered by the borings, ESP requests the opportunity to review our recommendations based on the new information and make any necessary changes.

4.2 SITE DEVELOPMENT

The results of the field testing program and analyses indicate the sites majority of the property appears to be suitable for constructing lightly to moderately loaded structures, provided the following measures are considered.

- A) The results from Borings B-4 through B-6 indicates that lower consistency coastal plains deposits (soils exhibiting N-values less than 6 bpf) are present at the sites. The near surface N-values obtained in the borings generally ranged from 3 to 21 bpf and generally extended to approximately 5 feet below the existing ground surface. If these soils are present near the surface in structural and pavement areas, some undercutting and/or reworking of these materials will be required.
- B) The results from Borings B-3, B-5, and B-6 indicate existing fill soils from prior construction. Please refer to Section 4.3 for additional information.

4.3 EXISTING FILL

Hatteras Site

Results from the soil test borings performed at the site indicate that fill soils are present in Boring B-3. The fill extends to a depth of approximately 4.5 feet below the existing ground surface. Based on our visual observations of the split-spoon samples recovered and the our field observations, the fill encountered in the soil test borings appeared to contain concentrated organics, debris and other detritus materials. Boring B-4, located behind the Maintenance Building, contains a layer of highly concentrated organics with an anaerobic odor was noted from depths ranging from approximately 3.9 to 5.4 feet below the existing ground surface. Based on our understanding of anticipated pavement ESAL loads, design grades and the composition of the organic layer encountered, it is not anticipated to adversely affect the proposed construction. The soil subgrade may require the installation of geotextiles to stabilize the parking area.

Based on visual observations of the ground surface and Boring B-3, it appears that the fill has been placed in the proposed Hatteras parking lot behind the visitors center. The layer encountered at this location contains sand, gravel, and a piping system for a leach field. The results of the Loss on Ignition test of a sample obtained from this location indicated an approximately 0.65% organic content. It is recommended that the piping system and unsuitable fill be removed prior to construction.

Ocracoke Site

Results from the soil test borings performed at the site indicate that fill soils are present in Borings B-5 and B-6. The fill extends to depths varying between approximately 0.5 and 3 feet below the existing ground surface. Based on our visual observations of the split-spoon samples recovered and the our field observations, the fill encountered in the soil test borings consisted of sand and various construction debris such as bricks, nails and wood pieces. Encountered construction debris was retained by the archeologist for analysis.

Concentrated organics, debris and other deleterious materials were observed in the soil test borings performed by ESP Associates. However, due to the limited testing performed and the wide spacing of the borings, the possibility of additional deleterious inclusions and variable density material in or under the existing fill cannot be completely ruled out. Fill which contains wood fragments, trash, organics, voids or soft lenses, could result in excessive causing building distress. Also, the presence of the existing fill beneath pavement areas presents the risk of increased settlement and subsequently possible increased long term maintenance of the pavement areas. If the owner is not willing to accept the risk then the existing fill should be removed and replaced with compacted suitable structural fill.

4.4 FOUNDATION SUPPORT

For satisfactory performance, the foundation for any structure must satisfy three independent design criteria. First, it must have an acceptable factor of safety against bearing failure of the foundation soils under the maximum design loads. Second, the settlement of the foundations due to consolidation of the underlying soils should be within tolerable limits for the structures. Third, acceptable uplift capacity must be met.

Proposed plans called for the use of 10 x 10 inch square timber piles to be used for the foundation and columns of the shelters. Based on the design criteria provided by Ms. Lisa McGurty, the

structural engineer with NRW Engineering in an email to Mr. Benjamin Long with ESP on March 21, 2017, we understand that the piles should be designed utilizing a factor of safety of 2.5 for the following allowable loads:

- 12 kips of compression;
- 4.5 kips of uplift; and
- 3.5 kips of lateral load.

The results of our analyses indicated that uplift would be the controlling design factor. Uplift was calculated based on the FHWA recommendation of assuming the uplift load is 1/3 of the shaft resistance. To achieve the allowable compression and uplift loads provided, we recommend the tip elevation of the timber piles be at least 14 feet below the design ground surface elevation at the Hatteras site and 16 feet at the Ocracoke site. We also recommend that each piling be treated with creosote in accordance with AWWA C-3 specifications.

We recommend that the timber piles be driven to a dynamic driving resistance required for a 30 kip design capacity as determined by the provided ultimate bearing capacity of 12 kips and a factor of safety of 2.5, or to practical refusal, whichever comes first. It is essential that driving be terminated immediately if refusal (i.e., four blows per inch or 48 blows per foot) is reached to prevent damage to the piles.

A wave equation analysis should be performed for the piles, once the driving equipment has been selected. This would help to determine when adequate penetration and pile capacity is achieved in the field. A wave equation analysis would also assess the pile drivability with the selected equipment and would help to prevent pile damage due to overdriving.

The hammer size, operating efficiency and cushion properties should be provided by the contractor. The pile driving hammer should have a rated energy of at least 15,000 foot-pounds per blow. The size and type of the pile hammer should be able to deliver consistently effective dynamic energy, suitable to the piles to be driven and to the subgrade material into which they are to be driven. The pile hammer shall be in sound mechanical condition and be operated at the manufacturer's

rated speed and pressure. Pile spacing measured center-to-center should not be less than three times the pile diameter.

We recommend that driving be monitored by a geotechnical engineer or his qualified representative. This should be done to keep driving records and determine that the piles have been driven to adequate resistance in the appropriate strata. We also recommend that the piles be monitored for heave due to driving of adjacent piles. Should heave occur, the pile should be re-driven to its original depth.

Lateral pile analyses were beyond our scope of services for this project. If requested, ESP can provide these services under separate contract.

4.5 FLOOR SLABS

The slab-on-grade floor system can be adequately supported on the coastal plains deposits or newly compacted fill, provided the site preparation and fill placement procedures outlined in this report are implemented. However, as noted in Section 4.1, lower consistency soils were encountered at portions of the sites and as noted in Section 4.2, existing fill soils were encountered at portions of the sites. Depending on final grades, and the Owner's risk tolerance, some undercutting or reworking of these soils may be required to obtain suitable support for slab placement. A thorough evaluation by the geotechnical engineer's representative should be performed during construction to aid in determining the extent of these materials and the appropriate repair method.

Immediately prior to constructing the floor slabs, we recommend the areas be evaluated to detect unstable and/or unsuitable areas that may have been exposed to wet weather or construction traffic. The evaluation may consist of performing field density testing, DCP testing, proofrolling and/or hand probing with a steel probe rod. The evaluation should be performed by a representative of the geotechnical engineer. Areas that are found to be unstable and/or unsuitable should be undercut and replaced with adequately compacted structural fill.

4.6 SEISMIC CLASS

Ocracoke Island

The results of our MASW testing at the site indicate the “average” shear wave velocity for the upper 100 feet is approximately 923 feet per second (ft/s) for the location tested. Based on our review of the 2012 International Building Code, with reference to Table 20.3-1 of ASCE 7-10, the site falls within the range of $V_{S(100)}$ between 600 and 1200 ft/s and is therefore identified as a **Site Class “D”**

Please reference the “Surface Wave Seismic Processing,” Figure 4 and “Shear Wave Velocity Model,” Figure 5 in the Appendix for more detailed information regarding our MASW testing.

Hatteras Island

The results of our MASW testing at the site indicate the “average” shear wave velocity for the upper 100 feet is approximately 1,089 feet per second (ft/s) for the location tested. Based on our review of the 2012 International Building Code, with reference to Table 20.3-1 of ASCE 7-10, the site falls within the range of $V_{S(100)}$ between 600 and 1200 ft/s and is therefore identified as a **Site Class “D”**

Please reference the “Surface Wave Seismic Processing,” Figure 8 and “Shear Wave Velocity Model,” Figure 9 in the Appendix for more detailed information regarding our MASW testing.

4.7 PAVEMENT AREAS

We recommend that special care be given to providing adequate drainage away from pavement areas to reduce infiltration of surface water to the base course and subgrade materials in these areas. If these materials are allowed to become saturated during the life of the pavement section, then there will be a strength reduction of the materials that could result in a reduced life of the pavement section. It is recommended that areas with unsuitable existing fill and soils with concentrated organics in the near surface area be removed and backfilled with acceptable material. All water should be routed away from the pavement areas and adequate slopes provided to

maintain drainage off site. Pavement areas should be proofrolled prior to placing structural fill and/or base course. Proofrolling procedures are outlined in subsequent sections of this report.

4.8 TEMPORARY DEWATERING

Based on existing ground surface elevations, groundwater levels encountered at the time of drilling and proposed subgrade elevations, we anticipate that dewatering will be required at the site. We expect that dewatering could be adequately handled with pumping from sumps excavated at least 3 feet below the bottom of the excavations. Pumping from the sumps should be maintained until fill placement in the excavation is a minimum of 3 feet above the water level. At no time should pumping be performed directly beneath the exposed subgrade elevation since this could result in disturbance of the bearing materials and a loss of soil strength and increased settlement.

4.9 DRAINAGE

Soil strength and settlement potential is highly dependent upon the moisture condition of the supportive soil. Soil characteristics can change dramatically when moisture conditions change. As such, building pads, roadways, structures and surrounding grades should be properly designed and constructed to properly control water (surface and subsurface). Building pads should be designed to shed surface water prior to building construction. Grades surrounding structures should be adequately sloped away from the structure to promote positive drainage and prevent water from ponding near or against the structure. Swales and/or storm drainage structures should be constructed to collect and remove all surface water run-off. All roof drain downspouts should be connected to drain leaders that are properly daylighted or connected to storm drainage structures such that water is removed from structural areas. Roof drain lines and foundation drain lines should always remain independent of each other. Any subsurface water that may rise near structural grades should be controlled by adequately constructed subsurface drainage mechanisms.

5.0 CONSTRUCTION CONSIDERATIONS

5.1 EXISTING UTILITIES

Based on a review of the site plans provided to us and our visual observations during the subsurface exploration, we understand that several underground utility lines are present within the proposed Shelter and parking lots at The Hatteras Terminal location. An existing power line is located near B-2 running from the Ferry Control Building to the loading docks and near B-4 in the southern portion of the property. An existing leach field was encountered at Boring B-3. At the time of our field services, the USCG informed us that the leach field was located approximately 3 to 4 feet below the existing ground surface with the center pipe running parallel to the docks. It was further indicated that the center pipe could also be surrounded by approximately 1.5 to 3 feet of gravel on each side. It is recommended that the entire leach system be removed along with any areas containing concentrated organic material.

5.2 SITE PREPARATION

The entire buildings and pavement areas should be stripped of all topsoil, trash, debris and other organic materials to a minimum of 10 feet beyond the structural and 5 feet beyond the pavement limits. Upon completion of the stripping operations, the exposed subgrade in areas to receive fill should be proofrolled with a loaded dump truck or similar pneumatic tired vehicle (minimum loaded weight of 20 tons) under the observation of a representative of the geotechnical engineer. The proofrolling procedures should consist of complete passes of the exposed areas, with half of the passes being in a direction perpendicular to the preceding ones. After excavation of the site has been completed, the exposed subgrade in cut areas should also be proofrolled as previously described. Any areas which deflect, rut or pump excessively during proofrolling or fail to improve sufficiently after successive passes should be undercut to suitable soils and replaced with structural fill.

Fill was encountered in Borings B-3, B-5 and B-6. The depth of the fill varied between approximately 1 to 4.5 feet below the existing ground surface. Portions of the soil fill observed contained concentrated organics and/or deleterious materials. In addition, some of the near surface Standard Penetration Tests performed in the fill indicate that these soils may not be suitable for slab-on-grade and/or pavement support without remediation. Unsuitable soils may be encountered between the borings during site grading or excavation for foundations, that were not encountered in the borings. Some undercutting of the soft near surface soils and/or fill materials within the upper 3 feet of subgrade should be anticipated. The extent of the undercut required should be evaluated in the field by an experienced representative of the geotechnical engineer while monitoring construction activity. The evaluation should consist of a comprehensive proofrolling program and thorough field evaluation during construction. After the proofrolling operation has been completed and approved, final site grading should proceed immediately. If construction progresses during wet weather, the proofrolling operation should be repeated with at least one pass in each direction immediately prior to placing base course in the parking areas. If unstable conditions are exposed during this operation, then undercutting should be performed.

5.3 EFFECTS OF CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Several aspects of construction at this site could adversely affect the adjacent streets, utilities and nearby facilities. Therefore, proper design and special care during construction will be needed to protect the adjoining properties. These items are discussed below.

Pile driving and other construction activities can generate vibrations that travel off-site. These vibrations can cause damage to adjacent structures if not properly controlled. Care must be taken to prevent damage of newly placed structures, especially fresh concrete. We recommend that vibration monitoring be performed for structures located nearby during the construction activities that generate a large amount of vibration. This will reduce the potential for large magnitude vibrations and subsequent damage claims.

General site dewatering can sometimes cause settlement of adjacent structures due to an increase in effective stresses which can consolidate soils. Based on the available data, we anticipate that this will generally not be a problem at this site. However, pumping of fine soil particles due to improper dewatering techniques can result in unwanted subsidence. Therefore, proper dewatering systems, if required, should be implemented to reduce these effects.

6.0 LIMITATIONS OF REPORT

This report has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practice with regard to the specific conditions and requirements of this site. The conclusions and recommendations contained in this report were based on the applicable standards of our practice in this geographic area at the time this report was prepared. No other warranty, expressed or implied, is made.

The analysis and recommendations submitted herein are based, in part, upon the data obtained from the subsurface exploration. The nature and extent of variations between the borings will not be known until construction is underway. If variations appear evident, then we request the opportunity to re-evaluate the recommendations of this report. In the event that any changes in the nature, design, or location of the structures are planned, the conclusions and recommendations contained in this report will not be considered valid unless the changes are reviewed and conclusions modified or verified in writing by ESP.

In order to verify that earthwork and foundation recommendations are properly interpreted and implemented, we recommend that ESP be provided the opportunity to review the final plans and specifications. Any concerns observed will be brought to our client's attention in writing.

FIELD EXPLORATION PROCEDURES

Soil Test Boring: Five (5) soil test borings (B-1 through B-3, B-5 and B-6) were drilled at the approximate locations shown on the attached Boring Location Plan. Soil sampling and penetration testing were performed in accordance with ASTM D 1586.

The borings were advanced with hollow-stem augers and, at standard intervals, soil samples were obtained with a standard 1.4-inch I.D., 2-inch O.D., split-tube sampler. The sampler was first seated six (6) inches to penetrate any loose cuttings, then driven an additional foot with blows of a 140-pound hammer falling 30 inches. The number of hammer blows is designated the “Standard Penetration Resistance.” When properly evaluated, the Standard Penetration Resistances provide an index to soil strength, relative density, and ability to support foundations.

Select portions of each soil sample were placed in sealed containers and taken to our office. The samples were examined by a representative of the geotechnical engineer for classification. Test Boring Records are attached showing the soil descriptions and Standard Penetration Resistances.

Auger Boring: One (1) hand auger boring (B-4) was performed at the approximate location shown on the attached Boring Location Plan, Figure 2. The boring was advanced by manually twisting an auger into the ground. The soils encountered were identified, in the field, from cuttings brought to the surface by the drilling process. Auger boring records are attached showing the soil descriptions.

Penetrometer Test: A portable Dynamic Cone Penetrometer was used to estimate the relative density of the existing soils as encountered in Boring B-4 and as outlined in the Sowers and Hedges paper “Dynamic Cone for Shallow In-Situ Penetration Testing.” The cone point is first seated two (2) inches to insure that the cone is completely embedded, then the cone point is driven 1-3/4 inches using a 15-pound ring weight hammer falling 20 inches. The number of blows required to drive the cone point 1-3/4 inches is recorded. The cone point is then driven two additional 1-3/4 inch intervals and the number of blows is recorded. The penetrometer reading is defined as the number of blows required to drive the cone point 1-3/4 inches. The penetrometer reading is similar to the Standard Penetration Resistance, or “N” value, as defined in ASTM D 1586.

Shear Wave Testing: The surface wave seismic data was collected at each site across the approximate center of the site. The distance between the source location and the first geophone was 25 feet for the record selected for processing.

The shear wave testing was performed using the active Multi-channel Analysis of Surface Waves (MASW) method. Surface wave seismic data were collected using a one line (spread) consisting of 24 8-Hz vertical geophones spaced 5 feet apart for a total spread length of 115 feet. The geophones were connected by a seismic cable to a laptop-controlled seismograph (Geometrics Geode). The energy source was a 20-pound sledgehammer impacting an aluminum plate offset from one end of the spread. Multiple blows of the sledgehammer were added together (stacked) to increase the signal-to-noise ratio. Several seismic records were collected using various number of stacks and/or different offsets. The field geophysicist reviewed the data in the field for quality

control. During data analysis, a seismic record with comparatively higher amplitude and wider frequency range of the surface wave energy was selected for processing.

The seismic data was analyzed using the program Surfseis, version 3.0, produced by the Kansas Geological Survey. The processing steps included assigning geometry, converting the seismic time-series data to the frequency domain, selecting the observed frequency/velocity distribution (observed dispersion curve), and performing an inversion to produce a shear wave velocity model that matched the observed dispersion curve.

The layered velocity model was utilized to calculate the “average” shear wave velocity for the upper 100 feet of the subsurface at this site, using the equation $V_{S(100)} = 100 \text{ feet} / \sum (d_i/v_i)$, where d_i and v_i are the individual layer thicknesses and velocities for the upper 100 feet of the model.

LABORATORY PROCEDURES

Grain Size Test: Grain size tests were performed to determine the particle size and distribution of the samples tested. The grain size distribution of soils coarser than a No. 200 sieve was determined by passing the samples through a set of nested sieves. The soil particles passing the No. 200 sieve were suspended in solution and the grain size distribution determined from the rate of settlement. The results are presented on the attached Grain Size Distribution Sheets.

Soil Plasticity Tests (Atterberg Limits Test): Select samples were identified for Atterberg Limits testing to determine the soil's plasticity characteristics. The Plasticity Index (PI) is representative of this characteristic and is determined utilizing the Liquid Limit (LL) and the Plastic Limit (PL). The Liquid Limit is the moisture content at which the soil will flow as a heavy viscous fluid and is determined in accordance with ASTM D 4318. The Plastic Limit is the moisture content at which the soil transitions between the plastic and semi-solid states and is determined in accordance with ASTM D 4318. The data obtained is presented on the attached Summary of Laboratory Test Data sheet.

Standard Proctor Compaction Test: Select samples of the on-site were obtained from auger cuttings to determine their suitability as fill material. Standard Proctor Compaction Tests (ASTM D 698) were performed on these soils to determine their compaction characteristics including maximum dry density and optimum moisture content. The test results are presented on the attached Moisture-Density Relationship Sheets included in the Appendix.

Organic Content of Soils: A select sample was identified for Organic Content of Soils testing to determine the percent of organic matter in the soil. The testing was performed in general accordance with ASTM D 2974.

**REPORT OF
SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION
OCRACOKE AND HATTERAS
NCDOT PASSENGER TERMINALS
AND PARKING LOTS
ESP PROJECT NO. E4A-FN65.300**

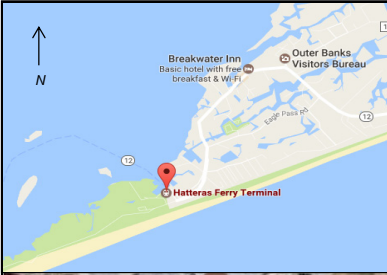
Prepared For:

Mr. Tim Hayes, P.E.
WSP / Parsons Brinckerhoff
434 Fayetteville Street, Suite 1500
Raleigh, North Carolina 27601



Prepared By:

ESP Associates, P.A.
P. O. Box 7030
Charlotte, North Carolina 28241

April 13, 2017



LEGEND

-  APPROXIMATE PREVIOUS BORING LOCATION
-  APPROXIMATE ADDITIONAL BORING LOCATION

NOTE: THIS DRAWING AND/OR THE DESIGN SHOWN ARE THE PROPERTY OF ESP ASSOCIATES, P.A. THE REPRODUCTION, ALTERATION, COPYING, OR OTHER USE OF THIS DRAWING WITHOUT THEIR WRITTEN CONSENT IS PROHIBITED AND ANY INFRINGEMENT WILL BE SUBJECT TO LEGAL ACTION.

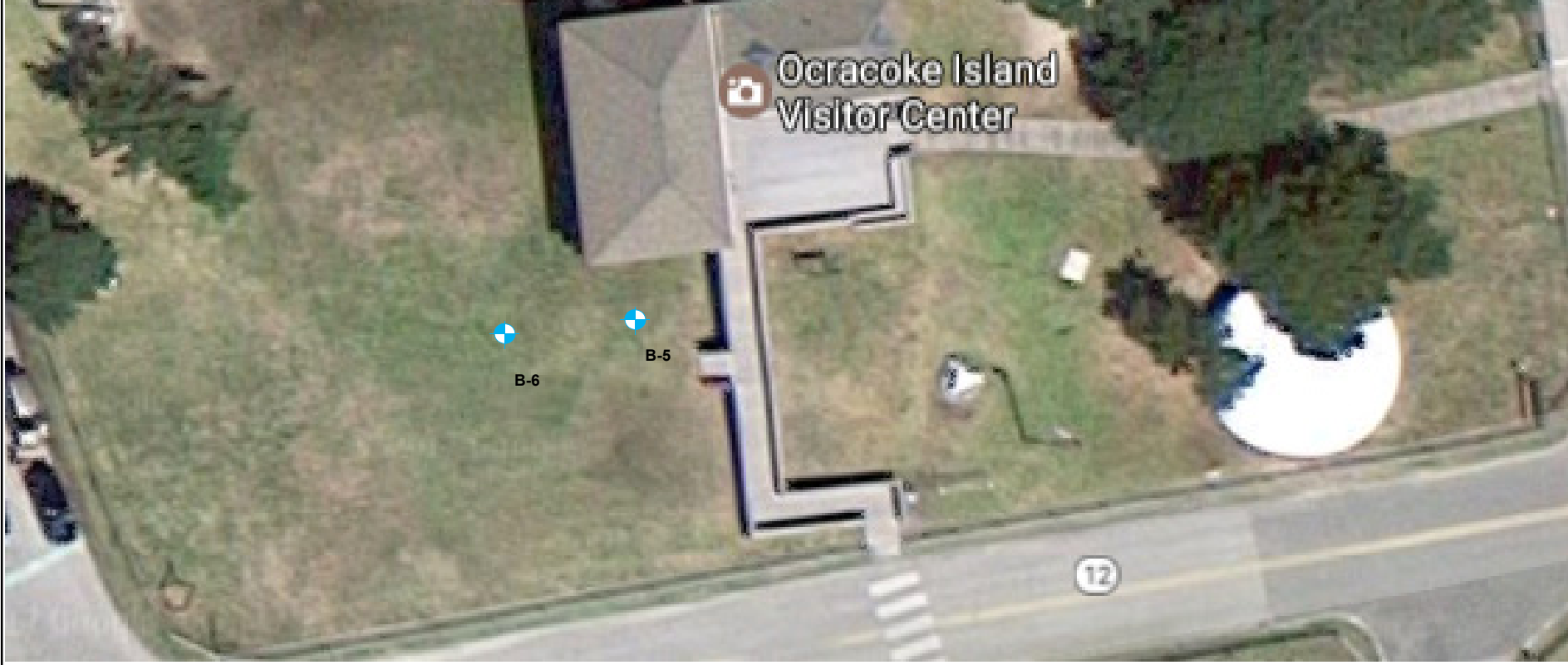
THIS DRAWING IS INTENDED TO SHOW APPROXIMATE TEST LOCATIONS ONLY. NO OTHER INFORMATION IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED.



PROJECT NO:	FN65.300
SCALE:	NTS
DRAWN BY:	BRL
CHECKED BY:	RWE
DATE:	4/12/2017
FIGURE 1	

SHEET TITLE:	HATTERAS BORING LOCATION PLAN
PROJECT:	NCDOT PASSENGER FERRY TERMINALS AND PARKING LOTS
HATTERAS, NORTH CAROLINA	



ESP Associates, P.A.
 P. O. Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 5121 Kingdom Way Suite 208
 Raleigh, NC 27607
 919-676-1070
www.espassociates.com



LEGEND	
	APPROXIMATE PREVIOUS BORING LOCATION
	APPROXIMATE ADDITIONAL BORING LOCATION

NOTE: THIS DRAWING AND/OR THE DESIGN SHOWN ARE THE PROPERTY OF ESP ASSOCIATES, P.A. THE REPRODUCTION, ALTERATION, COPYING, OR OTHER USE OF THIS DRAWING WITHOUT THEIR WRITTEN CONSENT IS PROHIBITED AND ANY INFRINGEMENT WILL BE SUBJECT TO LEGAL ACTION.

THIS DRAWING IS INTENDED TO SHOW APPROXIMATE TEST LOCATIONS ONLY. NO OTHER INFORMATION IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED.

PROJECT NO: FN65.300	SHEET TITLE:
SCALE: NTS	OCRACOKE BORING LOCATION PLAN
DRAWN BY: BRL	
CHECKED BY: RWE	PROJECT:
DATE: 4/12/2017	NCDOT PASSENGER FERRY TERMINALS AND PARKING LOTS
FIGURE 2	OCRACOKE, NORTH CAROLINA



ESP Associates, P.A.
 P. O. Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 5121 Kingdom Way Suite 208
 Raleigh, NC 27607
 919-676-1070
 www.espassociates.com

NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
DIVISION OF HIGHWAYS
GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT

SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION





SOIL AND ROCK LEGEND, TERMS, SYMBOLS, AND ABBREVIATIONS
(PAGE 1 OF 2)

SOIL DESCRIPTION										GRADATION									
SOIL IS CONSIDERED UNCONSOLIDATED, SEMI-CONSOLIDATED, OR WEATHERED EARTH MATERIALS THAT CAN BE PENETRATED WITH A CONTINUOUS FLIGHT POWER AUGER AND YIELD LESS THAN 100 BLOWS PER FOOT ACCORDING TO THE STANDARD PENETRATION TEST (AASHTO T 206, ASTM D1586). SOIL CLASSIFICATION IS BASED ON THE AASHTO SYSTEM. BASIC DESCRIPTIONS GENERALLY INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING: CONSISTENCY, COLOR, TEXTURE, MOISTURE, AASHTO CLASSIFICATION, AND OTHER PERTINENT FACTORS SUCH AS MINERALOGICAL COMPOSITION, ANGULARITY, STRUCTURE, PLASTICITY, ETC. FOR EXAMPLE, VERY STIFF, GRAY, SILTY CLAY, MOIST WITH INTERBEDDED FINE SAND LAYERS, HIGHLY PLASTIC, A-7-6										WELL GRADED - INDICATES A GOOD REPRESENTATION OF PARTICLE SIZES FROM FINE TO COARSE. UNIFORMLY GRADED - INDICATES THAT SOIL PARTICLES ARE ALL APPROXIMATELY THE SAME SIZE. GAP-GRADED - INDICATES A MIXTURE OF UNIFORM PARTICLE SIZES OF TWO OR MORE SIZES.									
SOIL LEGEND AND AASHTO CLASSIFICATION										ANGULARITY OF GRAINS									
GENERAL CLASS. GRANULAR MATERIALS (≤ 35% PASSING #200) SILT-CLAY MATERIALS (> 35% PASSING #200) ORGANIC MATERIALS										MINERALOGICAL COMPOSITION									
GROUP CLASS. A-1, A-3, A-2, A-4, A-5, A-6, A-7, A-1-A2, A-3, A-4, A-5, A-6, A-7										MINERAL NAMES SUCH AS QUARTZ, FELDSPAR, MICA, TALC, KAOLIN, ETC. ARE USED IN DESCRIPTIONS WHEN THEY ARE CONSIDERED OF SIGNIFICANCE.									
SYMBOL										COMPRESSIBILITY									
% PASSING #10, #40, #200										SLIGHTLY COMPRESSIBLE LL < 31 MODERATELY COMPRESSIBLE LL = 31 - 50 HIGHLY COMPRESSIBLE LL > 50									
MATERIAL PASSING #40 LL, PI										PERCENTAGE OF MATERIAL									
GROUP INDEX										ORGANIC MATERIAL GRANULAR SOILS SILT-CLAY SOILS OTHER MATERIAL									
USUAL TYPES OF MAJOR MATERIALS										TRACE OF ORGANIC MATTER 2 - 3% 3 - 5% TRACE 1 - 10% LITTLE ORGANIC MATTER 3 - 5% 5 - 12% LITTLE 10 - 20% MODERATELY ORGANIC 5 - 10% 12 - 20% SOME 20 - 35% HIGHLY ORGANIC > 10% > 20% HIGHLY 35% AND ABOVE									
GEN. RATING AS SUBGRADE										GROUND WATER									
EXCELLENT TO GOOD FAIR TO POOR FAIR TO POOR POOR UNSUITABLE										▽ WATER LEVEL IN BORE HOLE IMMEDIATELY AFTER DRILLING ▽ STATIC WATER LEVEL AFTER 24 HOURS ▽PW PERCHED WATER, SATURATED ZONE, OR WATER BEARING STRATA ○ SPRING OR SEEP									
CONSISTENCY OR DENSENESS										MISCELLANEOUS SYMBOLS									
PRIMARY SOIL TYPE COMPACTNESS OR CONSISTENCY RANGE OF STANDARD PENETRATION RESISTANCE (N-VALUE) RANGE OF UNCONFINED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH (TONS/FT ²)										ROADWAY EMBANKMENT (RE) WITH SOIL DESCRIPTION 25/825 DIP & DIP DIRECTION OF ROCK STRUCTURES SOIL SYMBOL SPT DMT VST PMT TEST BORING ARTIFICIAL FILL (AF) OTHER THAN ROADWAY EMBANKMENT AUGER BORING CORE BORING MONITORING WELL INFERRED SOIL BOUNDARY INFERRED ROCK LINE ALLUVIAL SOIL BOUNDARY SLOPE INDICATOR INSTALLATION CONE PENETROMETER TEST SOUNDING ROD TEST BORING WITH CORE PIEZOMETER INSTALLATION SPT N-VALUE									
TEXTURE OR GRAIN SIZE										RECOMMENDATION SYMBOLS									
U.S. STD. SIEVE SIZE OPENING (MM) 4 10 40 60 200 270 4.76 2.00 0.42 0.25 0.075 0.053										UNDERCUT UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION - UNSUITABLE WASTE UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION - ACCEPTABLE, BUT NOT TO BE USED IN THE TOP 3 FEET OF EMBANKMENT OR BACKFILL SHALLOW UNDERCUT UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION - ACCEPTABLE DEGRADABLE ROCK									
GRAIN SIZE MM 305 75 2.0 0.25 0.05 0.005 IN. 12 3										ABBREVIATIONS									
SOIL MOISTURE - CORRELATION OF TERMS										AR - AUGER REFUSAL MED. - MEDIUM BT - BORING TERMINATED MICA - MICACEOUS CL. - CLAY MOD. - MODERATELY CPT - CONE PENETRATION TEST NP - NON PLASTIC CSE. - COARSE DMT - DILATOMETER TEST PMT - PRESSUREMETER TEST DPT - DYNAMIC PENETRATION TEST SAP. - SAPROLITIC e - VOID RATIO SD. - SAND, SANDY f - FINE SL. - SILT, SILTY FOSS. - FOSSILIFEROUS S.L.I. - SLIGHTLY FRAC. - FRACTURED, FRACTURES TCR - TRICONE REFUSAL FRAGS. - FRAGMENTS w - MOISTURE CONTENT HI. - HIGHLY V - VERY									
SOIL MOISTURE SCALE (ATTERBERG LIMITS) FIELD MOISTURE DESCRIPTION GUIDE FOR FIELD MOISTURE DESCRIPTION										SAMPLE ABBREVIATIONS									
LL LIQUID LIMIT - SATURATED - (SAT.) USUALLY LIQUID; VERY WET, USUALLY FROM BELOW THE GROUND WATER TABLE										S - BULK SS - SPLIT SPOON ST - SHELBY TUBE RS - ROCK RT - RECOMPACTED TRIAXIAL CBR - CALIFORNIA BEARING RATIO									
PL PLASTIC LIMIT - WET - (W) SEMISOLID; REQUIRES DRYING TO ATTAIN OPTIMUM MOISTURE																			
OM OPTIMUM MOISTURE SHRINKAGE LIMIT - MOIST - (M) SOLID; AT OR NEAR OPTIMUM MOISTURE																			
SL - DRY - (D) REQUIRES ADDITIONAL WATER TO ATTAIN OPTIMUM MOISTURE																			
PLASTICITY										EQUIPMENT USED ON SUBJECT PROJECT									
PLASTICITY INDEX (PI) DRY STRENGTH										DRILL UNITS: ADVANCING TOOLS: HAMMER TYPE:									
NON PLASTIC 0-5 VERY LOW										<input type="checkbox"/> CME-45C <input type="checkbox"/> CLAY BITS <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AUTOMATIC <input type="checkbox"/> MANUAL									
SLIGHTLY PLASTIC 6-15 SLIGHT										<input type="checkbox"/> CME-55 <input type="checkbox"/> 6' CONTINUOUS FLIGHT AUGER									
MODERATELY PLASTIC 16-25 MEDIUM										<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CME-550 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 8" HOLLOW AUGERS									
HIGHLY PLASTIC 26 OR MORE HIGH										<input type="checkbox"/> VANE SHEAR TEST <input type="checkbox"/> HARD FACED FINGER BITS									
COLOR										<input type="checkbox"/> PORTABLE HOIST <input type="checkbox"/> TUNG-CARBIDE INSERTS									
DESCRIPTIONS MAY INCLUDE COLOR OR COLOR COMBINATIONS (TAN, RED, YELLOW-BROWN, BLUE-GRAY). MODIFIERS SUCH AS LIGHT, DARK, STREAKED, ETC. ARE USED TO DESCRIBE APPEARANCE.										<input type="checkbox"/> CASING <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> W/ ADVANCER									
										<input type="checkbox"/> TRICONE _____ STEEL TEETH									
										<input type="checkbox"/> TRICONE _____ TUNG-CARB.									
										<input type="checkbox"/> CORE BIT									
										CORE SIZE: <input type="checkbox"/> -B _____ <input type="checkbox"/> -H _____ <input type="checkbox"/> -N _____									
										HAND TOOLS: <input type="checkbox"/> POST HOLE DIGGER <input type="checkbox"/> HAND AUGER <input type="checkbox"/> SOUNDING ROD <input type="checkbox"/> VANE SHEAR TEST									

**NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
DIVISION OF HIGHWAYS
GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT**

SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION

SOIL AND ROCK LEGEND, TERMS, SYMBOLS, AND ABBREVIATIONS (PAGE 2 OF 2)

ROCK DESCRIPTION		TERMS AND DEFINITIONS
<p>HARD ROCK IS NON-COASTAL PLAIN MATERIAL THAT WOULD YIELD SPT REFUSAL IF TESTED, AN INFERRED ROCK LINE INDICATES THE LEVEL AT WHICH NON-COASTAL PLAIN MATERIAL WOULD YIELD SPT REFUSAL. SPT REFUSAL IS PENETRATION BY A SPLIT SPOON SAMPLER EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN 0.1 FOOT PER 60 BLOWS IN NON-COASTAL PLAIN MATERIAL. THE TRANSITION BETWEEN SOIL AND ROCK IS OFTEN REPRESENTED BY A ZONE OF WEATHERED ROCK. ROCK MATERIALS ARE TYPICALLY DIVIDED AS FOLLOWS:</p>		<p>ALLUVIUM (ALLUV.) - SOILS THAT HAVE BEEN TRANSPORTED BY WATER. AQUIFER - A WATER BEARING FORMATION OR STRATA. ARENACEOUS - APPLIED TO ROCKS THAT HAVE BEEN DERIVED FROM SAND OR THAT CONTAIN SAND. ARGILLACEOUS - APPLIED TO ALL ROCKS OR SUBSTANCES COMPOSED OF CLAY MINERALS, OR HAVING A NOTABLE PROPORTION OF CLAY IN THEIR COMPOSITION, SUCH AS SHALE, SLATE, ETC. ARTESIAN - GROUND WATER THAT IS UNDER SUFFICIENT PRESSURE TO RISE ABOVE THE LEVEL AT WHICH IT IS ENCOUNTERED, BUT WHICH DOES NOT NECESSARILY RISE TO OR ABOVE THE GROUND SURFACE. CALCAREOUS (CALC.) - SOILS THAT CONTAIN APPRECIABLE AMOUNTS OF CALCIUM CARBONATE. COLLUVIUM - ROCK FRAGMENTS MIXED WITH SOIL DEPOSITED BY GRAVITY ON SLOPE OR AT BOTTOM OF SLOPE. CORE RECOVERY (REC.) - TOTAL LENGTH OF ALL MATERIAL RECOVERED IN THE CORE BARREL DIVIDED BY TOTAL LENGTH OF CORE RUN AND EXPRESSED AS A PERCENTAGE. DIKE - A TABULAR BODY OF IGNEOUS ROCK THAT CUTS ACROSS THE STRUCTURE OF ADJACENT ROCKS OR CUTS MASSIVE ROCK. DIP - THE ANGLE AT WHICH A STRATUM OR ANY PLANAR FEATURE IS INCLINED FROM THE HORIZONTAL. DIP DIRECTION (DIP AZIMUTH) - THE DIRECTION OR BEARING OF THE HORIZONTAL TRACE OF THE LINE OF DIP, MEASURED CLOCKWISE FROM NORTH. FAULT - A FRACTURE OR FRACTURE ZONE ALONG WHICH THERE HAS BEEN DISPLACEMENT OF THE SIDES RELATIVE TO ONE ANOTHER PARALLEL TO THE FRACTURE. FISSILE - A PROPERTY OF SPLITTING ALONG CLOSELY SPACED PARALLEL PLANES. FLOAT - ROCK FRAGMENTS ON SURFACE NEAR THEIR ORIGINAL POSITION AND DISLODGED FROM PARENT MATERIAL. FLOOD PLAIN (FP) - LAND BORDERING A STREAM, BUILT OF SEDIMENTS DEPOSITED BY THE STREAM. FORMATION (FM) - A MAPPABLE GEOLOGIC UNIT THAT CAN BE RECOGNIZED AND TRACED IN THE FIELD. JOINT - FRACTURE IN ROCK ALONG WHICH NO APPRECIABLE MOVEMENT HAS OCCURRED. LEDGE - A SHELF-LIKE RIDGE OR PROJECTION OF ROCK WHOSE THICKNESS IS SMALL COMPARED TO ITS LATERAL EXTENT. LENS - A BODY OF SOIL OR ROCK THAT THINS OUT IN ONE OR MORE DIRECTIONS. MOTTLED (MOT.) - IRREGULARLY MARKED WITH SPOTS OF DIFFERENT COLORS. MOTTLING IN SOILS USUALLY INDICATES POOR AERATION AND LACK OF GOOD DRAINAGE. PERCHED WATER - WATER MAINTAINED ABOVE THE NORMAL GROUND WATER LEVEL BY THE PRESENCE OF AN INTERVENING IMPERVIOUS STRATUM. RESIDUAL (RES.) SOIL - SOIL FORMED IN PLACE BY THE WEATHERING OF ROCK. ROCK QUALITY DESIGNATION (RQD) - A MEASURE OF ROCK QUALITY DESCRIBED BY TOTAL LENGTH OF ROCK SEGMENTS EQUAL TO OR GREATER THAN 4 INCHES DIVIDED BY THE TOTAL LENGTH OF CORE RUN AND EXPRESSED AS A PERCENTAGE. SAPROLITE (SAP.) - RESIDUAL SOIL THAT RETAINS THE RELIC STRUCTURE OR FABRIC OF THE PARENT ROCK. SILL - AN INTRUSIVE BODY OF IGNEOUS ROCK OF APPROXIMATELY UNIFORM THICKNESS AND RELATIVELY THIN COMPARED WITH ITS LATERAL EXTENT, THAT HAS BEEN EMPLACED PARALLEL TO THE BEDDING OR SCHISTOSITY OF THE INTRUDED ROCKS. SLICKENSIDE - POLISHED AND STRIATED SURFACE THAT RESULTS FROM FRICTION ALONG A FAULT OR SLIP PLANE. STANDARD PENETRATION TEST (PENETRATION RESISTANCE) (SPT) - NUMBER OF BLOWS IN OR BPF) OF A 140 LB. HAMMER FALLING 30 INCHES REQUIRED TO PRODUCE A PENETRATION OF 1 FOOT INTO SOIL WITH A 2 INCH OUTSIDE DIAMETER SPLIT SPOON SAMPLER. SPT REFUSAL IS PENETRATION EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN 0.1 FOOT PER 60 BLOWS. STRATA CORE RECOVERY (SREC.) - TOTAL LENGTH OF STRATA MATERIAL RECOVERED DIVIDED BY TOTAL LENGTH OF STRATUM AND EXPRESSED AS A PERCENTAGE. STRATA ROCK QUALITY DESIGNATION (SRQD) - A MEASURE OF ROCK QUALITY DESCRIBED BY TOTAL LENGTH OF ROCK SEGMENTS WITHIN A STRATUM EQUAL TO OR GREATER THAN 4 INCHES DIVIDED BY THE TOTAL LENGTH OF STRATA AND EXPRESSED AS A PERCENTAGE. TOPSOIL (TS.) - SURFACE SOILS USUALLY CONTAINING ORGANIC MATTER.</p>
WEATHERED ROCK (WR)		NON-COASTAL PLAIN MATERIAL THAT WOULD YIELD SPT N VALUES > 100 BLOWS PER FOOT IF TESTED.
CRYSTALLINE ROCK (CR)		FINE TO COARSE GRAIN IGNEOUS AND METAMORPHIC ROCK THAT WOULD YIELD SPT REFUSAL IF TESTED. ROCK TYPE INCLUDES GRANITE, GNEISS, GABBRO, SCHIST, ETC.
NON-CRYSTALLINE ROCK (NCR)		FINE TO COARSE GRAIN METAMORPHIC AND NON-COASTAL PLAIN SEDIMENTARY ROCK THAT WOULD YIELD SPT REFUSAL IF TESTED. ROCK TYPE INCLUDES PHYLLITE, SLATE, SANDSTONE, ETC.
COASTAL PLAIN SEDIMENTARY ROCK (CP)		COASTAL PLAIN SEDIMENTS CEMENTED INTO ROCK, BUT MAY NOT YIELD SPT REFUSAL. ROCK TYPE INCLUDES LIMESTONE, SANDSTONE, CEMENTED SHELL BEDS, ETC.
WEATHERING		
FRESH		ROCK FRESH, CRYSTALS BRIGHT, FEW JOINTS MAY SHOW SLIGHT STAINING. ROCK RINGS UNDER HAMMER IF CRYSTALLINE.
VERY SLIGHT (V SL.)		ROCK GENERALLY FRESH, JOINTS STAINED, SOME JOINTS MAY SHOW THIN CLAY COATINGS IF OPEN. CRYSTALS ON A BROKEN SPECIMEN FACE SHINE BRIGHTLY. ROCK RINGS UNDER HAMMER BLOWS IF OF A CRYSTALLINE NATURE.
SLIGHT (SL.)		ROCK GENERALLY FRESH, JOINTS STAINED AND DISCOLORATION EXTENDS INTO ROCK UP TO 1 INCH. OPEN JOINTS MAY CONTAIN CLAY. IN GRANITOID ROCKS SOME OCCASIONAL FELDSPAR CRYSTALS ARE DULL AND DISCOLORED. CRYSTALLINE ROCKS RING UNDER HAMMER BLOWS.
MODERATE (MOD.)		SIGNIFICANT PORTIONS OF ROCK SHOW DISCOLORATION AND WEATHERING EFFECTS. IN GRANITOID ROCKS, MOST FELDSPARS ARE DULL AND DISCOLORED, SOME SHOW CLAY. ROCK HAS DULL SOUND UNDER HAMMER BLOWS AND SHOWS SIGNIFICANT LOSS OF STRENGTH AS COMPARED WITH FRESH ROCK.
MODERATELY SEVERE (MOD. SEV.)		ALL ROCK EXCEPT QUARTZ DISCOLORED OR STAINED. IN GRANITOID ROCKS, ALL FELDSPARS DULL AND DISCOLORED AND A MAJORITY SHOW KAOLINIZATION. ROCK SHOWS SEVERE LOSS OF STRENGTH AND CAN BE EXCAVATED WITH A GEOLOGIST'S PICK. ROCK GIVES "CLUNK" SOUND WHEN STRUCK. <i>IF TESTED, WOULD YIELD SPT REFUSAL</i>
SEVERE (SEV.)		ALL ROCK EXCEPT QUARTZ DISCOLORED OR STAINED. ROCK FABRIC CLEAR AND EVIDENT BUT REDUCED IN STRENGTH TO STRONG SOIL. IN GRANITOID ROCKS ALL FELDSPARS ARE KAOLINIZED TO SOME EXTENT. SOME FRAGMENTS OF STRONG ROCK USUALLY REMAIN. <i>IF TESTED, WOULD YIELD SPT N VALUES > 100 BPF</i>
VERY SEVERE (V SEV.)		ALL ROCK EXCEPT QUARTZ DISCOLORED OR STAINED. ROCK FABRIC ELEMENTS ARE DISCERNIBLE BUT MASS IS EFFECTIVELY REDUCED TO SOIL STATUS, WITH ONLY FRAGMENTS OF STRONG ROCK REMAINING. SAPROLITE IS AN EXAMPLE OF ROCK WEATHERED TO A DEGREE THAT ONLY MINOR VESTIGES OF ORIGINAL ROCK FABRIC REMAIN. <i>IF TESTED, WOULD YIELD SPT N VALUES < 100 BPF</i>
COMPLETE		ROCK REDUCED TO SOIL. ROCK FABRIC NOT DISCERNIBLE, OR DISCERNIBLE ONLY IN SMALL AND SCATTERED CONCENTRATIONS. QUARTZ MAY BE PRESENT AS DIKES OR STRINGERS. SAPROLITE IS ALSO AN EXAMPLE.
ROCK HARDNESS		
VERY HARD		CANNOT BE SCRATCHED BY KNIFE OR SHARP PICK. BREAKING OF HAND SPECIMENS REQUIRES SEVERAL HARD BLOWS OF THE GEOLOGIST'S PICK.
HARD		CAN BE SCRATCHED BY KNIFE OR PICK ONLY WITH DIFFICULTY. HARD HAMMER BLOWS REQUIRED TO DETACH HAND SPECIMEN.
MODERATELY HARD		CAN BE SCRATCHED BY KNIFE OR PICK. GOUGES OR GROOVES TO 0.25 INCHES DEEP CAN BE EXCAVATED BY HARD BLOW OF A GEOLOGIST'S PICK. HAND SPECIMENS CAN BE DETACHED BY MODERATE BLOWS.
MEDIUM HARD		CAN BE GROOVED OR GOUGED 0.05 INCHES DEEP BY FIRM PRESSURE OF KNIFE OR PICK POINT. CAN BE EXCAVATED IN SMALL CHIPS TO PIECES 1 INCH MAXIMUM SIZE BY HARD BLOWS OF THE POINT OF A GEOLOGIST'S PICK.
SOFT		CAN BE GROOVED OR GOUGED READILY BY KNIFE OR PICK. CAN BE EXCAVATED IN FRAGMENTS FROM CHIPS TO SEVERAL INCHES IN SIZE BY MODERATE BLOWS OF A PICK POINT. SMALL, THIN PIECES CAN BE BROKEN BY FINGER PRESSURE.
VERY SOFT		CAN BE CARVED WITH KNIFE. CAN BE EXCAVATED READILY WITH POINT OF PICK. PIECES 1 INCH OR MORE IN THICKNESS CAN BE BROKEN BY FINGER PRESSURE. CAN BE SCRATCHED READILY BY FINGERNAIL.
FRACTURE SPACING		BEDDING
TERM	SPACING	TERM THICKNESS
VERY WIDE	MORE THAN 10 FEET	VERY THICKLY BEDDED 4 FEET
WIDE	3 TO 10 FEET	THICKLY BEDDED 1.5 - 4 FEET
MODERATELY CLOSE	1 TO 3 FEET	THINLY BEDDED 0.16 - 1.5 FEET
CLOSE	0.16 TO 1 FOOT	VERY THINLY BEDDED 0.03 - 0.16 FEET
VERY CLOSE	LESS THAN 0.16 FEET	THICKLY LAMINATED 0.008 - 0.03 FEET
		THINLY LAMINATED < 0.008 FEET
INDURATION		
FOR SEDIMENTARY ROCKS, INDURATION IS THE HARDENING OF MATERIAL BY CEMENTING, HEAT, PRESSURE, ETC.		
FRIABLE		RUBBING WITH FINGER FREES NUMEROUS GRAINS; GENTLE BLOW BY HAMMER DISINTEGRATES SAMPLE.
MODERATELY INDURATED		GRAINS CAN BE SEPARATED FROM SAMPLE WITH STEEL PROBE; BREAKS EASILY WHEN HIT WITH HAMMER.
INDURATED		GRAINS ARE DIFFICULT TO SEPARATE WITH STEEL PROBE; DIFFICULT TO BREAK WITH HAMMER.
EXTREMELY INDURATED		SHARP HAMMER BLOWS REQUIRED TO BREAK SAMPLE; SAMPLE BREAKS ACROSS GRAINS.
		BENCH MARK: BM #2; RR SPIKE IN BASE OF 30" OAK; N 573243, E 1655489; -BL - STATION I2+06.00 III' LEFT
		ELEVATION: 423.99 FEET
NOTES:		
F.I.A.D= FILLED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DRILLING		

GEOTECHNICAL BORING REPORT

BORE LOG

WBS N/A		TIP N/A		COUNTY DARE			GEOLOGIST Pastrana, C.R.									
SITE DESCRIPTION Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal								GROUND WTR (ft)								
BORING NO. B-3		STATION N/A		OFFSET N/A		ALIGNMENT N/A		0 HR. N/A								
COLLAR ELEV. 0.0 ft		TOTAL DEPTH 7.5 ft		NORTHING 546,754		EASTING 2,984,606		24 HR. FIAD								
DRILL RIG/HAMMER EFF./DATE BRI0674 CME-45C 89% 05/04/2016				DRILL METHOD Mud Rotary		HAMMER TYPE Automatic										
DRILLER Eister, G.		START DATE 03/14/17		COMP. DATE 03/14/17		SURFACE WATER DEPTH N/A										
ELEV (ft)	DRIVE ELEV (ft)	DEPTH (ft)	BLOW COUNT			BLOWS PER FOOT					SAMP. NO.	MOI	LOG	SOIL AND ROCK DESCRIPTION		
			0.5ft	0.5ft	0.5ft	0	25	50	75	100				ELEV. (ft)	DEPTH (ft)	
0														0.0	GROUND SURFACE	0.0
-5	-1.0	1.0	3	5	4						M		0.0	ARTIFICIAL FILL Brown, Loose, Fine SAND (A-3, SP) Trace Organics	4.0	
	-3.5	3.5	2	2	3						-4.0		UNDIVIDED COASTAL PLAIN Tan Brown to Gray to Brown, Loose to Medium Dense, Coarse to Fine SAND (A-3, SP)	7.5		
	-6.0	6.0	5	5	5						-7.5		Boring Terminated at Elevation -7.5 ft In Undivided Coastal Plain: SAND (A-3, SP)			
										SS-3	23%				<p>Note: Boring offset 5' from proposed location in proposed parking area, a preexisting leech field is approx. 3.0' to 4.0' below grade. According to USCG, the center pipe in the field, running parallel to the docks, has gravel packed around it that could extend 1.5' to 3.0' on each side.</p> <p>Note: Boring elevations and locations were not surveyed. A value of 0' for elevations was used for all borings. The Northings and Eastings are approximate.</p>	

NCDOT BORE SINGLE DESIGN DEVELOPMENT FOR HATTERAS ISLAND PASSENGER TERMINAL.GPJ NC_DOT.GDT 4/13/17

GEOTECHNICAL BORING REPORT BORE LOG

WBS N/A		TIP N/A		COUNTY DARE			GEOLOGIST Pastrana, C.R.									
SITE DESCRIPTION Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal								GROUND WTR (ft)								
BORING NO. B-4		STATION N/A		OFFSET N/A		ALIGNMENT N/A		0 HR. 2.6								
COLLAR ELEV. 0.0 ft		TOTAL DEPTH 5.4 ft		NORTHING 546,654		EASTING 2,984,196		24 HR. FIAD								
DRILL RIG/HAMMER EFF./DATE BRI0674 CME-45C 89% 05/04/2016				DRILL METHOD Hand Auger			HAMMER TYPE N/A									
DRILLER N/A		START DATE 03/14/17		COMP. DATE 03/14/17		SURFACE WATER DEPTH N/A										
ELEV (ft)	DRIVE ELEV (ft)	DEPTH (ft)	BLOW COUNT			BLOWS PER FOOT					SAMP. NO.	LOG MOI	LOG G	SOIL AND ROCK DESCRIPTION		
			0.5ft	0.5ft	0.5ft	0	25	50	75	100				ELEV. (ft)	DEPTH (ft)	
0														0.0	GROUND SURFACE 0.0	
	-0.5	0.5	N/A	2	3	•	•	•	•	•					UNDIVIDED COASTAL PLAIN	
	-1.0	1.0	N/A	3	4	•	•	•	•	•	S-1	▽		-2.8	0.3' of Sandy Topsoil over Moist to Saturated, Tan Brown, Loose to Medium Dense, Coarse to Fine SAND (A-3, SP), Trace Organics (Roots) 2.8	
	-2.0	2.0	N/A	3	3	•	•	•	•	•				-3.9	3.9	
	-3.0	3.0	N/A	2	3	•	•	•	•	•						
	-4.0	4.0	N/A	2	2	•	•	•	•	•						
	-5.0	5.0	N/A	4	4	•	•	•	•	•				-5.4	5.4	
			N/A												Gray, Medium Dense, Silty Coarse to Fine SAND (A-2-4, SM)	
															Black, Loose to Medium Dense, Clayey Silty Fine Sand (A-2-5, SC - SM), Highly Organic	
															Boring Terminated at Elevation -5.4 ft In Undivided Coastal Plain: Silty SAND (A-2-5, SC-SM)	

Note: SPT N values represent the equivalent SPT value per foot for DCP tests done over 1.75 inch increments.

Note: After hand augering past the 4.0' DCP test, continuous cave-in occurred to approx. 3.5'. The DCP values for the 5.0' sample may not reflect the actual soil strength.

Note: Boring elevations and locations were not surveyed. A value of 0' for elevations was used for all borings. The Northings and Eastings are approximate.

NCDOT BORE SINGLE DESIGN DEVELOPMENT FOR HATTERAS ISLAND PASSENGER TERMINAL.GPJ NC_DOT.GDT 4/13/17

GEOTECHNICAL BORING REPORT

BORE LOG

WBS N/A		TIP N/A		COUNTY HYDE		GEOLOGIST Pastrana, C.R.											
SITE DESCRIPTION Design Development for NCDOT Ocracoke Island Passenger Terminal							GROUND WTR (ft)										
BORING NO. B-6		STATION N/A		OFFSET N/A		ALIGNMENT N/A	0 HR. 2.1										
COLLAR ELEV. 0.0 ft		TOTAL DEPTH 25.0 ft		NORTHING 510,894		EASTING 2,901,053	24 HR. FIAD										
DRILL RIG/HAMMER EFF./DATE BRI0674 CME-45C 89% 05/04/2016				DRILL METHOD Mud Rotary		HAMMER TYPE Automatic											
DRILLER Eister, G.		START DATE 03/16/17		COMP. DATE 03/16/17		SURFACE WATER DEPTH N/A											
ELEV (ft)	DRIVE ELEV (ft)	DEPTH (ft)	BLOW COUNT			BLOWS PER FOOT					SAMP. NO.	MOI	LOG	SOIL AND ROCK DESCRIPTION			
			0.5ft	0.5ft	0.5ft	0	25	50	75	100				ELEV. (ft)	DEPTH (ft)		
0															0.0	GROUND SURFACE	0.0
-5	-1.0	1.0	2	6	4						S-2	▽					
		-3.5	3.5	1	2						1						
-10	-6.0	6.0	3	5	6								Sat.				
		-8.5	8.5	6	10	9								Sat.			
-15		-13.5	13.5	10	11	17								Sat.			
		-18.5	18.5	12	15	17								Sat.			
-20		-23.5	23.5	5	5	4								Sat.			
														Sat.			
-25														Sat.			25.0
															Boring Terminated at Elevation -25.0 ft In Undivided Coastal Plain: Silty SAND (A-2-4, SP-SM)		
															Note: Boring elevations and locations were not surveyed. A value of 0' for elevations was used for all borings. The Northings and Eastings are approximate.		

NCDOT BORE SINGLE DESIGN DEVELOPMENT FOR OCRACOKE ISLAND PASSENGER TERMINAL.GPJ NC_DOT.GDT 4/13/17



**NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)**

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CD	Dare	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC: Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal						Depth to WATER	3.1	FIAD
BORING NUMBER	STA	OFFSET	N/A FT	N/A	ALIGNMENT	Depth to BTM	3.7	FIAD
ELEVATION	FT	TOTAL DEPTH	40.0'	FT	NORTH	DATE	3-14-17	3-14-2017
DRILL MACHINE	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	DRILL METHOD	HSA	MVD ROTARY		HAMMER TYPE	Automatic	
START DATE	COMP DATE	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	N/A	FT	DEPTH TO ROCK	DRILLER	G. LEISTER	

STRATUM FROM TO	SAMPLE NUMBER	FROM TO	DRIVE / SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION
			0.5 ft	0.5 ft	0.5 ft			
0.0	SS-1	1.0, 2.5	4	10	11	M	CP	Tan Brown, med dense, csc to fine sand. (A-3, SP)
	SS-2	3.5, 5.0	5	9	7	SAT	CP	SAME, TAN TO GRAY
	SS-3	6.0, 7.5	6	6	6	SAT	CP	GRAY, med dense, csc to F. SAND (A-3, SP)
	SS-4	8.5, 10.0	6	11	11	SAT	CP	GRAY, med dense, FINE SAND (A-3, SP) TRACE SALT
12.5	SS-5	13.5, 15.0	11	17	20	SAT	CP	GRAY, DENSE SAND FINE SAND (A-2-4, SM) CSC - F SAND (A-3) CHANGE @ 12.5'
	SS-6	18.5, 20.0	16	14	18	SAT	CP	GRAY SAME CHANGE @ 21.5'
	SS-7	23.5, 25.0	10	16	19	SAT	CP	GRAY, DENSE, SILTY, F. TO CSH SAND (A-2-4, SM)
	SS-8	28.5, 30.0	8	8	8	SAT	CP	DARK GRAY, med dense, SILTY F. SAND (A-2-4, SM) SLIGHTLY MORE SALT THAN PREVIOUS SAMPLES
	SS-9	32.5, 35.0	13	27	29	SAT	CP	DARK GRAY, med dense, SILTY, F. TO CSH SAND (A-2-4, SM) WITH SHELL FRAGMENTS
	SS-10	38.5, 40.0	30	48	51	SAT	CP	SAME, NO SHELL FRAGMENTS
								* 0.2' CONTACT OVER 23' APC STONE
								* BORING LOCATIONS + ELEVATIONS WERE NOT SURVEYED N+E ARE APPROXIMATE

REDLINED BY (sign): DATE Boring terminated at 40.0 ft (IN) ON SILTY SAND

2 15/16 BIT / 0.2' CONTACT
0.3' GRAVEL BOTT



**NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)**

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CO	Dare	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC	Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal					Depth to WATER	N/A	FJAD
BORING NUMBER	STA	OFFSET	N/A FT N/A		ALIGNMENT	Depth to BTTM	N/A	FJAD
ELEVATION	FT	TOTAL DEPTH	FT	NORTH	EAST	DATE	3-14-17	3-14-17
DRILL MACHINE	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	DRILL METHOD	HSA MUD ROTARY		HAMMER TYPE		Automatic	
START DATE	COMP DATE	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	FT	DEPTH TO ROCK	FT	DRILLER	G. GISTER	

STRATUM		SAMPLE		DRIVE / SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION	
FROM	TO	NUMBER	FROM	TO	FROM	TO	0.5 ft	0.5 ft	0.5 ft	SOIL or ROCK NAME (w/ color, density/consistency, texture, plasticity, organics, other)
0.0		SS-11			1.0	2.5	5	9	11	M CP TAN BROWN, MED. DENSE, CLAY TO F SAND (A-3, SP)
		SS-12			3.5	5.0	5	8	9	SAT CP GRAY, MED. DENSE, CLAY TO F SAND (A-3, SP) TRACE SILT * PETROLEUM OIL
		SS-13			6.0	7.5	3	3	4	SAT CP SAME, LOOSE * No PETROLEUM OIL
		SS-14			8.5	10.0	3	7	6	SAT CP GRAY, MED. DENSE, F. SAND (A-3, SP)
12.5	12.5	SS-15			13.5	15.0	11	13	16	SAT CP GRAY, MED. DENSE SILT F. SAND (A-2-4, SM) (A-3, SP) <i>CHANGE at 13.5</i>
		SS-16			18.5	20.0	13	24	26	SAT CP SAME, DENSE CHANGE 22.0'
		SS-17			23.5	25.0	8	9	17	SAT CP GRAY, MED. DENSE, SILTY COARSE TO F. SAND (A-2-4, SM)
										* 0.2' ASPHALT OVER 0.3' ABC STONE
										* BORING ELEVATIONS + LOCATION WERE NOT SURVEYED N+E ARE APPROXIMATE

REDLINED BY (sign): _____ DATE: _____ Boring terminated at 25.0 ft (N) ON CP! SILTY SAND



NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CO	Dare	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC	Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal					Depth to WATER	N/A	FSDM
BORING NUMBER	B-3	STA	N/A	OFFSET	N/A FT N/A	ALIGNMENT	N/A	
ELEVATION		TOTAL DEPTH		NORTH	546754	EAST	2984606	
DRILL MACHINE	CME 45	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	190674	DRILL METHOD	HSA mud rotary	HAMMER TYPE	Automatic	
START DATE	3/14/2017	COMP DATE	3/14/2017	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	N/A FT	DEPTH TO ROCK	N/A FT	DRILLER
						G. EISTER		

STRATUM		SAMPLE		DRIVE / SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION			
FROM	TO	NUMBER	FROM	TO	FROM	TO	0.5 ft	0.5 ft	0.5 ft		SOIL or ROCK NAME (w/ color, density/consistency, texture, plasticity, organics, other)	
0.0		SS-18	1.0	3.0	1.0	2.5	3	5	4	M	AF	BROWN, LOOSE, F. SAND (A-3, SP) TRACE ORGANICS
	4.0											Average at 4.0' Corro
4.0		SS-19			3.5	5.0	2	2	3	M	CP	TAN BROWN, LOOSE, F. SAND (A-3, SP)
	5.5											Indicate silt
5.5		SS-20			6.0	7.5	5	5	5	SAT	CP	GRAY TO BROWN, LOOSE TO MED DENSE, 6.5 TO 7.5' SAND FINE F SAND (A-3, SM) (A-3, SP) TRACE SILT C.SG TO F SAND (A-3, SP)
										*		BORING ELEVATIONS AND LOCATION WERE NOT SURVEYED N/E ARE APPROXIMATE
										*		BORING OFFSET 5' DUE HITTING OLD LEACH FIELD @ 3.0' USCG INFORMED US THAT IT IS AN OLD LEACH FIELD \approx 3-4' BELOW GRADE ALSO, MENTIONED ONE SIDE OF LEACH FIELD IN MODEL HAS GRAVEL PACKED AROUND IT

REDLINED BY (sign): _____ DATE _____ Boring terminated at 7.5 ft (N/T/N) CP: SILTY SAND



NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CO	Hyde	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC	Design Development for NCDOT Ocracoke Island Passenger Terminal					Depth to WATER	1.8	FIAD
BORING NUMBER	STA	OFFSET	N/A FT	N/A	ALIGNMENT	Depth to BTM	2.2	FIAD
ELEVATION	FT	TOTAL DEPTH	40.0	FT	NORTH	DATE	3-16-17	3-16-17
DRILL MACHINE	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	DRILL METHOD	HSA MUD ROTARY		HAMMER TYPE	Automatic		
START DATE	3-16-17	COMP DATE	3-16-17	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	N/A	DEPTH TO ROCK	N/A	DRILLER
						G. EISLER		

STRATUM		SAMPLE		DRIVE / SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION			
FROM	TO	NUMBER	FROM	TO	FROM	TO	0.5 ft	0.5 ft	0.5 ft			
0.0		SS-21			1.0	2.5	4	8	9	M	CP/FILL	BROWN, MED. DENSE, CSU TO F SAND (A-3, SP) LITTLE GRAVEL/SHELL FRAGS AND TRACE SILT AND TRACE ORGANIC
	3.2											NOTE POSSIBLE FILL? Check #32
3.2		SS-22			3.5	5.0	2	2	3	W	CP	BROWNISH GRAY, LOOSE, CSU, F. SAND (A-2-4, SE) TRACE ORGANIC ODOR, TRACE SILT CLAY
	5.4											Check at 5.4
5.4		SS-23			6.0	7.5	2	6	6	SAT	CP	BROWNISH GRAY, MED. DENSE, SILTY FINE SAND (A-2-4, SM) TRACE SHELL FRAGMENTS
	12.5				8.5	10.0	2	7	10	SAT	CP	SAME,
12.5		SS-25			13.5	15.0	8	11	11	SAT	CP	GRAY, MEDIUM DENSE, SILTY F. SAND (A-2-5, SM) * SIGNIFICANTLY MORE SILT THAN PREVIOUS SAMPLES
	22.5				18.5	20.0	9	11	13	SAT	CP	SAME
22.5		SS-27			23.5	25.0	4	5	4	SAT	CP	GRAY, LOOSE, SILTY F. SAND (A-2-5, SM) TRACE CLAY?
	27.5				28.5	30.0	9	9	9	SAT	CP	GRAY, MED. DENSE SILTY CSU TO FINE SAND (A-2-4, SM) WITH SHELL FRAGMENTS (SIZE OF COB SAND)
		SS-29			33.5	35.0	8	12	16	SAT	CP	SAME,
		SS-30			38.5	40.0	19	26	35	SAT	CP	GRAY, V. DENSE, SILTY, F TO CSU SAND (A-2-4, SM)
												* FROM SE CORNER OF BUILDING 118 TOWARDS DOCK, 90' RIGHT FACING BUILDING
												* BORING ELEVATIONS + LOCATION WERE NOT SURVEYED N + E ARE APPROXIMATE

REDLINED BY (sign): _____ DATE _____ Boring terminated at 40.0 ft (IN) ON SILTY SAND (A-2-4)

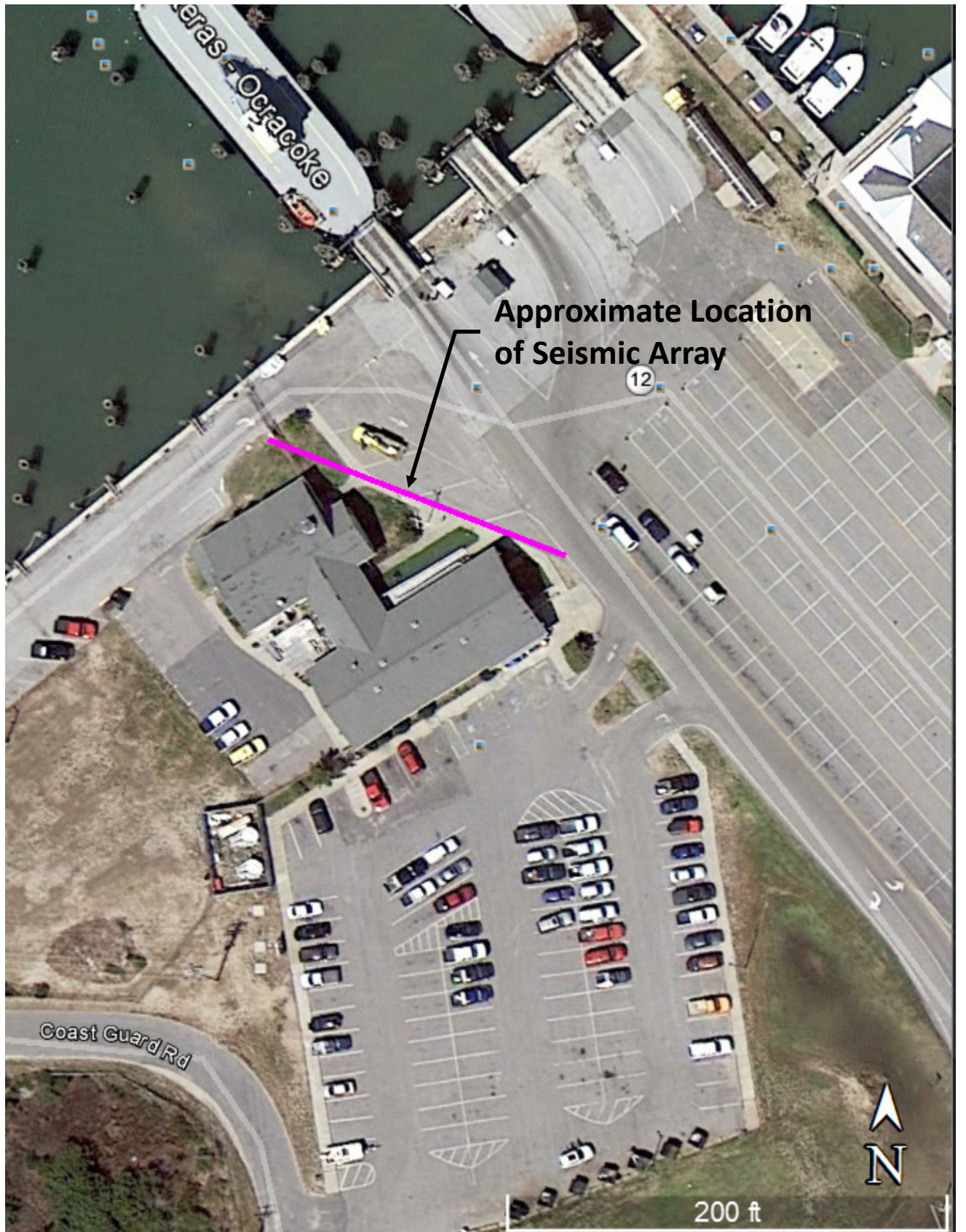


**NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)**

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CO	Hyde	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC	Design Development for NCDOT Ocracoke Island Passenger Terminal					Depth to WATER	2.0	FIAD
BORING NUMBER	STA	OFFSET	N/A FT	N/A	ALIGNMENT	Depth to BTM	8.3	FIAD
ELEVATION	FT	TOTAL DEPTH	25.0	FT	NORTH	DATE	3-16-17	3-16-17
DRILL MACHINE	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	DRILL METHOD	HSA MD ROTARY		HAMMER TYPE	Automatic		
START DATE	COMP DATE	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	N/A	FT	DEPTH TO ROCK	N/A	FT	DRILLER
CME 45 TRAILER		190674		3-16-17		A. GISTER		

STRATUM		SAMPLE		DRIVE / SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION			
FROM	TO	NUMBER	FROM	TO	FROM	TO	0.5 ft	0.5 ft	0.5 ft			SOIL or ROCK NAME (w/ color, density/consistency, texture, plasticity, organics, other)
0.0		SS-31			1.0	2.5	2	6	4	m	CP?	BROWNISH GRAY, LOOSE TO MED. DENSE, SILTY FINE SAND (A-2-4, SP-SM) TRACE CLAY; SS-25 POSSIBLE FILL? Change at 2.6'
		S-2	0	3								* Bulk Sample
	2.6											
2.6		SS-32			3.5	5.0	1	2	1	SAT	CP	BROWNISH GRAY, V. LOOSE (A-3, SP) CLAYEY FINE SAND (A-2-4, SC) TRACE SILT, TRACE CLAY Change at 5.5'
	5.5											
5.5		SS-33			6.0	7.5	3	5	6	SAT	CP	BROWNISH GRAY, MED. DENSE, SILTY FINE TO COARSE SAND (A-2-4, SM) W/ SHELL FRAGMENTS
		SS-34			8.5	10.0	6	10	9	SAT	CP	SAME
		SS-35			13.5	15.0	10	11	17	SAT	CP	GRAY, MED DENSE, SILTY FINE SAND (A-2-4, SM)
		SS-36			18.5	20.0	12	15	17	SAT	CP	SAME, DENSE
		SS-37			23.5	25.0	5	5	4	SAT	CP	GRAY, LOOSE, SILTY F. SAND (A-2-4, SM)
												* S-2 - Bulk Sample TAKEN FROM POINTS BETWEEN B-5 + B-6
												* BORING ELEVATIONS + LOCATION WERE NOT SURVEYED N+E ARE APPROXIMATE

REDLINED BY (sign): _____ DATE _____ Boring terminated at 25.0 ft (IN) ON SILTY SAND (A-2-4)



PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/7/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 3
LOCATION OF SEISMIC ARRAY
HATTERAS FERRY LANDING SITE
HATTERAS, NORTH CAROLINA



PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com



2.a. Photo looking southeast showing seismograph (yellow box) and geophone array laid out across site .

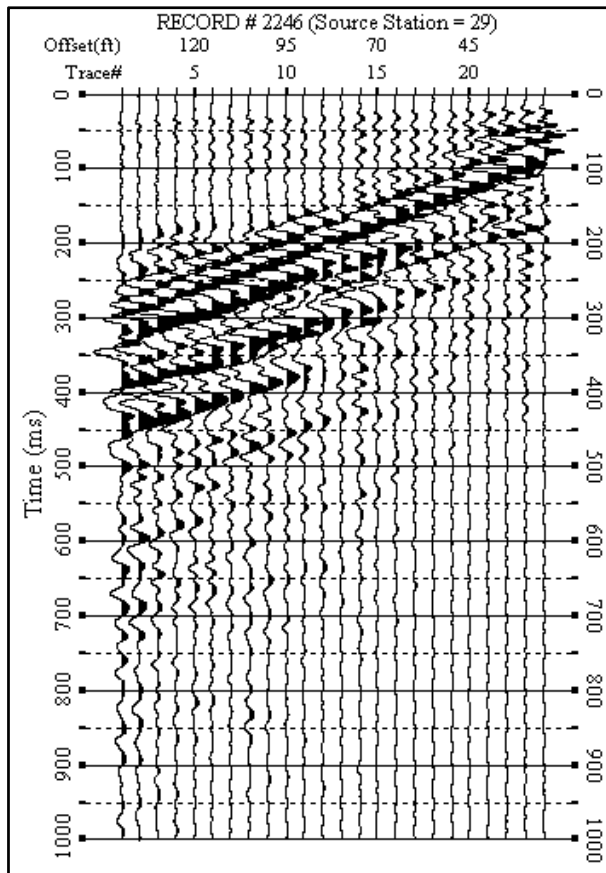


2.b. Photo showing 20-pound sledgehammer used as energy source.

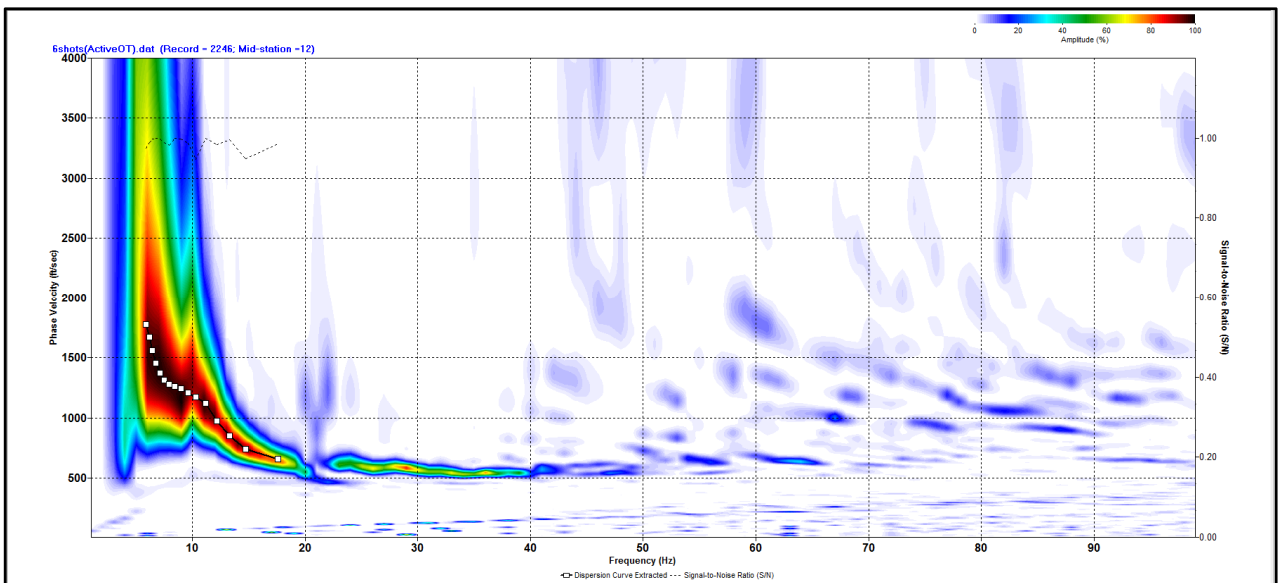
PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	NTS
DATE	3/7/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 4
PHOTOGRAPHS OF DATA ACQUISITION
HATTERAS FERRY LANDING SITE
HATTERAS, NORTH CAROLINA

	PO Box 7030 Charlotte, NC 28241 1.800.960.7317
	www.espassociates.com



3.a. Time-series seismic data (selected record)



3.b. Data converted to frequency-phase velocity domain showing selected dispersion curve used for inversion

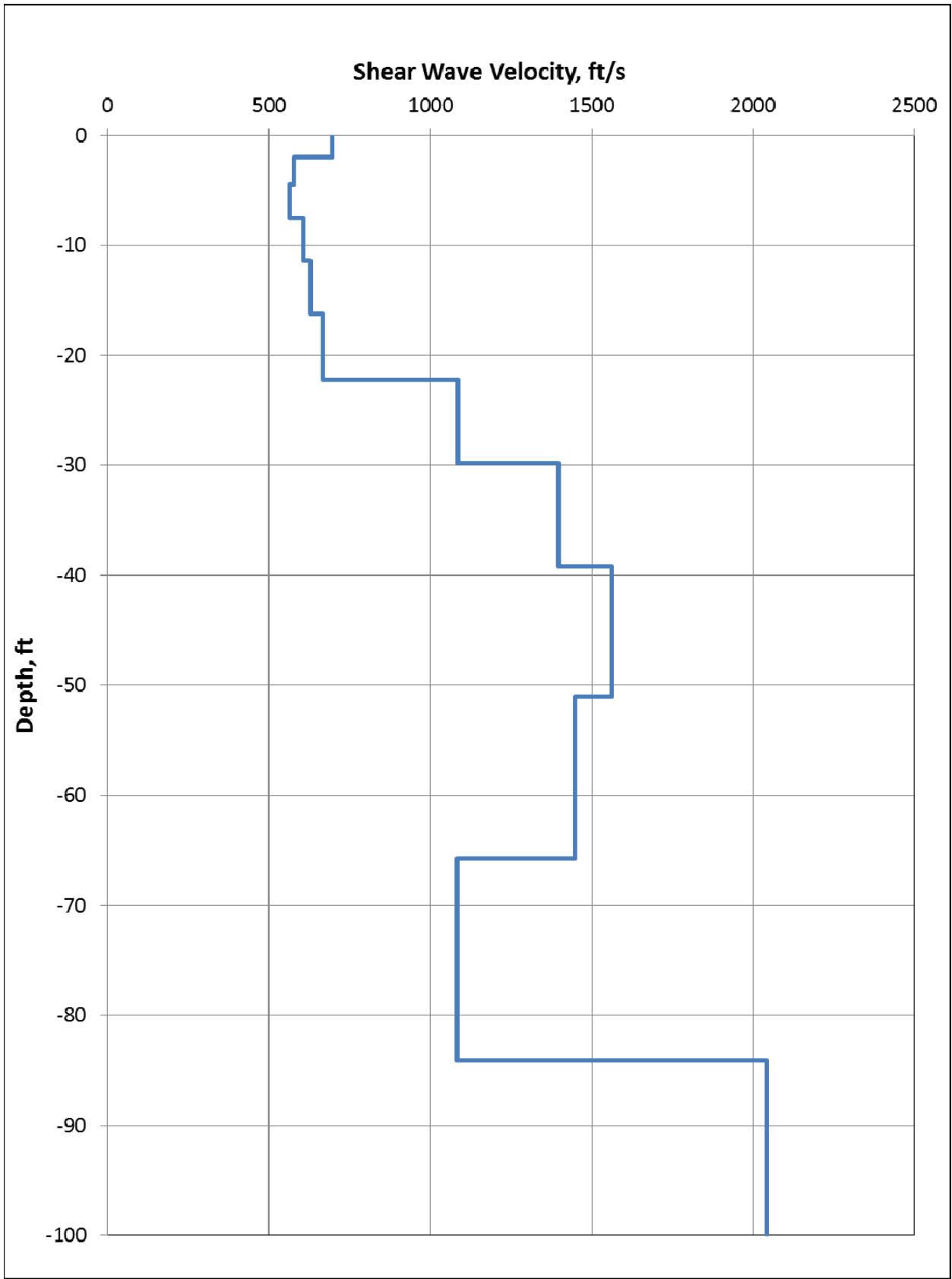
PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/7/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 5
SURFACE WAVE SEISMIC PROCESSING

HATTERAS FERRY LANDING SITE
HATTERAS, NORTH CAROLINA

PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317

www.espassociates.com



PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/7/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 6
SHEAR WAVE VELOCITY MODEL
HATTERAS FERRY LANDING SITE
HATTERAS, NORTH CAROLINA



ESP Associates, P.A.
 PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com



PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/8/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 7
LOCATION OF SEISMIC ARRAY
OCRACOKE FERRY LANDING SITE
OCRACOKE, NORTH CAROLINA



PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com



2.a. Photo looking south showing seismograph (yellow box) and geophone array laid out across site .



2.b. Photo showing 20-pound sledgehammer and metal plate used as energy source.

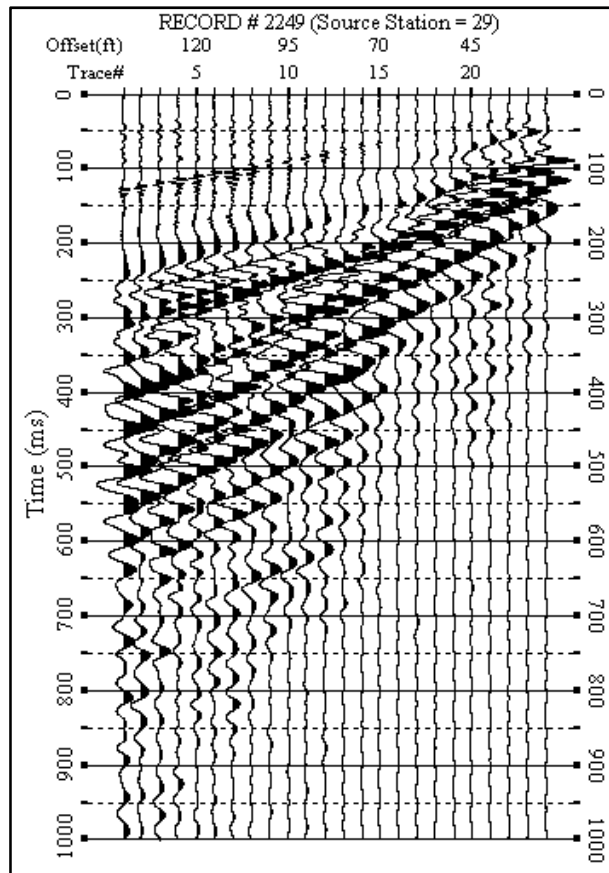
PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	NTS
DATE	3/8/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 8
PHOTOGRAPHS OF DATA ACQUISITION

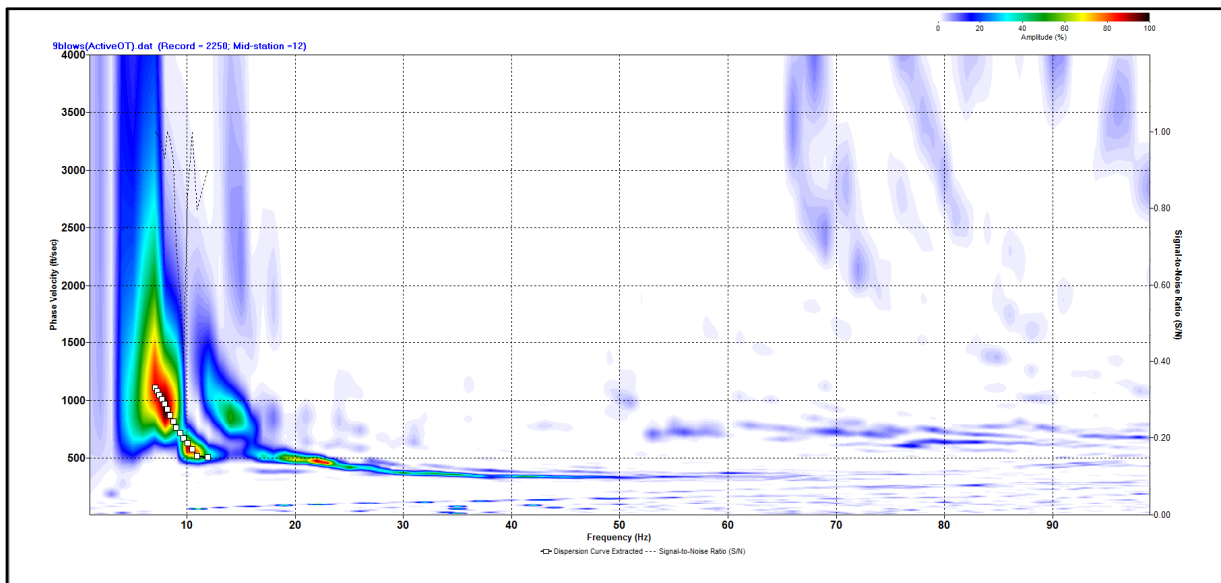
OCRACOKE FERRY LANDING SITE
OCRACOKE, NORTH CAROLINA



PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com



3.a. Time-series seismic data (selected record)



3.b. Data converted to frequency-phase velocity domain showing selected dispersion curve used for inversion

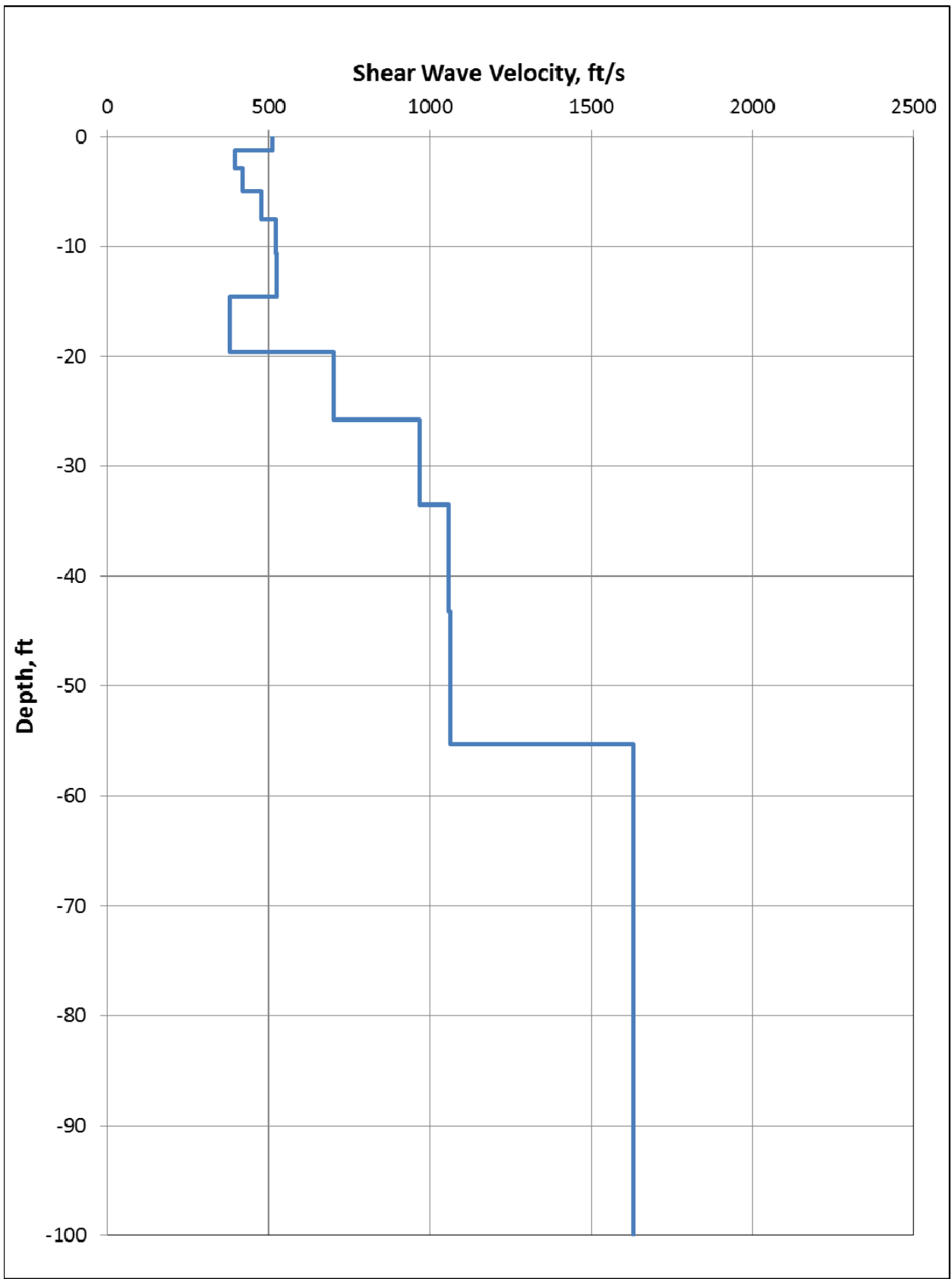
PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/8/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 9
SURFACE WAVE SEISMIC PROCESSING

OCRACOKE FERRY LANDING SITE
OCRACOKE, NORTH CAROLINA

PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317

www.espassociates.com

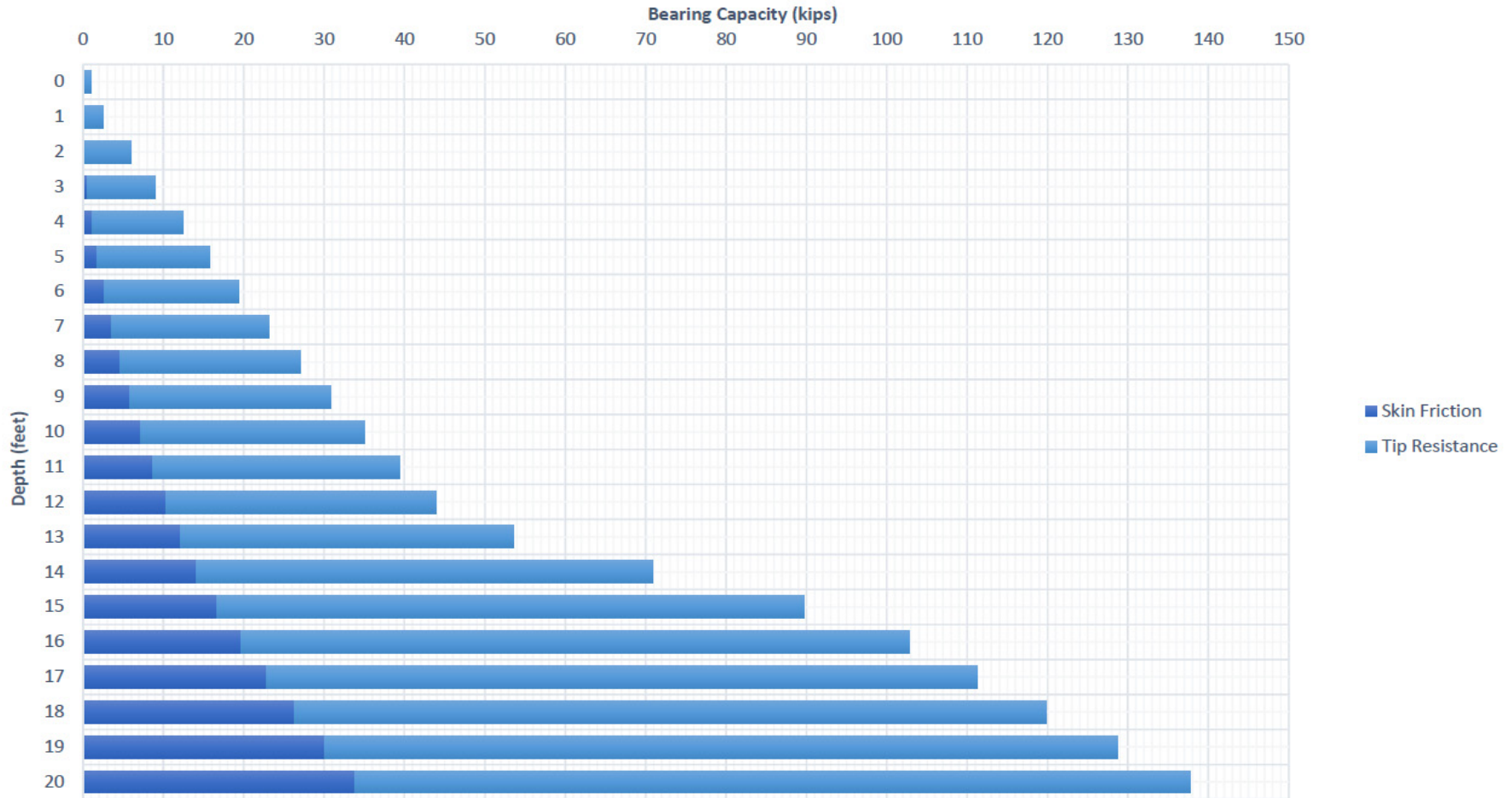


PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/8/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 10
SHEAR WAVE VELOCITY MODEL
OCRACOKE FERRY LANDING SITE
OCRACOKE, NORTH CAROLINA



PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com
 ESP Associates, P.A.

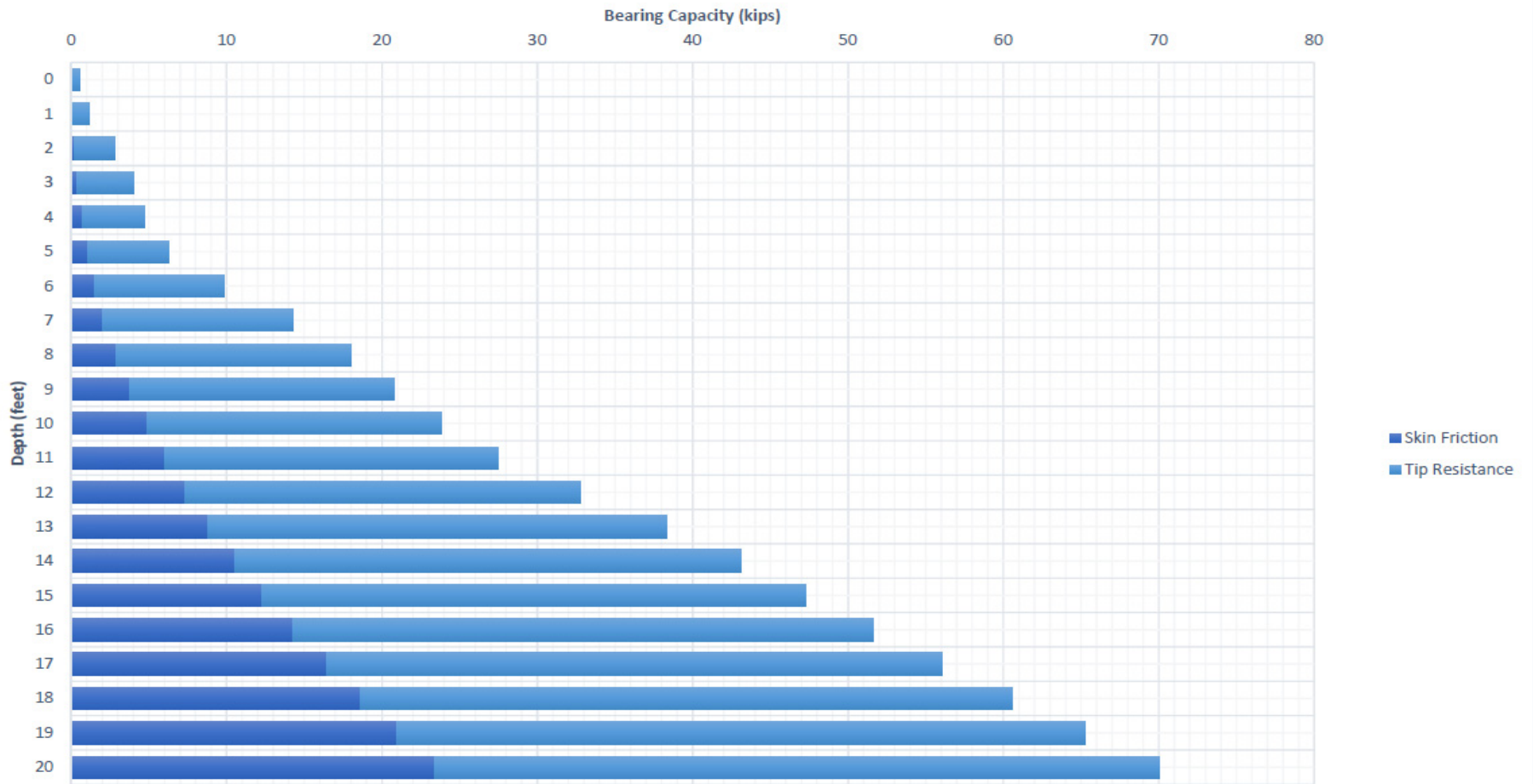


Hatteras Ultimate Soil Bearing Capacities

PROJECT NO: FN65.300	SHEET TITLE:
	SOIL BEARING CAPACITY HATTERAS SITE
DRAWN BY: BRL	
CHECKED BY: RWE	PROJECT:
DATE: 4/14/2017	NCDOT PASSENGER FERRY TERMINALS AND PARKING LOTS
FIGURE 11	FORT MILL, SOUTH CAROLINA



ESP Associates, P.A.
P.O. Box 7030
Charlotte, NC 28241
3475 Lakemont Blvd.
Fort Mill, SC 29708
704-583-4949 (NC)
803-802-2440 (SC)
www.espassociates.com



Ocracoke Ultimate Soil Bearing Capacities

PROJECT NO: FN65.300	SHEET TITLE:
	SOIL BEARING CAPACITY OCRACOKE SITE
DRAWN BY: BRL	
CHECKED BY: RWE	PROJECT:
DATE: 4/14/2017	NCDOT PASSENGER FERRY TERMINALS AND PARKING LOTS
FIGURE 12	FORT MILL, SOUTH CAROLINA



ESP Associates, P.A.
 P.O. Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 3475 Lakemont Blvd.
 Fort Mill, SC 29708
 704-583-4949 (NC)
 803-802-2440 (SC)
 www.espassociates.com

NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal
 Soil Strength Parameters based on Boring No. B-1

Layer	Drive Depth	z	γ_t	z_w	σ_o	u	σ'_o	N	N_{60}	C_N	$N_{I_{60}}$	$N_{I_{60av}}$	s_u	ϕ'
#	ft	ft	pcf	ft	ksf	ksf	ksf	bpf	bpf	dim	bpf	bpf	ksf	deg
1	0.0	0.0	125	0.0	0.00	0.00	0.00	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	-1.0	1.0	125	1.0	0.13	0.06	0.06	21	31.2	2.00	62	46	-	37
	-3.5	3.5	125	3.5	0.44	0.22	0.22	18	26.7	1.74	47		-	
	-6.0	6.0	125	6.0	0.75	0.38	0.38	12	17.8	1.56	28		-	
	-8.5	8.5	125	8.5	1.06	0.53	0.53	22	32.6	1.45	47		-	
2	-13.5	13.5	130	13.5	1.69	0.84	0.84	37	54.9	1.29	71	63	-	40
	-18.5	18.5	130	18.5	2.34	1.16	1.18	35	51.9	1.18	61		-	
	-23.5	23.5	130	23.5	2.99	1.47	1.52	35	51.9	1.09	57		-	
3	-28.5	28.5	125	28.5	3.64	1.78	1.86	16	23.7	1.03	24	24	-	32
4	-33.5	33.5	135	33.5	4.26	2.09	2.17	84	124.6	0.97	121	129	-	40
	-38.5	38.5	135	38.5	4.94	2.41	2.53	99	146.9	0.92	136		-	

Notes:

- z, z_w = depth of the SPT test location below ground surface and groundwater level, respectively
- γ_t = total unit weight of soil
- u = pore water pressure at SPT test, $u = z_w (62.5/1000)$; and $u = 0$ when z_w is negative
- σ_o, σ'_o = total and effective stress at SPT test location, respectively; $\sigma'_o = \sigma_o - u$
- N = uncorrected SPT blow count as measured in the field
- N_{60} = SPT blow count corrected for hammer efficiency, $N_{60} = (ER/60\%) N$ and $ER = \text{hammer efficiency} = 89\%$
- $N_{I_{60}}$ = $C_N N_{60}$, where $C_N = [0.77 \log_{10} (40/\sigma'_o)]$ and $C_N \leq 2.0$
- $N_{I_{60av}}$ = average of $N_{I_{60}}$ values for a layer
- s_u = undrained shear strength of soil, based on GDM, Equation 7-30
- ϕ' = average drained friction angle of soil

NCDOT Ocracoke Island Passenger Terminal
 Soil Strength Parameters based on Boring No. B-5

Layer	Drive Depth	z	γ_t	z_w	σ_o	u	σ'_o	N	N_{60}	C_N	$N_{I_{60}}$	$N_{I_{60av}}$	s_u	ϕ'
#	ft	ft	pcf	ft	ksf	ksf	ksf	bpf	bpf	dim	bpf	bpf	ksf	deg
1	0.0	0.0	125	0.0	0.00	0.00	0.00	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	-1.0	1.0	110	1.0	0.13	0.06	0.06	17	25.2	2.00	50	50	-	33
2	-3.5	3.5	120	3.5	0.40	0.22	0.18	5	7.4	1.80	13	13	-	30
3	-6.0	6.0	125	6.0	0.70	0.38	0.33	12	17.8	1.61	29	33	-	35
	-8.5	8.5	125	8.5	1.01	0.53	0.48	17	25.2	1.48	37		-	
4	-13.5	13.5	125	13.5	1.64	0.84	0.79	22	32.6	1.31	43	43	-	36
	-18.5	18.5	125	18.5	2.26	1.16	1.11	24	35.6	1.20	43		-	
5	-23.5	23.5	115	23.5	2.89	1.47	1.42	9	13.4	1.12	15	15	-	31
6	-28.5	28.5	125	28.5	3.46	1.78	1.68	18	26.7	1.06	28	28	-	33
7	-33.5	33.5	125	33.5	4.09	2.09	1.99	28	41.5	1.00	42	42	-	36
8	-38.5	38.5	130	38.5	4.71	2.41	2.31	61	90.5	0.95	86	86	-	40

Notes:

- z, z_w = depth of the SPT test location below ground surface and groundwater level, respectively
- γ_t = total unit weight of soil
- u = pore water pressure at SPT test, $u = z_w (62.5/1000)$; and $u = 0$ when z_w is negative
- σ_o, σ'_o = total and effective stress at SPT test location, respectively; $\sigma'_o = \sigma_o - u$
- N = uncorrected SPT blow count as measured in the field
- N_{60} = SPT blow count corrected for hammer efficiency, $N_{60} = (ER/60\%) N$ and $ER = \text{hammer efficiency} = 89\%$
- $N_{I_{60}}$ = $C_N N_{60}$, where $C_N = [0.77 \log_{10} (40/\sigma'_o)]$ and $C_N \leq 2.0$
- $N_{I_{60av}}$ = average of $N_{I_{60}}$ values for a layer
- s_u = undrained shear strength of soil, based on GDM, Equation 7-30
- ϕ' = average drained friction angle of soil

SOILS LABORATORY TESTS RESULTS

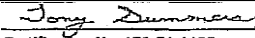
WBS NO.: -

TIP NO.: -

COUNTY: Dare / Hyde

SITE DESCRIPTION: Design Development for NCDOT Ocracoke Island and Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal

SAMPLE NO.	Boring	DEPTH INTERVAL (ft.)	AASHTO CLASS	N	L.L	P.I.	% BY WEIGHT				% PASSING SIEVES			% MOISTURE	% ORGANIC
							CSE. SAND	F. SAND	SILT	CLAY	10	40	200		
SS-1	B-1	18.5-20.0	A-3 (1)	35	NP	NP	50	46	3	1	100	93	4	-	-
SS-2	B-1	28.5-30.0	A-2-4 (1)	16	NP	NP	18	60	19	3	98	89	22	-	-
SS-3	B-3	6.0-7.5	A-3 (1)	10	NP	NP	55	43	1	1	100	79	2	23	0.65
SS-4	B-6	3.5-5.0	A-3 (1)	3	-	-	27	64	5	4	100	91	9	-	-
S-1	B-4	0.0-3.9	A-3 (1)	N/A	-	-	53	45	1	1	98	86	2	-	-
S-2	B-5 & B-6	0.0-3.0	A-3 (1)	N/A	-	-	55	40	2	3	92	74	5	-	-


 Certification No. 121-01-1108

Job No. FN65.300
 Project Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Buxton, North Carolina

Sample I.D. S-1
 Material Source Hatteras Ferry Terminal

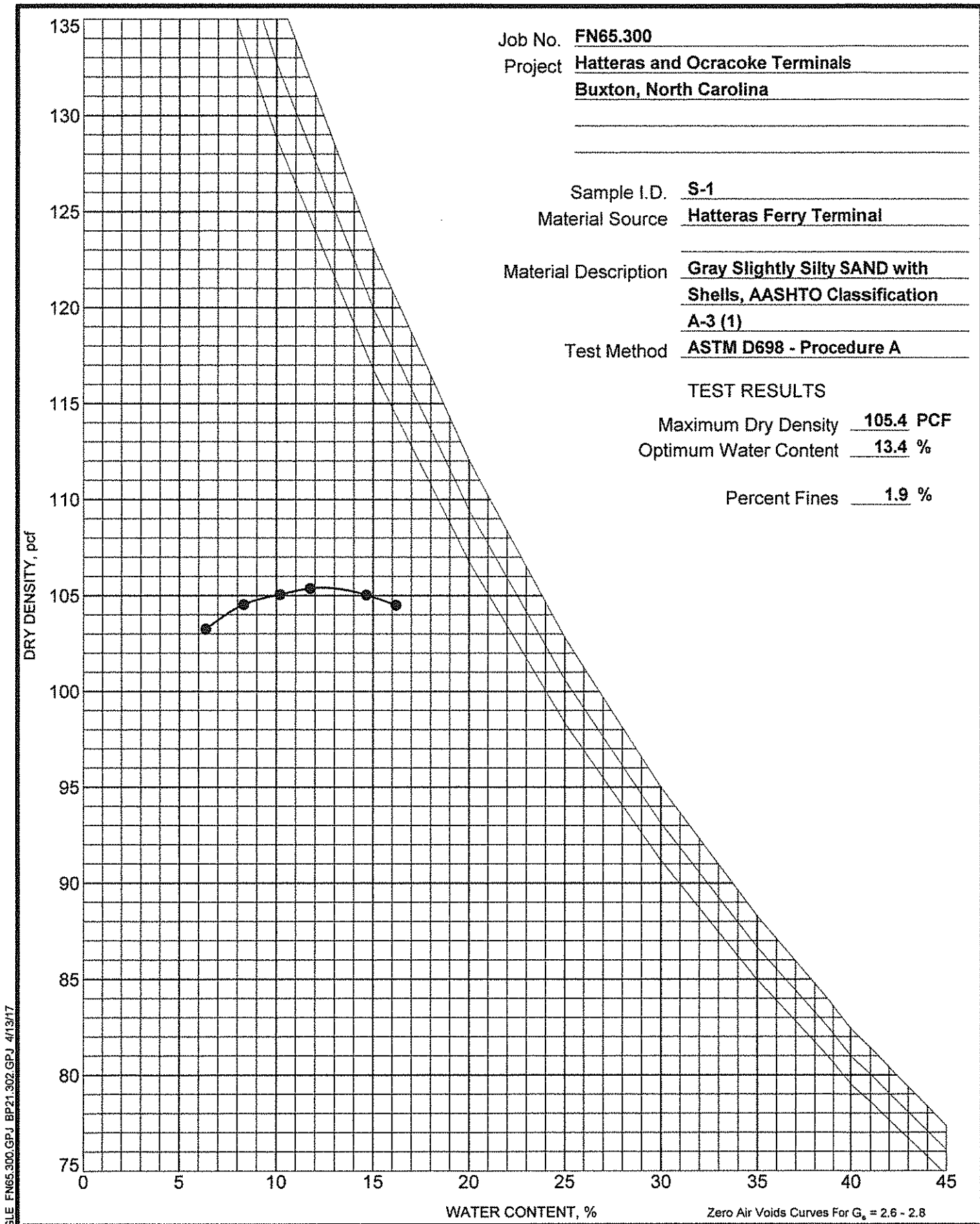
Material Description Gray Slightly Silty SAND with
Shells, AASHTO Classification
A-3 (1)

Test Method ASTM D698 - Procedure A

TEST RESULTS

Maximum Dry Density 105.4 PCF
 Optimum Water Content 13.4 %

Percent Fines 1.9 %



ESP COMPACTION - SINGLE FN65.300.GPJ BP21.302.GPJ 4/13/17



3475 Lakemont Blvd
 Fort Mill, SC
 Telephone: 803-802-2440
 Fax: 803-802-2515

MOISTURE-DENSITY RELATIONSHIP

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals

Location: Buxton, North Carolina

Number: FN65.300

Job No. **FN65.300**
 Project **Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals**
Buxton, North Carolina

Sample I.D. **S-2**
 Material Source **Ocracoke Ferry Terminal**

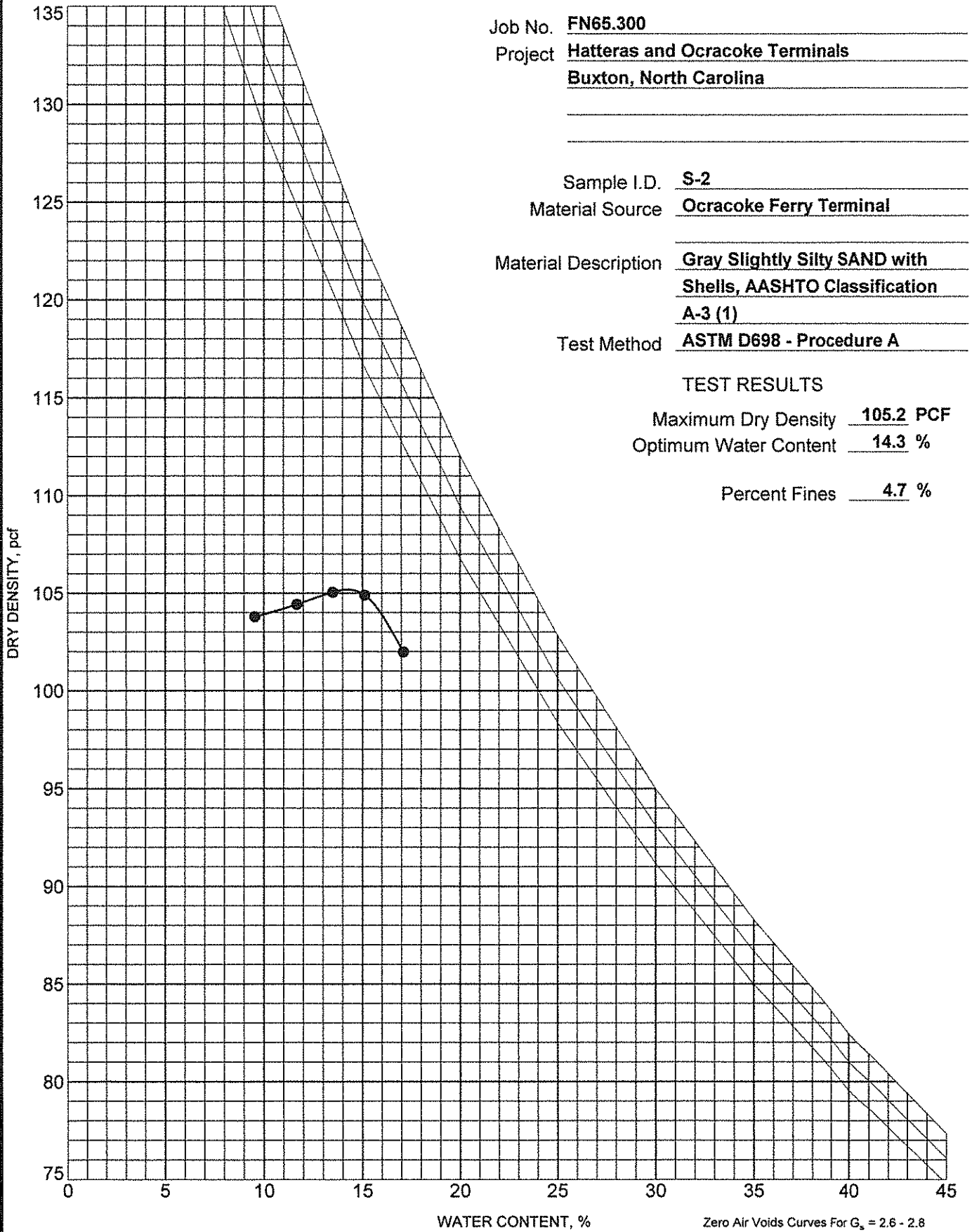
Material Description **Gray Slightly Silty SAND with**
Shells, AASHTO Classification
A-3 (1)

Test Method **ASTM D698 - Procedure A**

TEST RESULTS

Maximum Dry Density **105.2 PCF**
 Optimum Water Content **14.3 %**

Percent Fines **4.7 %**



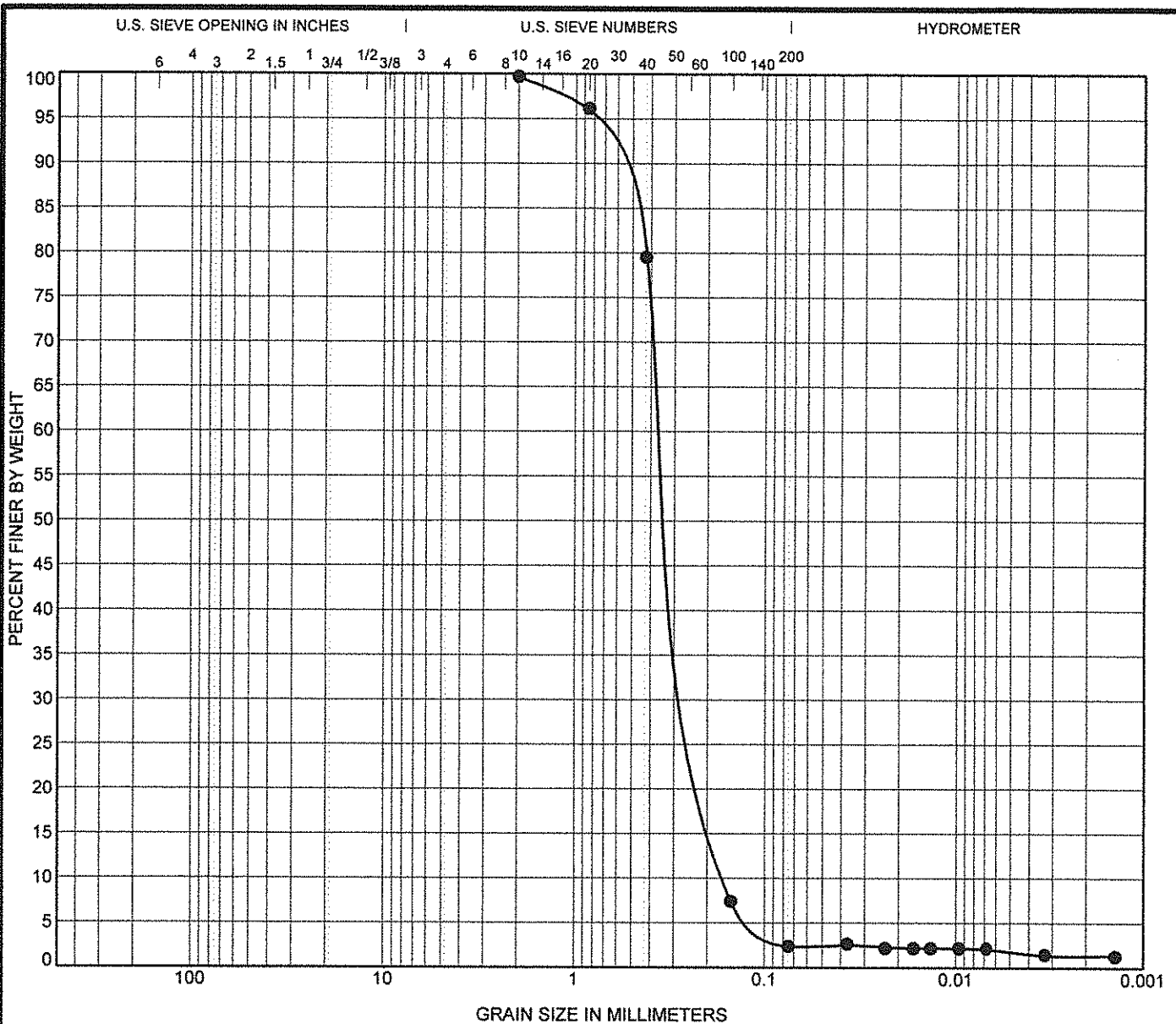
ESP COMPACTION - SINGLE FN65.300.GPJ BP21.302.GPJ 4/13/17



3475 Lakemont Blvd
 Fort Mill, SC
 Telephone: 803-802-2440
 Fax: 803-802-2515

MOISTURE-DENSITY RELATIONSHIP

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
 Location: Buxton, North Carolina
 Number: FN65.300



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● B-3 SS-20 (6.5'-7')	POORLY GRADED SAND SP	NP	NP	NP	0.87	2.06
	AASHTO Classification					
	A-3 (1)					

Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● B-3	2	0.321	0.208	0.156	0.0	97.3	1.0	1.4

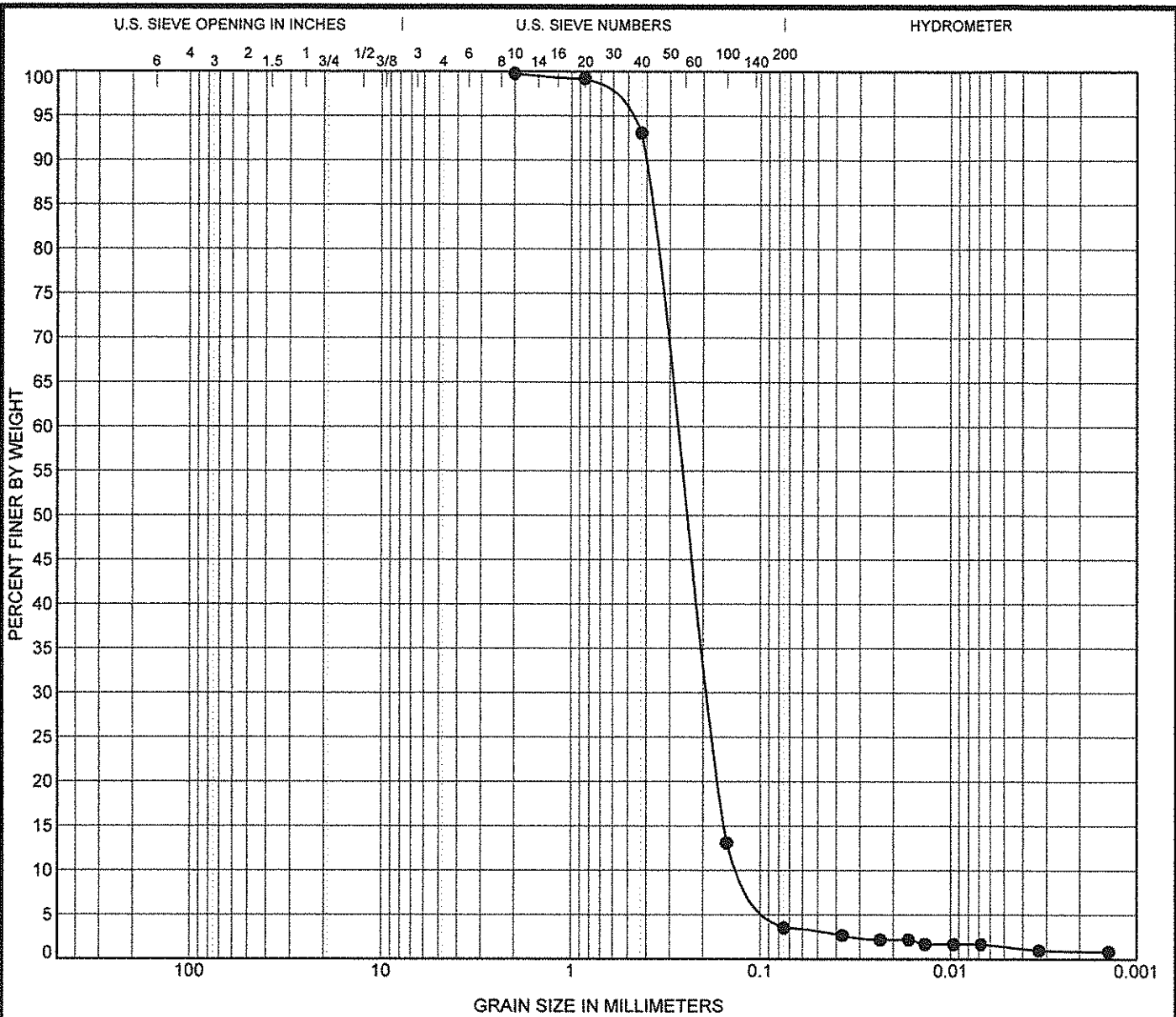


3475 Lakemont Blvd
Fort Mill, SC
Telephone: 803-802-2440
Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Location: Buxton, North Carolina
Number: FN65.300

ESP GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● B-1 SS-6 (18.5'-20')	POORLY GRADED SAND SP				1.06	2.31
	AASHTO Classification					
	A-3 (1)					

Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● B-1	2	0.276	0.187	0.12	0.0	96.3	2.6	0.9

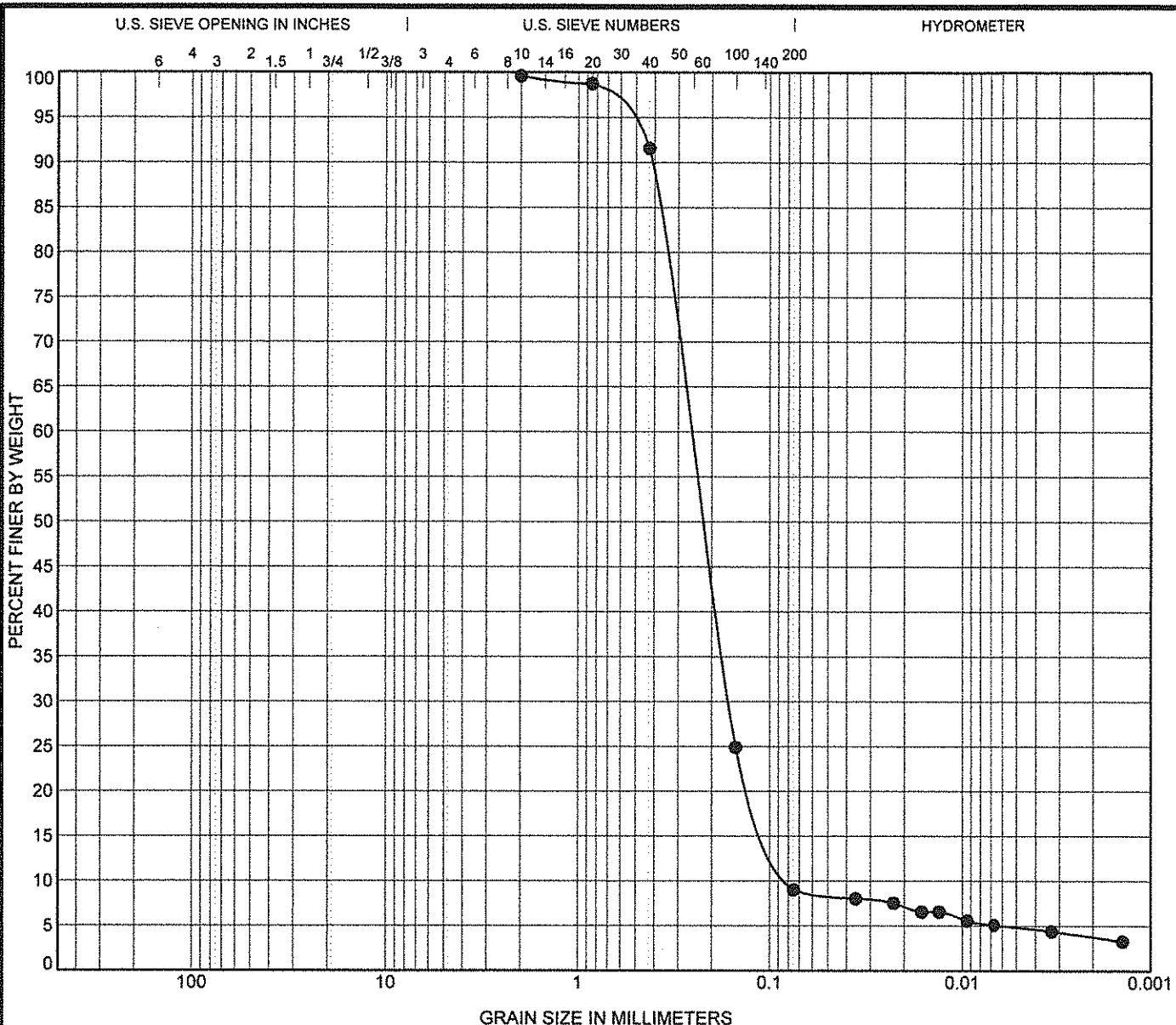
ESP GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



3475 Lakemont Blvd
Fort Mill, SC
Telephone: 803-802-2440
Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Location: Buxton, North Carolina
Number: FN65.300



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● B-6 SS32 (3.5'-5')	POORLY GRADED SAND with SILT SP-SM	NP	NP	NP	1.30	3.32
	AASHTO Classification					
	A-3 (1)					

Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● B-6	2	0.259	0.162	0.078	0.0	90.6	5.3	3.7

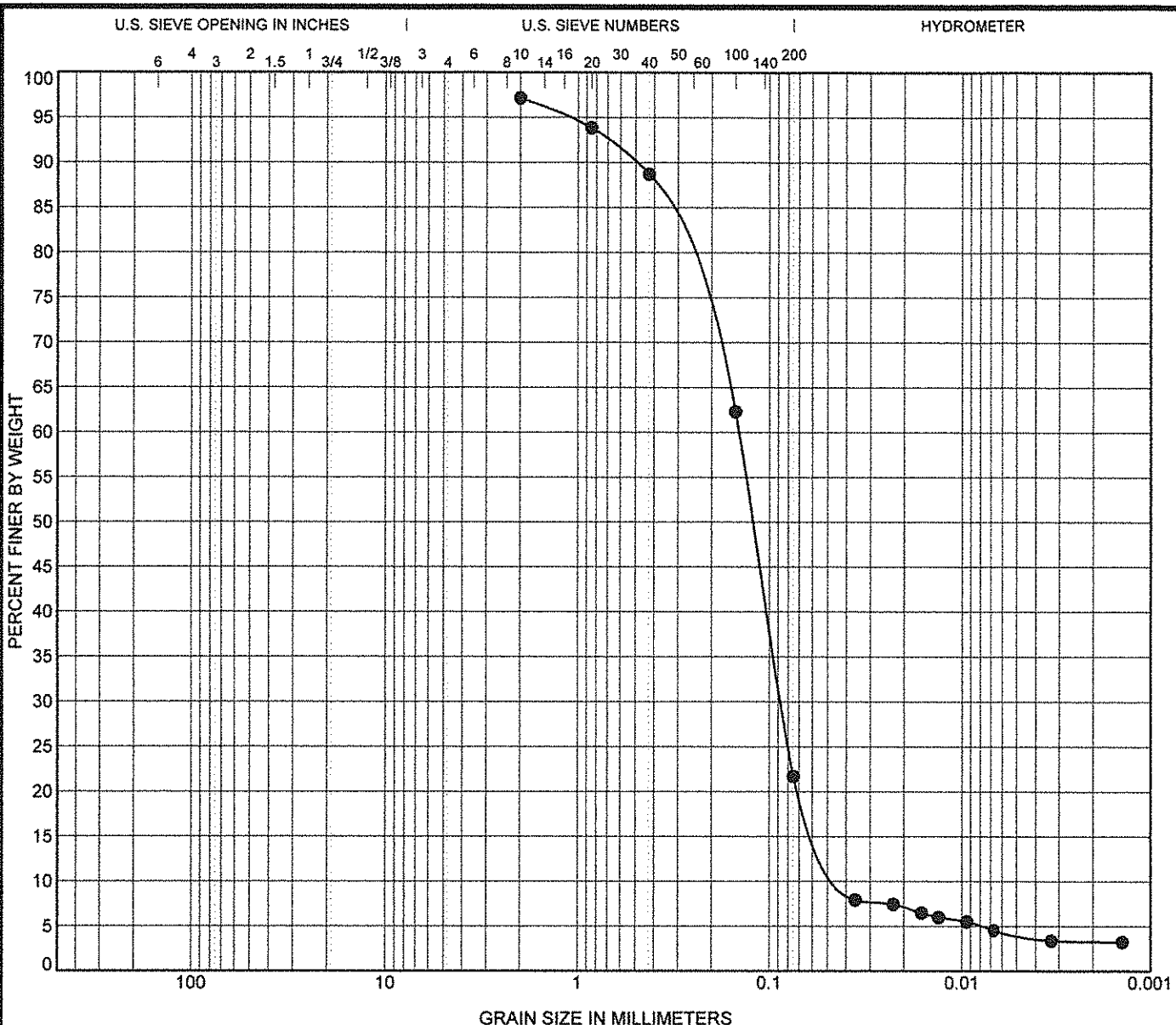


3475 Lakemont Blvd
 Fort Mill, SC
 Telephone: 803-802-2440
 Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
 Location: Buxton, North Carolina
 Number: FN65.300

ESP GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● B-1 SS-8 (28.5'-30')	SILTY SAND SM	NP	NP	NP	1.29	3.61
	AASHTO Classification					
	A-2-4 (1)					

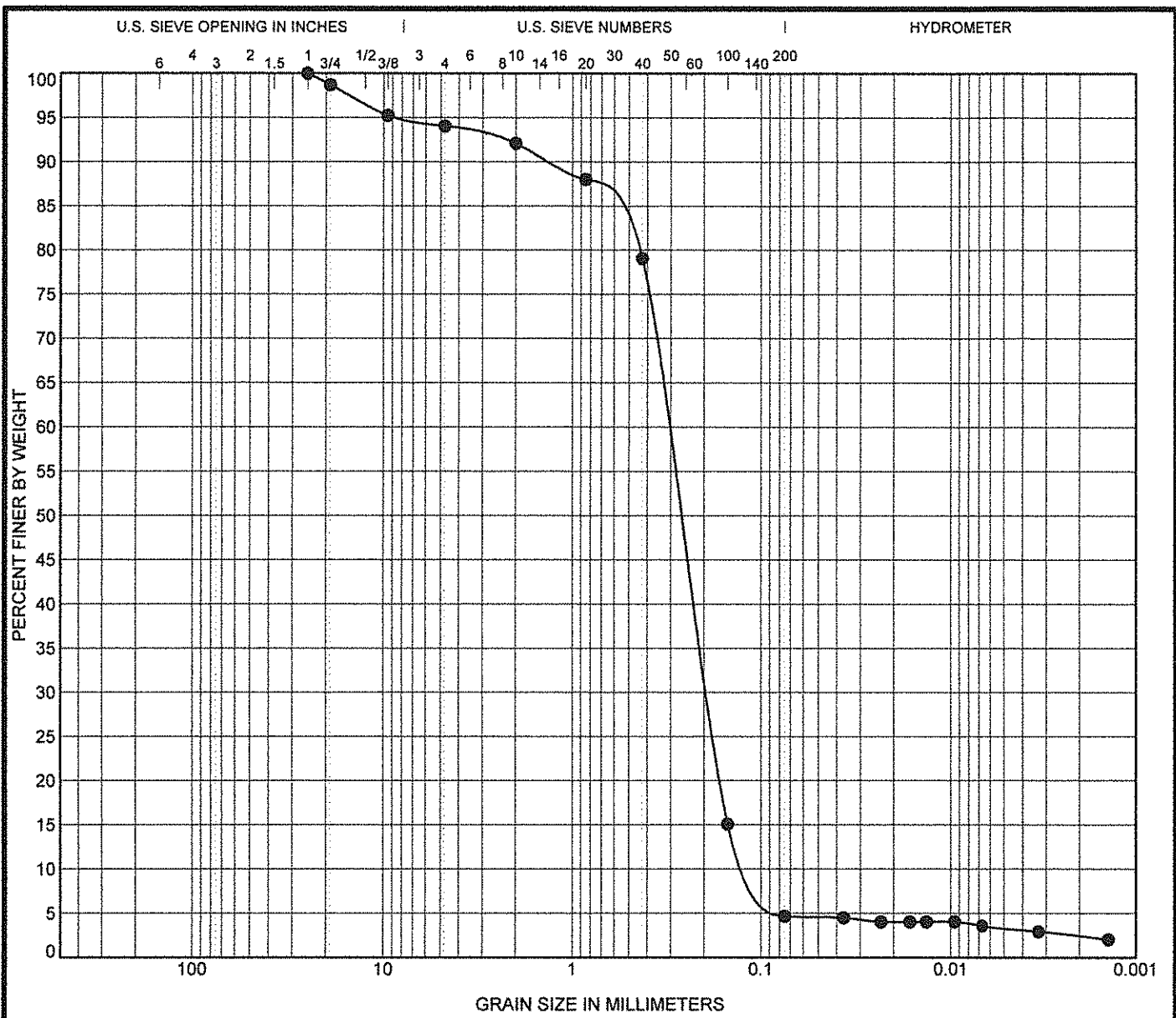
Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● B-1 SS-8	2	0.144	0.086	0.04	0.0	75.4	18.4	3.3

ESP GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



3475 Lakemont Blvd
Fort Mill, SC
Telephone: 803-802-2440
Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION
Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Location: Buxton, North Carolina
Number: FN65.300



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● S-2	POORLY GRADED SAND SP AASHTO Classification A-3 (1)				1.10	2.91

Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● S-2	25	0.312	0.191	0.107	5.9	89.4	2.2	2.4

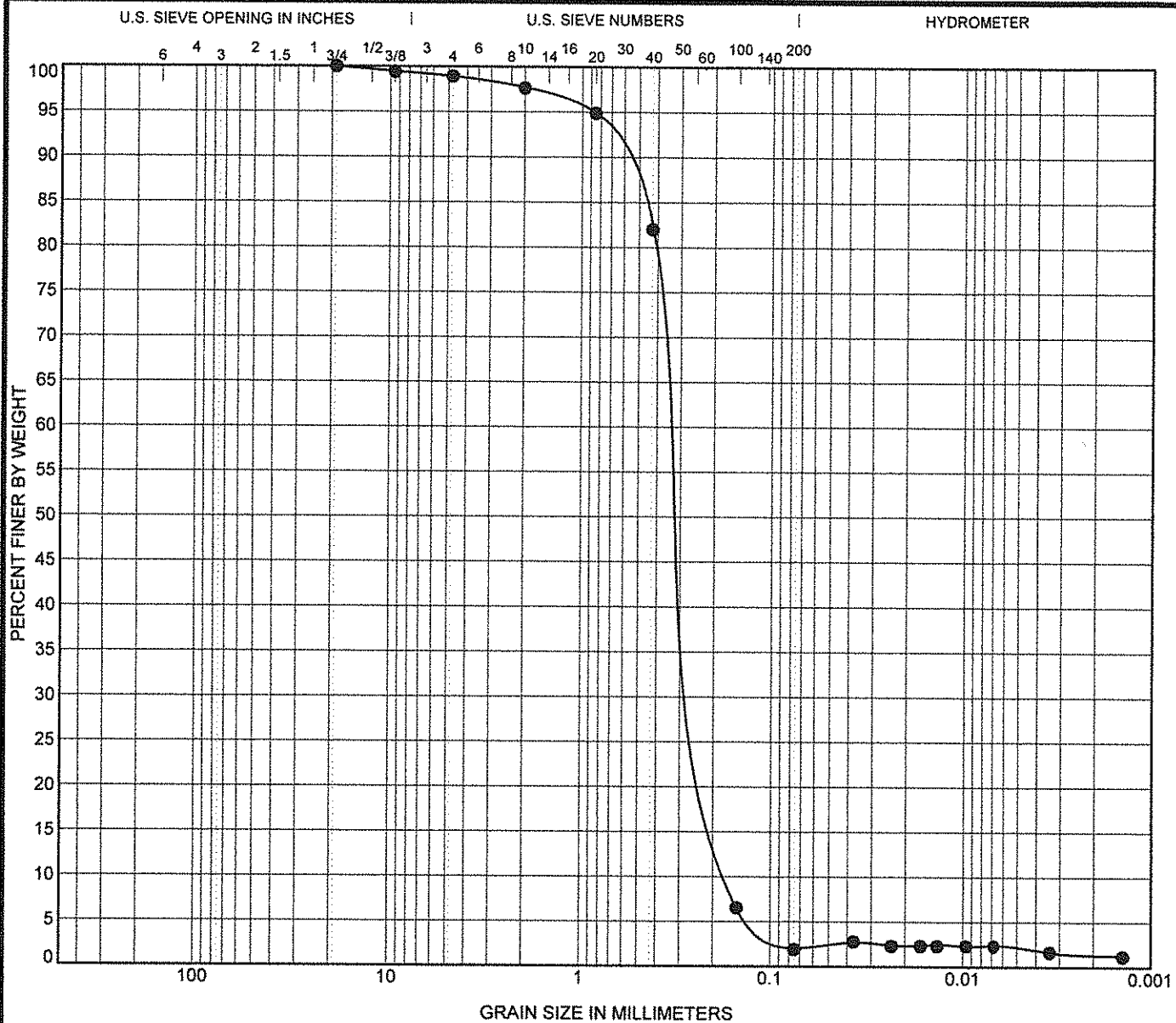


3475 Lakemont Blvd
Fort Mill, SC
Telephone: 803-802-2440
Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Location: Buxton, North Carolina
Number: FN65.300

ESP GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● S-1	POORLY GRADED SAND SP AASHTO Classification A-3 (1)				0.87	1.99

Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● S-1	19	0.314	0.207	0.157	1.1	97.0	0.5	1.4



3475 Lakemont Blvd
Fort Mill, SC
Telephone: 803-802-2440
Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Location: Buxton, North Carolina
Number: FN65.300

ESP, GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17

**REPORT OF
SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION
OCRACOCKE AND HATTERAS
NCDOT PASSENGER TERMINALS
AND PARKING LOTS
ESP PROJECT NO. E4A-FN65.300**

Prepared For:

Mr. Tim Hayes, P.E.
WSP / Parsons Brinckerhoff
434 Fayetteville Street, Suite 1500
Raleigh, North Carolina 27601

Prepared By:

ESP Associates, P.A.
P. O. Box 7030
Charlotte, North Carolina 28241

April 13, 2017

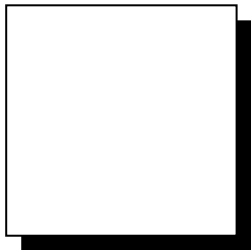
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

NCDOT OCRACOKE ISLAND PASSENGER TERMINALS

Ocracoke Island, NC

SCO #17-17066-01A

JKF Project No. 2016-26
May 1, 2017



Specification No.



625 Lynndale Ct. Suite F
Greenville, NC 27858
252-355-1068 Phone
252-355-0216 Fax
jkf@jkf-arch.com

**TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS
NCDOT OCRACOKE ISLAND
PASSENGER TERMINALS
Ocracoke Island, NC
SCO #17-17066-01A**

Division	Section Title	Pages
DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS		
012500	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES	3
012600	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES	2
012900	PAYMENT PROCEDURES	3
013100	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION	7
013200	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION	5
013300	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES	9
014000	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS	9
015000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS	10
016000	PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS	5
017300	EXECUTION.....	7
017700	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES.....	5
017823	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA	4
017839	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS.....	3
DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE		
033000	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.....	15
DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES		
061000	ROUGH CARPENTRY	7
061063	EXTERIOR ROUGH CARPENTRY	4
061300	HEAVY TIMBER CONSTRUCTION.....	5
061516	WOOD ROOF DECKING.....	3
061533	WOOD PATIO DECKING.....	5
061600	SHEATHING.....	4
062013	EXTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY	7
DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION		
073113	ASPHALT SHINGLES	7
079200	JOINT SEALANTS	8
DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS		
081113	HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES.....	5
085200	WOOD WINDOWS	5
087100	DOOR HARDWARE	6

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

093013 CERAMIC TILING 6

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

101423 PANEL SIGNAGE 4
102800 TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES 4

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

316219 TIMBER PILES 5

DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

321313 CONCRETE PAVING..... 10
321726 TACTILE WARNING SURFACING 3

OTHER

GEOTECHNICAL REPORT 60

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS



Architectural



Structural

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use Contractor's Standard Form.
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.

- h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
 - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 60 days after Notice to Proceed.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - b. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided.

- c. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- d. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- e. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- f. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- h. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- i. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
2. Within time specified in Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.

- a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
- b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
- c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.

- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.

2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor via The NC State Construction Interscope System.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE OR FIELD ORDER

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on Field Order Form. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the Schedule of Values with preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 1. Correlate line items in the Schedule of Values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
 - a. Application for Payment forms with Continuation Sheets.
 - b. Submittals Schedule.
 - c. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 2. Submit the Schedule of Values to Architect at earliest possible date but no later than 21 days after notice to proceed. Provide separate schedule for each Armory.
- B. Format and Content: Use the Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the Schedule of Values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
 - 1. Submit draft of **AIA Document G703 Continuation Sheets**.
 - 2. Arrange the Schedule of Values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
 - 3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with the Project Manual table of contents. Provide several line items for principal subcontract amounts, where appropriate.
 - 4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
 - 5. Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction Work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Forms: Use **AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 Continuation Sheets** as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. **Architect** will return incomplete applications without action.
 - 1. Entries shall match data on the Schedule of Values and Contractor's Construction Schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 - 2. Include amounts of Approved Change Orders issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
- E. Transmittal: Submit 4 signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to **Architect** by a method ensuring receipt **within 24 hours**. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
 - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- F. Initial Payment: Initial Application for Payment will not be reviewed or executed until the following administrative submittals are submitted and approved by the Architect:
 - 1. Project Schedule.
 - 2. List of Subcontractors, materials, products.
 - 3. Schedule of Values.
 - 4. Submittal Schedule.
- G. Final Payment Application: Submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
 - 1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
 - 2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
 - 3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
 - 4. NC State Construction Forms "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
 - 5. NC State Construction Forms "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
 - 6. NC State Construction Forms "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
 - 7. Summary of all MBE's paid for project. Use Appendix E to Summarize.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General coordination procedures.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
 - 4. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
 - 4. Name of Product and Manufacturer to be provided by the Subcontractor.
 - 5. Submit Subcontract List within 30 days of Notice to Proceed.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 30 days of Notice to Proceed, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
 - 1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Coordination: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- C. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- D. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 5. Progress meetings.
 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 7. Project closeout activities.
 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- E. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
 - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to the coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
 - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
 - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - g. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
 - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
 - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
 - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
 7. Electrical Work: Show the following:

- a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
 - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
 - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
 - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
- a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

1.7 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
 2. Project number.
 3. Date.
 4. Name of Contractor.
 5. Name of Architect.
 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 7. RFI subject.
 8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 12. Contractor's signature.
 13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.

1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log monthly. Contractor's standard form acceptable to the Architect
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
1. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
 2. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

1.8 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Conduct the conference to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Tentative construction schedule.
 - b. Phasing.
 - c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
 - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.

- e. Lines of communications.
- f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
- g. Procedures for RFIs.
- h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
- i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
- j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
- k. Submittal procedures.
- l. Preparation of record documents.
- m. Use of the premises.
- n. Work restrictions.
- o. Working hours.
- p. Owner's occupancy requirements.
- q. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
- r. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
- s. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
- t. Construction waste management and recycling.
- u. Parking availability.
- v. Office, work, and storage areas.
- w. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
- x. First aid.
- y. Security.
- z. Progress cleaning.

4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

B. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.

- 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
- 2. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
- 3. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
- 4. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

C. Progress Meetings: Architect will conduct progress meetings at monthly intervals.

- 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
- 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
- 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project. Contractor shall provide a written summary of the project status in the following format at each meeting:
 - a. Review outstanding items from previous minutes.
 - b. Contractors current status complete with written summary.
 - c. Contractors work to be performed next period, written summary.
 - d. Change Order status

- e. Shop Drawing status.
 - f. Project Schedule.
 - g. Other.

 - h. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
- a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- D. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
- 1. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 3. Daily construction reports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- D. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- E. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
 - 2. PDF electronic file.
 - 3. Two paper copies.

- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
- C. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
 - 1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
- D. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Project Acceptance.
 - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
 - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
 - 2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
 - 3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
 - 4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
 - 5. Pre-Final: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Project Acceptance and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary to schedule Final Inspections.
 - 6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.

- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
 - a. Uninterruptible services.
 - b. Use of premises restrictions.
 - c. Environmental control.
 2. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Subcontract awards.
 - b. Submittals.
 - c. Purchases.
 - d. Mockups.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Sample testing.
 - g. Deliveries.
 - h. Installation.
 - i. Tests and inspections.
 - j. Adjusting.
 - k. Curing.
 - l. Building flush-out.
 - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
 3. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
 - a. Structural completion.
 - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 - c. Permanent space enclosure.
 - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
 - e. Completion of electrical installation.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Pre-final inspections, and final completion, and the following interim milestones:
1. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 2. Power on Building.
 3. Critical inspections such as under slab rough-in, above ceiling inspections, wall rough-ins, etc.
- E. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
1. Unresolved issues.
 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 4. Notations on returned submittals.
 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.
- F. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor

intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.

- G. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

2.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (GANTT CHART)

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's construction schedule within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
 - 1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

2.3 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
 - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
 - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 - 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 - 4. Equipment at Project site.
 - 5. Material deliveries.
 - 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
 - 7. Accidents.
 - 8. Meetings and significant decisions.
 - 9. Unusual events (see special reports).
 - 10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 - 11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
 - 12. Emergency procedures.
 - 13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 14. Change Orders received and implemented.
 - 15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
 - 16. Services connected and disconnected.
 - 17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
 - 18. Partial completions and occupancies.

2.4 SPECIAL REPORTS

- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Architect within seven day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

- C. Submit 5-year weather data for the previous 5-years at the beginning of the Project within 30 days of Notice to Proceed. Data shall indicate the average number of days per month with precipitation that will serve as baseline for any weather days to be claimed in excess of the 5-year averages.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
 - 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
 - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION 013200

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
 - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.

3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
 - b. Finalize the schedule such that all shop drawings required for the project are submitted within 90 days of Notice to Proceed.
4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.
 - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
 - g. Scheduled date of fabrication.
 - h. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
 - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
 - j. Activity or event number.

1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings will not be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 1. Initial Review: Allow 20 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 20 days for review of each resubmittal.

4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 20 days for initial review of each submittal.

D. Paper Submittals: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification.

1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
2. Include the following information for processing and recording action taken:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Name of subcontractor.
 - f. Name of supplier.
 - g. Name of manufacturer.
 - h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - l. Other necessary identification.
3. Additional Paper Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
4. Transmittal for Paper Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will discard submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
 - a. Transmittal Form for Paper Submittals: Use Contractor's Standard Transmittal.
 - b. Transmittal Form for Paper Submittals: Provide locations on form for the following information:
 - 1) Project name.
 - 2) Date.
 - 3) Destination (To:).
 - 4) Source (From:).
 - 5) Name and address of Architect.
 - 6) Name of Construction Manager.
 - 7) Name of Contractor.
 - 8) Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - 9) Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - 10) Category and type of submittal.
 - 11) Submittal purpose and description.
 - 12) Specification Section number and title.
 - 13) Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - 14) Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - 15) Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - 16) Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
 - 17) Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - 18) Remarks.
 - 19) Signature of transmitter.

- E. Electronic Submittals (Limit to those submittals pre-approved for electronic submission by the Architect): Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - a. File name shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number project identifier (e.g., 061000.01-PCC Science). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 061000.01.A-PCC Science).
 3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use electronic form acceptable to Architect, containing the following information:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name and address of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - g. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - h. Category and type of submittal.
 - i. Submittal purpose and description.
 - j. Specification Section number and title.
 - k. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - l. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - m. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - n. Related physical samples submitted directly.
 - o. Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - p. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
 - q. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - r. Other necessary identification.
 - s. Remarks.
- F. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- G. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

- J. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 - 1. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 - 2. Action Submittals: Submit up to 5 paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
 - 3. Informational Submittals: Submit up to 5 paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
 - 4. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
 - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
 - b. Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
 - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
 - 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.

5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
 6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Up to 5 paper copies of Product Data unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file (when permitted).
 - b. Up to 5 opaque copies of each submittal. Architect will retain two copies; remainder will be returned.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Generic description of Sample.
 - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - c. Sample source.
 - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
 3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
 4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.

- a. Number of Samples: Submit 2 full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.

- 5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain 1 Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.

- E. Coordination Drawing Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

- F. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation."

- G. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."

- H. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

- I. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

- J. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

- K. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.

- L. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

- M. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.

- N. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.

- O. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- P. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- R. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- S. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
 - 2. Date of evaluation.
 - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
 - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
 - 5. Description of product.
 - 6. Test procedures and results.
 - 7. Limitations of use.
- T. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- U. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- V. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- W. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit up to 5 paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action, as follows:
 - 1. Reviewed: Information submitted is in compliance with Contract Documents.
 - 2. Reviewed as Noted: Information submitted is in compliance with Contract Documents except as noted.
 - 3. Revise and Resubmit: Submittal does not meet Contract Documents or is incomplete, and must be resubmitted.
 - 4. Not Reviewed: Incomplete submittal, was not required or does not require review.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
 - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
 - 1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
 - 2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
 - 3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes, doors, windows, millwork, casework, specialties, furnishings and equipment, and lighting.

- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
 - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
 - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data : For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
 - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
 - 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
 - 1. Specification Section number and title.
 - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 - 3. Description of test and inspection.
 - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
 - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
 - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
 - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
 - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- C. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
 - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
 - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- D. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified.

Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.

- E. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Date of issue.
2. Project title and number.
3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
8. Complete test or inspection data.
9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
 - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
 - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
 - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.

- c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
 - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
 - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
 - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
- 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
 - 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
 - 5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
 - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
- 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
 - 2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
- 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 - 2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.

3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. **Manufacturer's Field Services:** Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- D. **Manufacturer's Technical Services:** Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. **Retesting/Reinspecting:** Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. **Testing Agency Responsibilities:** Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. **Associated Services:** Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- H. **Coordination:** Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.

1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency and special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, as indicated in Statement of Special Inspections attached to this Section, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.

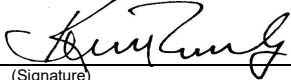
1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

Statement of Special Inspections

Project: NCDOT Ocracoke Island Passenger Terminal
Location: Ocracoke Island, North Carolina
Owner's Representative: NCDOT – Sterling Baker
Owner's Address: NCDOT, Raleigh, NC

This Statement of Special Inspections is submitted as a condition for permit issuance in accordance with the Special Inspection requirements of the 2012 North Carolina State Building Code. It includes a Schedule of Special Inspection Services applicable to this project as well as the name of the Special Inspector and the identity of other approved agencies intended to be retained for conducting these inspections. This Statement of Special Inspections was prepared by the following Designers of Record:

Structural	Kevin M. Roomsburg, P.E. <small>(Type or print name)</small>	 <small>(Signature)</small>	7-25-2017 <small>(Date)</small>
Architectural	John K. Farkas, AIA <small>(Type or print name)</small>	 <small>(Signature)</small>	 <small>(Date)</small>
Mechanical	 <small>(Type or print name)</small>	 <small>(Signature)</small>	 <small>(Date)</small>
Other	 <small>(Type or print name)</small>	 <small>(Signature)</small>	 <small>(Date)</small>

The Special Inspector shall keep records of all inspections and shall furnish inspection reports to the State Construction Office and the Designers of Record. Discovered discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Contractor for correction. If such discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the State Construction Office and the Designers of Record. The Special Inspections program does not relieve the Contractor of his or her responsibilities.

Interim reports shall be submitted to the State Construction Office, Owner, and the Designers of Record.

Interim Report Frequency: Monthly

A Final Report of Special Inspections documenting completion of all required Special Inspections and correction of any discrepancies should be submitted prior to issuance of a Certificate of Use and Occupancy.

Job Site safety and means and methods of construction are solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

Owner's Authorization

Accepted for the SCO by:

Signature

Date

Signature

Date

Schedule of Special Inspection Services

The following sheets comprise the required schedule of special inspections for this project. The construction divisions which require special inspections for this project are as follows.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Structural Steel | <input type="checkbox"/> Sprayed Fire Resistant Material |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cold-Formed Steel Framing | <input type="checkbox"/> Intumescent Fire-Resistant Coatings |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Concrete Construction | <input type="checkbox"/> Exterior Insulation & Finish System |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Masonry – Level 1 ^a | <input type="checkbox"/> Smoke Control |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wood Construction | <input type="checkbox"/> Retaining Walls Exceeding 5 Feet |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Soils | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wind-Resisting Components (1705.4) ^b |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Driven Deep Foundations | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wind Requirements (1706) ^c |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cast-in-Place Deep Foundations | <input type="checkbox"/> Seismic Resistance ^d |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Helical Pile Foundations | |

a. Occupancy Category IV structures, as defined by 1604.5 of the North Carolina Building Code, may require Level 2 inspection of masonry construction. The SER shall review Code sections 1704.5.1 and 1704.5.3 and adjust the Schedule of Special Inspection Services as needed.

b. Special inspections for Wind Resistance are applicable to those areas defined by 1705.4 of the North Carolina Building Code. Wind Resistance Special Inspections are only effective if the 1704.1.2 base triggers apply.

c. Special Inspections for Wind Requirements are applicable to those areas defined by 1706.1 of the North Carolina Building Code. Wind Requirements are effective even if the 1704.1.2 base triggers do not apply.

d. Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance are applicable to those structures defined by 1707.1 of the North Carolina Building Code. Seismic Requirements are only effective if the 1704.1.2 base triggers apply.

Inspection Agents	Qualifications	Address
1. Special Inspector TBD	SI	
2. Structural Engineer of Record Kevin M. Roomsburg, P.E.	SER	748 Lord Dunmore Drive Virginia Beach, VA 23464
3. Testing Laboratory TBD	ITL	
4. Other		

Note: The inspection and testing agent shall be engaged by the Owner's Agent, and not by the Contractor or Subcontractor whose work is to be inspected or tested. Any conflict of interest must be disclosed to the State Construction Office, prior to commencing work.

Seismic Design Category: A B C D

Basic Wind Speed: 90-109mph 110-119mph ≥120mph

Wind Exposure Category: B C D

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Structural Steel

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Fabricator Certification/Quality Control Procedures	N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure fabricator meets the requirements of NCSBC 1704.2.2 • Collect certificate of compliance from fabricator at completion of fabrication
2. Welding	N/A N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuous inspection of complete and partial joint penetration welds, multipass fillet welds, plug and slot welds, and single-pass fillet welds > 5/16" in accordance with NCSBC Table 1704.3 • Periodic inspection of single-pass fillet welds ≤ 5/16" • Collect certificate of compliance for weld filler material • Identify use of approved filler material and in accordance with AWS D1.1
3. Metal Deck	N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collect material data sheets for decking and connectors or fasteners • Periodic inspection of welds and / or mechanical fasteners
4. Structural Details	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of steel framing and joint details
5. Bolting	N/A N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collect material data sheets for bolts, nuts, and washers • Collect certificate of compliance from bolt supplier • Periodic inspection of snug-tight, pretensioned, and slip critical joints in accordance with NCSBC Table 1704.3 • Continuous inspection of pretensioned and slip-critical joints using turn-of-nut without matchmarking or calibrated wrench methods of installation
6. Material Certification	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collect certified mill test reports

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Cold-Formed Steel Framing

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Plant Certification/ Quality Control Procedures for Pre- Engineered Wall Panels Assembled Off-Job Site	N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure wall panel fabricator meets the requirements of NCSBC 1704.2.2 • Collect certificate of compliance from wall panel fabricator at completion of fabrication
2. Mechanical Connections	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of all field connections including anchorage to the structural frame
3. Welding	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of all field connections including anchorage to the structural frame
4. Framing Details	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection framing and details
5. Cold-formed Steel Trusses	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For trusses clear spanning 60 feet or more, verify that both temporary and permanent restraints and braces are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Concrete Construction

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Mix Design/Material Certifications	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Collect mix designs and verify appropriate mix use during specific installation
2. Reinforcement Installation	1/3 1 N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Periodic inspection of reinforcing steel, including prestressing tendons and welded wire fabric Collection of certified mill test reports Continuous inspection of reinforcing steel welding in accordance with Table 1704.3, Item 5b
3. Concrete Placement/Monitoring Fresh Concrete, Sampling & prep of test samples	3 3 3 N/A 3 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Continuous inspection of cast-in-place concrete placement Continuous monitoring of sampling of fresh concrete, slump test, air content test, temperature of concrete and creation of strength test specimens Periodic inspection of formwork Periodic verification of concrete strength prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and structural slabs Continuous inspection of bolts to be installed in concrete prior to and during placement Periodic inspection of anchors installed in hardened concrete
4. Curing & Protection	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Periodic inspections of curing techniques
5. Structural Precast Concrete Members	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Periodic inspection of attachment of precast members
6. Post-Tensioned Concrete Members	N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Periodic verification of posttensioned concrete strength (f'_{ci}) prior to force transfer Continuous inspection of force application to prestressing tendons Continuous inspection of grouting procedures at bonded prestressing tendons included in the lateral force resisting system

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Masonry

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Material Certification	N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collect mix design for mortar • Collect mix design for grout • Certificates of Compliance for masonry constituents
2. Mixing of Mortar & Grout	N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of site prepared mortar, site-prepared grout, and grout for bonded tendons • Continuous verification of slump flow and VSI as self-consolidating grout is delivered to the site
3. Installation of Masonry	N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of construction of mortar joints, prior to beginning masonry construction and during construction • Periodically verify the type, size, and location of anchors and their attachment to the structure • Periodically verify size and location of structural elements
4. Reinforcement Installation	N/A N/A N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify location of reinforcement and connections to structure as construction begins • Continuous inspection of reinforcing steel welding in accordance with Table 1704.3, Item 5b • Prior to grouting periodically verify size, grade, and placement of reinforcement and connection of masonry to structural frame • Periodically verify prestressing technique • During construction, continuously monitor the application and measurement of prestressing force
5. Grouting Operations	N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prior to grouting, periodically verify conforming cleanliness of grout space and placement of the reinforcement and connectors • Continuous observation of the placement of all grout • Continuously observe the grouting of prestressing bonded tendons
6. Weather Protection	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodically verify protection techniques for construction of masonry below 40°F and above 90°F
7. Observation of the Evaluation of Masonry Strength	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic observation of the preparation of grout specimens, mortar specimens and or prisms.

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Wood

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Inspection of Fabricators	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ensure fabricator meets the requirements of NCSBC 1704.2 verifying adequate quality control procedures for prefabricated wood structural elements and assemblies are in place
2. High-load diaphragms	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Periodic inspection of Table 2306.2.1(2) high-load diaphragm sheathing panels, fasteners, and framing members at adjoining panel edges.
3. Heavy Timber	1/3	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Periodic inspection to verify connections, member sizes and details are installed in accordance with the plans and approved submittal package.

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Soils

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1.Site Preparation	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Determine that the subgrade has been prepared in accordance with the approved soils report and the construction document
2. Fill Placement	<p>N/A</p> <p>N/A</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic classification and testing of compacted fill materials • Continuous observation of materials used, densities, and lift thickness ensuring compliance with the approved soils report and the construction documents
3. Evaluation	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Determine that the materials below shallow foundations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Driven Deep Foundations ^{a b}

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Material Verification	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuously verify pile materials, sizes, and lengths comply with the construction documents
2. Pile Testing	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuously observe dynamic pile tests ensuring compliance with the construction documents
3. Installation	3 3 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuous observation of the driving operations • Continuously observe pile placement, location, plumbness, blow count, penetration, tip and butt elevations, and anomalies • Maintain complete and accurate records

a. For steel elements, perform additional inspections in accordance with Section 1704.3 of the North Carolina Building Code and the companion Schedules included herein

b. For concrete elements and concrete-filled elements, perform additional inspections in accordance with Section 1704.4 of the North Carolina Building Code and the companion Schedules included herein

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Cast-in-Place Deep Foundations^a

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Material Verification	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuously verify pile materials comply with the construction documents
2. Pile Testing	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuously observe pile load tests and determine capacities of test elements ensuring compliance with the construction documents
3. Installation	N/A N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuous observation of the drilling operations • Continuously verify pile placement, location, plumbness, diameters, lengths, rock embedment, end-bearing strata capacity, concrete or grout volumes, and anomalies • Maintain complete and accurate records

a. For concrete elements and concrete-filled elements, perform additional inspections in accordance with Section 1704.4 of the North Carolina Building Code and the companion Schedules included herein

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Helical Pile Foundations

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Quality Control Procedures	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Collect Certificate of Compliance from fabricator
2. Installation of Helical Piles	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Continuously observe the installation equipment used, pile placement, location, tip elevations, final depth, and final installation torque

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Sprayed On Fire Resistant Materials

Item	Qualification	Scope
1. Preparation	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodically inspect preparation of substrate prior to installation in accordance with approved fire resistance design and approved manufacturer's written instructions
2. Application	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodically inspect that substrate has minimum ambient temperature before and after application as specified by the fire resistance design and approved manufacturer's written instructions • Test thickness of sprayed on material per the instruction of Section 1704.12.4, the fire resistance design, and the approved manufacturer's written instructions • Periodically test Density of sprayed on material per fire resistance design and approved manufacturer's written instructions • Periodically test bond Strength to ensure a value greater than 150 pounds per square foot.

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Mastic and Intumescent Fire-Resistant Coatings

Item	Qualification	Scope
1. Preparation	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Periodically inspect preparation of substrate prior to installation in accordance with approved fire resistance design, approved manufacturer's written instructions, and the requirements of AWCI 12-B
1. Application	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Periodically observe application of fire-resistant coatings ensuring compliance with approved fire resistance design, approved manufacturer's written instructions, and the requirements of AWCI 12-B

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Retaining Walls Exceeding 5 Feet

Item	Qualification	Scope
1.Retaining Systems	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• All retaining walls exceeding 5 feet in height require special inspections. Refer to the applicable material schedules for explicit requirements
1. Application	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Periodic examination of backfill materials for compliance with the approved specifications• Confirm that all subsoil drainage piping is undamaged, drains freely to the designated outlet or structure, and has been installed per the approved engineered design

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS)

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Application	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Verify that EIFS is installed in conformance with project specifications• For EIFS incorporating drainage over a water-resistive barrier, periodically confirm that the water-barrier and drainage strip are installed in conformance with project specifications

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Smoke Control

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Smoke Evacuation System	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• During erection of ductwork and prior to concealment leak test and record locations of devices• Upon completion of smoke control system perform pressure difference testing, flow measurements and detection and control verification

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Wind-Resisting Components

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Contractor Statement of Responsibility	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prior to any work taking place, each contractor responsible for the construction of a wind-resisting material, system, or component shall submit a written statement of responsibility to the Special Inspector for distribution to the Building Official and Owner
2. Wind-resisting components	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the wind-resisting materials, systems, components, and connections listed below ensuring all items are installed in conformance with the project documents

Main Wind-Force Resisting System(s):

Timber columns

Wind-Resisting Components Subject to Continuous Special Inspections:

Wind-Resisting Components Subject to Periodic Special Inspections:

Timber connections.

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Special Inspections for Wind Requirements

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Structural Wood	N/A 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuously observe field gluing operations pertinent to the main wind force-resisting system • Periodically inspect all nailing, anchoring, and fastening of components within the main windforce-resisting system
2. Cold-Formed Steel Light-Frame Construction	N/A N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodically inspect welding operations at elements of the main windforce-resisting system • Periodically inspect all screw attachment, bolting, anchoring, and fastening of components within the main windforce-resisting system
3. Wind-resisting components	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodically inspect the roof cladding and wall cladding components and connections listed below ensuring all items are installed in conformance with the project documents

Structural Wood and Cold-Formed Steel Light-Frame Construction Main Wind-Force Resisting System(s) Subject to Special Inspections:

Timber connections.

Roof Cladding Components Subject to Periodic Special Inspections:

Wall Cladding Components Subject to Periodic Special Inspections:

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance^a

Item	Qualifications	Scope
1. Contractor Statement of Responsibility	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prior to any work taking place, each contractor responsible for the construction of a seismic-resisting material, system, or component shall submit a written statement of responsibility to the Special Inspector for distribution to the Building Official and Owner
3. Mechanical and electrical components	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collect manufacturer certificates and verify compliance with ASCE7 requirements for nonstructural components • Periodic inspection during the anchorage of electrical equipment used for emergency power systems • Periodic inspection of piping systems intended to carry flammable, combustible, or highly toxic contents and their associated mechanical units. • Periodic inspection during the installation of vibration isolation systems accommodating nominal clearances of ¼ inch or less • Periodic inspection of HVAC ductwork that will contain hazardous materials
4. Seismic isolation system	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Periodic inspection of isolator units and energy dissipation devices during fabrication and installation • Oversee testing program per ASCE7 requirements
5. Structural Steel	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Testing and inspection program per AISC 341 - Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

a. The Special Inspections listed reflect North Carolina code requirements for Seismic Design Category C. The SER shall review Code sections 1705 and 1707 and adjust the Schedule of Special Inspection Services for structures of greater seismic hazard.

Main Wind-Force Resisting System(s):

Seismic-Resisting Components Subject to Continuous Special Inspections:

Seismic-Resisting Components Subject to Periodic Special Inspections:

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Owner Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Owner Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Owner will pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.
- E. Owner shall pay for all temporary electrical, water, and sewer services required for the project. Coordinate any tap fees, electrical service fees, and/or impact fees with local utility companies and local jurisdiction.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- D. Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage.

1. Describe delivery, handling, and storage provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
 2. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
- E. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify further options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate. Include the following:
1. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
 2. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
 3. Waste handling procedures.
 4. Other dust-control measures.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in 2012 NC Building Code, the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.
- B. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E 84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.
- C. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
 - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
 - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 12 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack and marker boards.
 - 3. Drinking water.
 - 4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
 - 5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
 - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
 - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
 - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction.
- C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
 - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
 - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping from existing facilities in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- E. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- F. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
 - 1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.
- G. Electric Power Service: Use existing electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
- H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
 - 2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.
- I. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line(s) for each field office.

3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.

2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Project Acceptance. Personnel remaining after Project Acceptance will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.
1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Temporary Use of Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
 2. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
- D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- E. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
 2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- G. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated at the end of this Section. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
 3. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.
- H. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings.
 - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant- protection zones.
 - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
 - 3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
 - 4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- F. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- G. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
 - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
 - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys each to Owner and Architect.
- H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- I. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- J. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.

1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- K. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

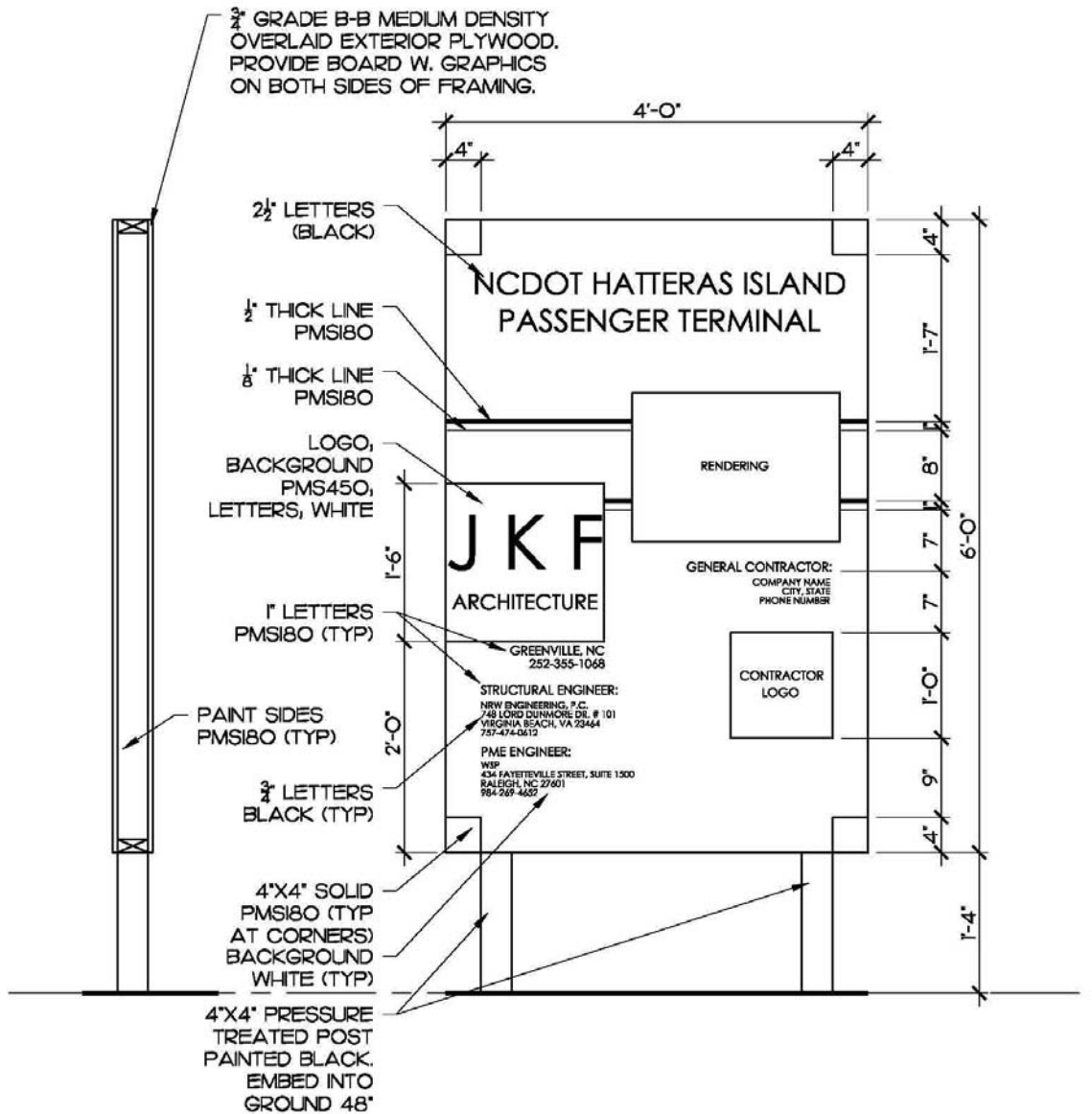
3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

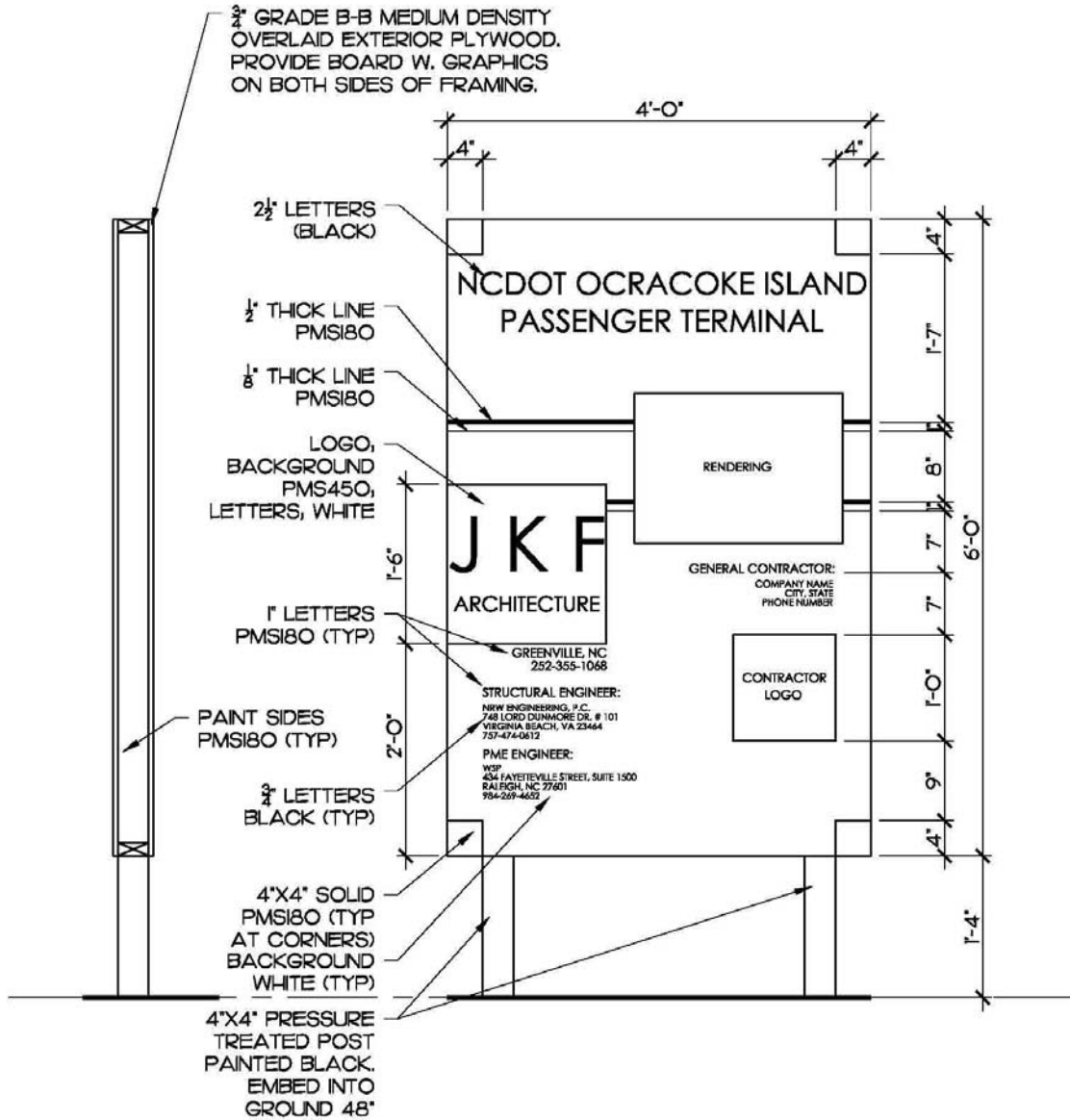
- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
- B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
 5. Do not install material that is wet.
 6. Discard, replace, or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
 7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
 2. Use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.
 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.

- a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.
- b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
- c. Remove materials that can not be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
 - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
- D. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- E. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Project Acceptance. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
 - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
 - 2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.





END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Requests: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
 - 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.

- a. Form of Approval: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- 1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
 - 2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
- 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
 - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
 - 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
 - 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
- 1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
 - 2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
 - 3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
 - 4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
 - 5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
 - 6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
 - 7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
 - 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
 - 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
 - 3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
 - 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
 - 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 - 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
 - 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
 - 6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
 - 1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - 2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - 3. Products:

- a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product.
4. Manufacturers:
- a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.
5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
- 1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
 - 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
 - 4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
 - 5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Construction layout.
 - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
 - 3. Installation of the Work.
 - 4. Cutting and patching.
 - 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
 - 6. Progress cleaning.
 - 7. Starting and adjusting.
 - 8. Protection of installed construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
 - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
 - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
 - 1. Description of the Work.
 - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
 - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
 - 4. Recommended corrections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.

1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.

1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

- C. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas.
- D. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- E. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
 - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
- F. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
 - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
 - 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
 - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Project Acceptance.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Project Acceptance.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 017300

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Project Acceptance procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
 - 5. Repair of the Work.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Pre-Final.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Per State Construction Close-out List.
- C. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- D. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.6 PRE-FINAL PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

- B. Submittals Prior to Pre-Final Inspection by Architect: Complete the following a minimum of 7 days prior to requesting Architect's Pre-Final inspection. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 3. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
 4. Contractor's statement of completion with request for designer's Pre-Final inspection
 5. Certificate of Occupancy by Local Authority Having Jurisdiction:
 6. Installer's Fire Alarm System Record of Completion (Certification) as required by NFPA 72:
 7. Installer's Sprinkler System Record of Material and Test Reports as required by:
 - a. NFPA 13-(Sprinkler Systems)
 - b. NFPA 14-(Standpipe and Hose Systems)
 - c. NFPA 20-(Centrifugal Fire Pumps)
 - d. Local Approval Letter of Sprinkler System Design
 8. Dept. of Labor Approval for Elevator.
 9. Dept. of Labor Approval for Boiler & Pressure Vessels
 10. Domestic Water Test Report and Acceptance for Use:
 11. Laboratory Hood Certification
 12. Engineer's Approval of Test and Balance Report(TAB)
 13. NEC Load Tests: Battery Powered Emergency Devices
 14. Emergency Generator Load Test
 15. Installer's Electrical Service Ground Test Report
- C. Inspection: Submit a written request for Pre-Final inspection a minimum of 7 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.
 3. A Final Inspection with State Construction will not be scheduled until the Contractor completes the punchlist items in particular all life-safety related items.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Complete all punchlist items from Pre-Final inspection.
 2. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 3. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 4. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
 5. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
 6. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 7. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.

8. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- B. Procedures Prior to Final Acceptance: Complete the following a minimum of 7 days prior to requesting State Construction inspection for determining date of Final Acceptance. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - C. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements.
 1. State Construction, the Architect, and the Owner may accept the Project and issue a Project Acceptance Form for minor items. These items are to be completed within 30 days after acceptance. Failure to complete the outstanding items will necessitate issuance of a 15 notice by the Architect, after which the Owner may initiate completion of the outstanding items and withhold any costs incurred from the Contractor's final payment request.
 2. Reinspection: If the Project is not accepted, request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
- 1.8 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES
- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties effective the day after Project Acceptance.
 - B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
 - C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
 - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
 - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
 - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
 - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
 - p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
 - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
 - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
 - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
 - 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
 - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
 - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
 - 2. Three paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.

- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at Pre-Final Inspection. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 7 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
 - 1. List of documents.
 - 2. List of systems.
 - 3. List of equipment.
 - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Table of contents.
 - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
 - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
 - 2. Name and address of Project.
 - 3. Name and address of Owner.
 - 4. Date of submittal.
 - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 - 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 - 7. Name and contact information for Architect.

8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- F. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
 - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
 - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
 5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
 - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record Specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
 - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
 - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
 - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
 - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
 - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
 - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
 - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
 - g. Actual equipment locations.
 - h. Duct size and routing.
 - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
 - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
 - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
 - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
 - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
- 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
- 1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 - 2. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Name of Contractor.

2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
- 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
 - 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
 - 4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
 - 5. Note related Change Orders and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as paper copy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
 - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing Drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- D. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
 - 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Admixtures.
 - 3. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
 - 4. Curing compounds.

5. Floor and slab treatments.
6. Bonding agents.
7. Adhesives.
8. Semirigid joint filler.
9. Joint-filler strips.
10. Repair materials.

B. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:

1. Aggregates: Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete mixtures.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1, and as follows:
1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
1. ACI 301.
 2. ACI 117.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
 2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
 - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
 - b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
 - c. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
 - d. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
 3. Overlaid Finnish birch plywood.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- D. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

- E. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
 - 1. Furnish units that leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
 - 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
 - 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, as drawn.
- C. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
 - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
 - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989/C 989M, Grade 100 or 120.
 - 4. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595/C 595M, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag or Type IP, portland-pozzolan
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33/C 33M, Class 4S coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.

- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
- F. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
- G. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
- H. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.6 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.

2.7 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
 - 1. Types I and II, nonload bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

2.8 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150/C 150M, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150/C 150M, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
 3. Slag Cement: 50 percent.
 4. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Slag Cement: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 3. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures

2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

A. Footings: Normal-weight concrete.

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.50.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.

B. Slabs-on-Grade: Normal-weight concrete.

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45.
3. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd.
4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
5. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

2.11 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.12 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.

1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd..
3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.

B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.

- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 - 1. Class B, 1/4 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- E. Construct forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 - 1. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are not acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.

- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 - 3. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
 - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
 - 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.

2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.
- C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view.

3.8 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- C. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete, and elsewhere as indicated.
 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.9 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

3.10 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:

- a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
- a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
 - b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
 - c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer.
4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- F. Concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.11 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.

3.12 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.

1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.

C. Inspections:

1. Steel reinforcement placement.
2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.

D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231/C 231M, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
 - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - b. Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
7. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
8. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
9. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
10. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
11. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.

12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
13. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Framing with dimension lumber.
 - 2. Framing with timber.
 - 3. Wood blocking and nailers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
- B. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
2. Power-driven fasteners.
3. Post-installed anchors.
4. Metal framing anchors.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
 3. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 19 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4b for items in contact with ground.
 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
 - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.

2.3 TIMBER/ LUMBER FRAMING

- A. Comply with the following requirements, according to grading rules of grading agency indicated:
 - 1. Species and Grade: Southern pine; No. 1 grade; SPIB.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 - 1. Blocking.
 - 2. Nailers.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 the following species:
 - 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather or in ground contact, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

2.6 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those of products of manufacturers listed. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors shall be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.
- B. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; structural steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
 - 1. Use for wood-preserved-treated lumber and where indicated.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 316.
 - 1. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

- D. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch-long seat and 1-1/4-inch-wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
 - 1. Thickness: 0.062 inch.
- E. Bridging: Rigid, V-section, nailless type, 0.050 inch thick, length to suit joist size and spacing.
- F. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches wide by 0.062 inch thick. Tie fits over top of rafter or truss and fastens to both sides of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
- G. Floor-to-Floor Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying floor wall studs to band joists, 1-1/4 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick by 36 inches long.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; 1-inch nominal thickness, compressible to 1/32 inch; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.
- C. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locatenailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- D. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- E. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- G. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

- H. Comply with AWP4 M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- I. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- J. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
 - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- K. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- L. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
 - 1. Comply with approved fastener patterns where applicable.
 - 2. Use common nails unless otherwise indicated. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of 2-inch nominal thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions. Fasten plates to supporting construction unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For exterior walls, provide 2-by-4-inch nominal- size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For interior partitions and walls, provide 2-by-4-inch nominal size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than 96 inches high, using members of 2-inch nominal thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.

- B. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs, except that two studs may be used for interior non-load-bearing partitions.
- C. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Support headers on jamb studs.
 - 1. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings 60 inches and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth indicated or, if not indicated, according to Table R502.5(1) or Table R502.5(2), as applicable, in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

3.4 FLOOR JOIST FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install floor joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2 inches of bearing on wood or metal. Attach floor joists as follows:
 - 1. Where supported on wood members, by toe nailing or by using metal framing anchors.
 - 2. Where framed into wood supporting members, by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers.
- B. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds 48 inches.
- C. Do not notch in middle third of joists; limit notches to one-sixth depth of joist, one-third at ends. Do not bore holes larger than one-third depth of joist; do not locate closer than 2 inches from top or bottom.
- D. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist at ends of joists unless nailed to header or band.
- E. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams, girders, or partitions not less than 4 inches or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist over supports.
- F. Provide solid blocking between joists under jamb studs for openings.
- G. Under non-load-bearing partitions, provide double joists separated by solid blocking equal to depth of studs above.
- H. Provide bridging of type indicated below, at intervals of 96 inches o.c., between joists.
 - 1. Diagonal wood bridging formed from bevel-cut, 1-by-3-inch nominal-size lumber, double-crossed and nailed at both ends to joists.
 - 2. Solid full depth bridging nailed at both ends to joists.

3.5 CEILING JOIST AND RAFTER FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Ceiling Joists: Install with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
 - 1. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate, and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide 1-by-8-inch nominal-size or 2-by-4-inch nominal-size stringers spaced 48 inches o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.

- B. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.
 - 1. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.
- C. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions if any.

3.6 TIMBER FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Install timber beams with crown edge up and provide not less than 4 inches of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports as indicated if not continuous.
- B. Install wood posts using metal anchors indicated.
- C. Treat ends of timber beams and posts exposed to weather by dipping in water-repellent preservative for 15 minutes.

3.7 STAIR FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Provide stair framing members of size, space, and configuration indicated or, if not indicated, to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Size: 2-by-12-inch nominal size, minimum.
 - 2. Material: solid lumber.
 - 3. Notching: Notch rough carriages to receive treads, risers, and supports; leave at least 3-1/2 inches of effective depth.
 - 4. Spacing: At least three framing members for each 36-inch clear width of stair.
- B. Provide stair framing with no more than 3/16-inch variation between adjacent treads and risers and no more than 3/8-inch variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061063 - EXTERIOR ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wood fences.
 - 2. Wood Framing and decking.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal in thickness and 2 inches nominal or greater in width.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.
- C. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal or greater in least dimension.
- D. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
 - 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
 - 2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
 - 3. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
 - 4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
 - 5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
 - 6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates:
 - 1. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

- B. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber grading agency for exposed wood products not marked with grade stamp.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For preservative-treated wood products, from ICC-ES.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMBER, GENERAL

- A. Comply with DOC PS 20 and with grading rules of lumber grading agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review as applicable. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
 - 1. Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency.
 - 2. For items that are exposed to view in the completed Work, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
 - 3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
 - 4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content:
 - 1. Boards: 19 percent.
 - 2. Dimension Lumber: 19 percent

2.2 LUMBER

- A. Hand select wood for freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
 - 1. Dimension Lumber Southern pine; SPIB, No. 1 grade
- B. Boards:
 - 1. Southern pine, B & B finish; SPIB.

2.3 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Pressure treat boards and dimension lumber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4b for items in contact with the ground.
- B. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Do not use chemicals containing arsenic or.

- C. Use process for boards and dimension lumber that includes water-repellent treatment.
- D. After treatment, redry boards to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- E. Mark treated wood with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
 - 1. For items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that will not be exposed or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
- F. Application: Treat all wood unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.
 - 1. Use stainless steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless-steel fasteners.
- B. Nails: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Wood Screws and Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1, ASME B18.6.1, or ICC-ES AC233.
- E. Stainless-Steel Bolts: ASTM F 593, Alloy Group 1 or 2; with ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- F. Postinstalled Anchors: Stainless-steel anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Stainless-steel bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

2.5 METAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit work to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.
- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA WCD1 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- D. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- F. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of members or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- G. Apply copper naphthenate field treatment to comply with AWWA M4, to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
- H. Securely attach exterior rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. ICC-ES AC70 for power-driven fasteners.
 - 2. "Fastening Schedule" in ICC's International Building Code.
 - 3. "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members" and "Alternate Attachments" in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
- I. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that do not fully penetrate members where opposite side is exposed to view. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

END OF SECTION 061063

SECTION 061300 - HEAVY TIMBER CONSTRUCTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes framing using timbers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Timbers: Lumber of 5 inches nominal or greater in least dimension.
- B. Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
 - 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
 - 2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
 - 3. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
 - 4. SPIB: Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (The).
 - 5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
 - 6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products and timber connectors.
 - 1. For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
 - 2. For timber connectors. Include installation instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: The contractor shall prepare detailed shop drawings of the timber trusses including timber sizes, dimensions, grades, edge treatment, surface treatment, finishes and connection details. All steel plates and brackets shall be approved by the architect prior to fabrications. Trusses shall be designed to withstand the dead, live, snow and wind loads indicated. The contractor shall have the trusses designed by a professional engineer registered in the State of North Carolina. All design calculations and design data shall be sealed and submitted to the architect for approval.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates:
 - 1. For timbers specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by ALSC's Board of Review.

2. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

- B. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber-grading agency for exposed timber not marked with grade stamp.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contractor and erector shall have not less than 5 years' experience in fabrication and erection of heavy timber framing.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Schedule delivery of materials to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIMBER

- A. Comply with DOC PS 20 and with grading rules of lumber-grading agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review as applicable.
 1. Factory mark each item of timber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 2. For exposed timber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, apply grade stamps to surfaces that are not exposed to view, or omit grade stamps and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
- B. Timber Species and Grade: Southern pine; No. 1, SPIB.
- C. Moisture Content: Provide timber that is unseasoned at time of dressing but with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of fabrication.
- D. Dressing: Provide **dressed timber (S4S)** unless otherwise indicated. Edges shall be chamfered to allow for solid bearing at steel support brackets.

2.2 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Pressure treat materials with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4b for items in contact with the ground.
- B. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.

1. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- C. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
- D. Use process that does not include water repellents or other substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
- E. After treatment, redry materials to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- F. Mark treated materials with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
1. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that is not exposed.

2.3 TIMBER CONNECTORS

- A. Timber joints shall be fabricated to produce tight fitting joints after assembly. Provisions shall be made in the joinery to allow for dimensional changes associated with timber drying shrinkage.
- B. Provide stainless-steel bolts, 3/4 inch unless otherwise indicated, complying with ASTM F 593, Alloy Group 1 or 2; provide nuts complying with ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2; and, where indicated, provide flat washers.
- C. Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:
1. Stainless-steel plate and flat bars complying with ASTM A 666, Type 316.
 2. Stainless-steel bars and shapes complying with ASTM A 276, Type 316.
 3. Stainless-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 666, Type 316.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
- B. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Camber: Fabricate horizontal members and inclined members with a slope of less than 1:1, with natural convex bow (crown) up, to provide camber.
- B. Shop fabricate members by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks, and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
- C. Fabricate connections with minimum dimensions as shown on the contract drawings.
- D. Pre-drill for fasteners and assembly of units.

- E. Where preservative-treated members are indicated, fabricate (cut, drill, surface, and sand) before treatment to greatest extent possible. Where fabrication must be done after treatment, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
- F. Coat crosscuts with end sealer.
- G. Seal Coat: After fabricating and surfacing each unit, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit except for treated wood where the treatment included a water repellent.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Erect heavy timber framing true and plumb. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
 - 1. Install horizontal and sloping members with crown edge up, and provide not less than 4 inches of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports with metal strap ties if not continuous.
 - 2. Handle and temporarily support heavy timber framing to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.
- B. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
- C. Fitting: Fit members by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing.
 - 1. Predrill for fasteners using timber connectors as templates.
 - 2. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks, and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
 - 3. Coat crosscuts with end sealer.
 - 4. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
 - a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
 - b. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
- D. Install timber connectors as indicated.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
 - 2. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged heavy timber framing if repairs are not approved by Architect.

END OF SECTION 061300

SECTION 061516 - WOOD ROOF DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes solid-sawn wood roof decking

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For preservative-treated wood products, include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Schedule delivery of wood roof decking to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings. Stack wood roof decking with surfaces that are to be exposed in the final Work protected from exposure to sunlight.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD ROOF DECKING, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.

2.2 SOLID-SAWN WOOD ROOF DECKING

- A. Standard for Solid-Sawn Wood Roof Decking: Comply with AITC 112.
- B. Roof Decking Species Southern pine.
- C. Roof Decking Nominal Size: 2 by 6.
- D. Roof Decking Grade: Dense Select Decking.

- E. Grade Stamps: Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency. Apply grade stamp to surfaces that are not exposed to view.
- F. Moisture Content: Provide wood roof decking with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- G. Face Surface: Smooth.
- H. Edge Pattern: Channel grooved.

2.3 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Pressure treat wood roof decking according to AWP A U1; Use Category UC3B.
- B. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 - 1. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use products that do not contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- C. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
- D. After treatment, redry materials to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- E. After dressing and fabricating roof decking, apply copper naphthenate according to AWP A M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than 1/16 inch.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Solid-Sawn Roof Decking: Provide fastener size and type complying with AITC 112 for thickness of deck used.
- B. Nails: Common; complying with ASTM F 1667, Type I, Style 10.
- C. Spikes: Round; complying with ASTM F 1667, Type III, Style 3.
- D. Fastener Material: Stainless Steel.
- E. Sealants: Latex, complying with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and recommended by sealant manufacturer and manufacturer of substrates for intended application.
- F. Penetrating Sealer: Clear sanding sealer complying with Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" and compatible with topcoats specified for use over it.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Shop Fabrication: Where preservative-treated roof decking is indicated, complete cutting, trimming, surfacing, and sanding before treating.
- B. Predrill roof decking for lateral spiking to adjacent units to comply with AITC 112.
- C. Seal Coat: After fabricating and surfacing roof decking, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer.

- D. Apply indicated finish materials to comply with Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" in fabrication shop.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine support framing in areas to receive wood roof decking for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of wood roof decking.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install solid-sawn wood roof decking to comply with AITC 112.
 - 1. Locate end joints for combination simple and two-span continuous lay-up.
- B. Where preservative-treated roof decking must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
 - 1. For solid-sawn roof decking, use inorganic boron (SBX).
- C. Apply joint sealant to seal roof decking at exterior walls at the following locations:
 - 1. Between roof decking and supports located at exterior walls.
 - 2. Between roof decking and exterior walls that butt against underside of roof decking.
 - 3. Between tongues and grooves of roof decking over exterior walls and supports at exterior walls.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged roof decking if repairs are not approved by Architect.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide water-resistive barrier over roof decking as the Work progresses to protect roof decking until roofing is applied.
- B. If, despite protection, roof decking becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061516

SECTION 061533 - WOOD PATIO DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wood decking.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal in thickness and 2 inches nominal or greater in width.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.
- C. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
 - 1. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products.
 - 1. For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates:
 - 1. For lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
 - 2. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
- B. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber grading agency for exposed wood products not marked with grade stamp.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Preservative-treated wood products.
2. Expansion anchors.
3. Decking fasteners.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
- B. Handle and store plastic lumber to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMBER, GENERAL

- A. Comply with DOC PS 20 and with grading rules of lumber grading agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review as applicable. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
 1. Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency.
 2. For items that are exposed to view in the completed Work, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
 3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
 4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content:
 1. Boards: 15 percent.
 2. Dimension Lumber: 15 percent.

2.2 WOOD DECKING AND STAIR TREADS

- A. Hand select wood for freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
- B. Dimension Lumber Decking and Stair Treads: No. 2 grade and the following species:
 1. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.

2.3 WOOD RAILINGS

- A. Hand select wood for freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
- B. Dimension Lumber Railing Members: Select Structural grade and the following species:
 1. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.

2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

- A. Deck and Stair Framing: Select Structural No. 2 grade and the following species:
 - 1. Southern pine; SPIB.

2.5 POSTS

- A. Dimension Lumber Posts: No. 2 grade and the following species:
 - 1. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.

2.6 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Pressure treat boards and dimension lumber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
- B. Pressure treat timber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC4a.
- C. Pressure treat poles with waterborne preservative according to AWPA U1; Use Category UC4a.
- D. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Do not use chemicals containing arsenic or chromium.
- E. Mark treated wood with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
 - 1. For items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that will not be exposed.
- F. Application: Treat all wood unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.
 - 1. Use stainless steel unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Nails: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Wood Screws and Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1, ASME B18.6.1, or ICC-ES AC233.
- E. Stainless-Steel Bolts: ASTM F 593, Alloy Group 1 or 2; with ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit work to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.
- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA WCD1 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install wood decking and stair treads with crown up (bark side down).
- D. Install plastic lumber to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Secure decking to framing with screws.
- F. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- I. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of members or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- J. Apply copper naphthenate field treatment to comply with AWPAC M4, to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
- K. Securely attach exterior rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. ICC-ES AC70 for power-driven fasteners.
 - 2. "Fastening Schedule" in ICC's International Building Code.
- L. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that do not fully penetrate members where opposite side is exposed to view. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- M. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced and with adjacent rows staggered.

3.4 ELEVATED DECK JOIST FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2 inches of bearing on wood or metal, or 3 inches on masonry. Attach floor joists where framed into wood supporting members by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers. Do not notch joists.
- B. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds 48 inches.
- C. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams or girders not less than 4 inches or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist over supports.
- D. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist at intervals of 96 inches o.c., between joists.

3.5 STAIR INSTALLATION

- A. Provide stair framing members of size, space, and configuration indicated or, if not indicated, to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Stringer Size: 2 by 12 inches nominal, minimum.
 - 2. Notching: Notch stringers to receive treads, risers, and supports; leave at least 3-1/2 inches of effective depth.
 - 3. Stringer Spacing: At least three stringers for each 36-inch clear width of stair.
- B. Treads and Risers: Secure by gluing and screwing to carriages. Countersink fastener heads, fill flush, and sand filler. Extend treads over carriages and finish with bullnose edge.

END OF SECTION 061533

SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Wall sheathing.
2. Roof sheathing.
3. Subflooring.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 2. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 1. Wood-preservative-treated plywood.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4b for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings

2.2 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Exterior sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 16/0.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch.

2.3 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Exposure 1 sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 3/4 inch].

2.4 SUBFLOORING AND UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Plywood Subflooring: Exposure 1 single-floor panels or sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 24.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 3/4 inch.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. For roof and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

- D. Screws for Fastening Sheathing to Wood Framing: ASTM C 1002.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Wood Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
 - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
 - 1. Subflooring:
 - a. Glue and nail to wood framing.
 - b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
 - 2. Wall and Roof Sheathing:

- a. Nail to wood framing. Apply a continuous bead of glue to framing members at edges of wall sheathing panels.
- b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 062013 - EXTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior wood and cellular PVC trim.
 - 2. Lumber and Plywood siding.
 - 3. Lumber and Plywood soffits.
 - 4. Exterior stairs and railings.
- B. MDO: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material.
 - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced before shipment to Project site to levels specified.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product involving selection of colors, profiles, or textures.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. For each species and cut of lumber and panel products, with half of exposed surface finished; 50 sq. in. for lumber and 8 by 10 inches for panels.
 - 2. For hardboard siding, 50 sq. in. for board types and 8 by 10 inches for panels.
 - 3. For cellular PVC trim, with half of exposed surface finished; 50 sq. in..

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Compliance Certificates:
 - 1. For lumber that is not marked with grade stamp.
 - 2. For preservative-treated wood that is not marked with treatment-quality mark.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
2. Cellular PVC trim.

C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecast weather conditions permit work to be performed and at least one coat of specified finish can be applied without exposure to rain, snow, or dampness.

1. For exterior ornamental wood columns, comply with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty for Cellular PVC Trim: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace trim that fails due to defects in manufacturing within specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, deterioration, delamination, and excessive swelling from moisture.

1. Warranty Period: 25 years from date of Project Acceptance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated.

- B. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of inspection agency, indicating grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.
 - 1. For exposed lumber, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece, or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by inspection agency.
- C. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
- D. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWA U1; Use Category UC3a.
 - 1. Kiln dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 18 percent, respectively.
 - 2. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 - 3. For exposed items indicated to receive transparent finish, do not use chemical formulations that contain colorants or that bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
 - 4. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
 - 5. Mark lumber with treatment-quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standard Committee's Board of Review.
 - a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
 - 6. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. For exposed plywood indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark back of each piece.
 - 7. Application: Where indicated All exterior lumber and plywood.

2.3 EXTERIOR TRIM

- A. Lumber Trim for Clear Finish:
 - 1. Species and Grade: Western red cedar, Clear Heart VG (Vertical Grain); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.
 - 3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
 - 4. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).
- B. Cellular PVC Trim: Extruded, expanded PVC with a small-cell microstructure, recommended by manufacturer for exterior use, made from UV- and heat-stabilized rigid material.
 - 1. Density: Not less than 31 lb/cu. ft..
 - 2. Heat Deflection Temperature: Not less than 130 deg F, according to ASTM D 648.
 - 3. Coefficient of Thermal Expansion: Not more than $4.5 \times 10(-5)$ inches/inch x deg F.
 - 4. Water Absorption: Not more than 1 percent, according to ASTM D 570.
 - 5. Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less, according to ASTM E 84.

2.4 LUMBER SIDING

- A. Provide kiln-dried lumber siding complying with DOC PS 20.
- B. Species and Grade: Clear VG (Vertical Grain) Heart western red cedar; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- C. Pattern: Bevel siding, S1S2E, actual overall dimensions of 5-1/2 by 11/16 inch, measured on the face and thick edge.

2.5 PLYWOOD SIDING

- A. Plywood Type: APA-rated siding, pressure-preservative treated, in panel sizes indicated.
 - 1. Face Grade: 303-OC.
- B. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
- C. Face Species: Western red cedar.
- D. Pattern: Texture 1-11; grooves 4 inches o.c.
- E. Surface: Smooth.

2.6 PLYWOOD SOFFITS

- A. Plywood Type: Exterior, Grade A-C.
 - 1. Face Grade: 303-OC.
- B. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
- C. Face Species: Western red cedar.
- D. Pattern: Texture 1-11; grooves 4 inches o.c.
- E. Surface: Smooth.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Exterior Finish Carpentry: Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.
 - 1. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, provide stainless-steel fasteners.
 - 2. For applications not otherwise indicated, provide stainless-steel fasteners.
- B. Wood Glue: Waterproof resorcinol glue recommended by manufacturer for exterior carpentry use.
- C. Flashing: Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing materials installed in exterior finish carpentry.
 - 1. Horizontal Joint Flashing for Panel Siding: Preformed, stainless-steel, Z-shaped flashing.

- D. Sealants: Latex, complying with ASTM C 834 Type OP, Grade NF and applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and recommended by sealant and substrate manufacturers for intended application.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Back out or kerf backs of standing and running trim wider than 5 inches, except members with ends exposed in finished work.
- B. Ease edges of lumber less than 1 inch in nominal thickness to 1/16-inch radius and edges of lumber 1 inch or more in nominal thickness to 1/8-inch radius.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Prime lumber and moldings to be painted, including both faces and edges, unless factory primed. Cut to required lengths and prime ends. Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated or finished, inadequately seasoned, or too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements.
 - 1. Do not use manufactured units with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
- B. Install exterior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
 - 1. Scribe and cut exterior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining exterior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.
 - 3. Install stairs with no more than 3/16-inch variation between adjacent treads and risers and with no more than 3/8-inch variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.
 - 4. Coordinate exterior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate exterior finish carpentry.

3.4 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Install flat-grain lumber with bark side exposed to weather.
- B. Install cellular PVC trim to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install trim with minimum number of joints as is practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches long, except where necessary.
 - 1. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
 - 2. Stagger end joints in adjacent and related members.
- D. Fit exterior joints to exclude water. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints, with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints, where necessary for alignment.
- E. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 SIDING INSTALLATION

- A. Install siding to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Horizontal Lumber Siding: Apply starter strip along bottom edge of sheathing or sill. Install first course of siding, with lower edge at least 1/8 inch below starter strip and subsequent courses lapped 1 inch over course below. Nail at each stud. Do not allow nails to penetrate more than one thickness of siding.
 - 1. Leave 1/8-inch gap at trim and corners unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, and apply sealant.
 - 2. Butt joints only over framing or blocking, nailing top and bottom on each side and staggering joints in subsequent courses.
 - 3. Install prefabricated outside corners as recommended by manufacturer of siding materials.
- C. Plywood Siding: Install panels with edges over framing or blocking. Nail at 6 inches o.c. at panel perimeter and 12 inches o.c. at intermediate supports unless manufacturer recommends closer spacing. Leave 1/16-inch gap between adjacent panels and 1/8-inch gap at perimeter, openings, and horizontal joints unless otherwise recommended by panel manufacturer.
 - 1. Seal butt joints at inside and outside corners and at trim locations.
 - 2. Install continuous metal flashing at horizontal panel joints.
 - 3. Apply battens and corner trim as indicated. Countersink nail heads, fill flush, and sand filler.
 - 4. Conceal fasteners to greatest practical extent by placing in grooves of siding pattern or by concealing with applied trim or battens as detailed. Do not nail through overlapping pieces.
- D. Flashing: Install metal flashing as indicated on Drawings and as recommended by siding manufacturer.
- E. Finish: Apply finish within two weeks of installation.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Replace exterior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements. Exterior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean exterior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
- B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 062013

SECTION 073113 - ASPHALT SHINGLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Asphalt shingles.
 - 2. Underlayment.
 - 3. Metal flashing and trim.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
 - 1. Asphalt Shingles: Full size.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For asphalt shingles to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Asphalt Shingles: 100 sq. ft. of each type, in unbroken bundles.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store roofing materials in a dry, well-ventilated location protected from weather, sunlight, and moisture according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Store underlayment rolls on end on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double stack rolls.
- C. Protect unused roofing materials from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing work is not in progress.
- D. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to prevent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace asphalt shingles that fail within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Manufacturing defects.
 - 2. Material Warranty Period: 30 years from date of Project Acceptance, prorated, with first 20 years nonprorated.
 - 3. Wind-Speed Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will resist blow-off or damage caused by wind speeds of up to 130 mph for 15 years from date of Project Acceptance.
 - 4. Workmanship Warranty Period: Two years from date of Project Acceptance.
- B. Roofing Installer's Warranty: On warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of asphalt-shingle roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Project Acceptance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Provide asphalt shingles and related roofing materials identical to those of assemblies tested for Class A fire resistance according to ASTM E 108 or UL 790 by Underwriters

Laboratories or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.2 GLASS-FIBER-REINFORCED ASPHALT SHINGLES

- A. Three-Tab-Strip, SBS-Modified Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462/D 3462M, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; with tabs regularly spaced and complying with UL 2218, Class 4.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Tamko
 - b. CertainTeed
 - c. Owens-Corning
 - d. GAF
 2. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
 3. Color and Blends: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Manufacturer's standard units to match asphalt shingles.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Granular Surfaced: ASTM D 1970/D 1970M, minimum of 40-mil-thick sheet; glass-fiber-mat-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt; mineral-granule surfaced; with release backing; cold applied.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle Residential; a division of Carlisle Construction Materials.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. GAF.
- B. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970/D 1970M, minimum of 40-mil-thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release backing; cold applied.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Atlas EPS; a Division of Atlas Roofing Corporation.
 - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
 - c. CertainTeed Roofing Corporation.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.
- B. Roofing Nails: ASTM F 1667; aluminum, stainless-steel, copper, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire shingle nails, minimum 0.120-inch-diameter, sharp-pointed, with a minimum 3/8-inch-diameter flat head and of sufficient length to penetrate 3/4 inch into solid wood decking or extend at least 1/8 inch through OSB or plywood sheathing.
 - 1. Shank: Barbed.
 - 2. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.

2.5 METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. General: Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 1. Sheet Metal: Stainless steel.
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item.
 - 1. Apron Flashings: Fabricate with lower flange a minimum of 4 inches over and 4 inches beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and 6 inches up the vertical surface.
 - 2. Drip Edges: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet with 2-inch roof-deck flange and 1-1/2-inch fascia flange with 3/8-inch drip at lower edge.
- C. Vent Pipe Flashings: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, at least 1/16 inch thick. Provide lead sleeve sized to slip over and turn down into pipe, soldered to skirt at slope of roof, and extending at least 4 inches from pipe onto roof.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing and blocking or metal clips and that installation is within flatness tolerances.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and completely anchored; and that provisions have been made for flashings and penetrations through asphalt shingles.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with underlayment manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.

- B. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install, wrinkle free, on roof deck. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install lapped in direction that sheds water. Lap sides not less than 3-1/2 inches. Lap ends not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.

3.3 METAL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal flashings and other sheet metal to comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 1. Install metal flashings according to recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual" and NRCA's "NRCA Guidelines for Asphalt Shingle Roof Systems."
- B. Apron Flashings: Extend lower flange over and beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and up the vertical surface.
- C. Rake Drip Edges: Install rake drip-edge flashings over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
- D. Eave Drip Edges: Install eave drip-edge flashings below underlayment and fasten to roof sheathing.
- E. Pipe Flashings: Form flashing around pipe penetrations and asphalt shingles. Fasten and seal to asphalt shingles as recommended by manufacturer.

3.4 ASPHALT-SHINGLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install asphalt shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions, recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual," and recommendations in NRCA's "NRCA Guidelines for Asphalt Shingle Roof Systems."
- B. Install starter strip along lowest roof edge, consisting of an asphalt-shingle strip at least 7 inches wide with self-sealing strip face up at roof edge.
 - 1. Extend asphalt shingles 1/2 inch over fasciae at eaves and rakes.
 - 2. Install starter strip along rake edge.
- C. Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with manufacturer's recommended offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
- D. Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with one-third-tab offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
- E. Install asphalt shingles by single-strip column or racking method, maintaining uniform exposure. Install full-length first course followed by cut second course, repeating alternating pattern in succeeding courses.
- F. Fasten asphalt-shingle strips with a minimum of six roofing nails located according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Where roof slope exceeds 21:12, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots after fastening with additional roofing nails.
 - 2. Where roof slope is less than 4:12, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.
 - 3. When ambient temperature during installation is below 50 deg F, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.

- G. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Maintain same exposure of cap shingles as roofing shingle exposure. Lap cap shingles at ridges to shed water away from direction of prevailing winds. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.
1. Fasten ridge cap asphalt shingles to cover ridge vent without obstructing airflow.

3.5 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS <Insert name> of <Insert address>, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("the work") on the following project:
1. Owner: <Insert name of Owner>.
 2. Address: <Insert address>.
 3. Building Name/Type: <Insert information>.
 4. Address: <Insert address>.
 5. Area of the Work: <Insert information>.
 6. Acceptance Date: <Insert date>.
 7. Warranty Period: <Insert time>.
 8. Expiration Date: <Insert date>.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant the work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of the work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain the work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to the work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
 - a. Lightning;
 - b. Peak gust wind speed exceeding 130 mph;
 - c. Fire;
 - d. Failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
 - e. Faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
 - f. Vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
 - g. Activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
 2. When the work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
 3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to the work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of the work.
 4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of the work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on

date of the alterations, but only to the extent the alterations affect the work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform the alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting the alterations, notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that the alterations would likely damage or deteriorate the work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.

5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of the change, but only to the extent the change affects the work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect the work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on the work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of the work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this **<Insert day>** day of **<Insert month>**, **<Insert year>**.

1. Authorized Signature: **<Insert signature>**.
2. Name: **<Insert name>**.
3. Title: **<Insert title>**.

END OF SECTION 073113

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
 - 2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
 - 3. Urethane joint sealants.
 - 4. Immersible joint sealants.
 - 5. Silyl-terminated polyether joint sealants.
 - 6. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
 - 7. Polysulfide joint sealants.
 - 8. Butyl joint sealants.
 - 9. Latex joint sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Project Acceptance.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Project Acceptance.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the following:
1. Architectural sealants shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 2. Sealants and sealant primers for nonporous substrates shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 3. Sealants and sealant primers for nonporous substrates shall have a VOC content of 775 g/L or less.
- C. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
- B. Silicone, S, NS, 50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T and NT.
- C. Silicone, S, P, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C 1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

2.4 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

2.5 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.

2.6 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Provide flush joint profile at all locations according to Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
 - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:

- a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - b. Perform one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
 - 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 - 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
 - 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
 - 5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:

- a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, P, 50, T, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
- 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
 - b. Joints between metal panels.
 - c. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - d. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors windows and louvers.
 - e. Control and expansion joints in ceilings.
 - f. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
- 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, P, 100/50, T, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
- 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry, walls and partitions.
 - d. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement.
- 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and elevator entrances.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - c. Around perimeter of floors, ceiling, and doors, in Clean Room, Dressing, and DCON.
 - d. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

- G. Joint-Sealant Application: Concealed mastics.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Aluminum thresholds.
 - b. Sill plates.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, P, 25, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Elevations of each door type.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
 - 7. Details of accessories.
 - 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
- C. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 1.
 - 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazed openings located within 30 feet of grade.

2.2 EXTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2; SDI A250.4, Level B.
 - 1. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch, with minimum A60coating.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
 - e. Edge Bevel: Bevel lock and hinge edges 1/8 inch in 2 inches.
 - f. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.
 - g. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
 - h. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A60coating.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
 - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.3 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:

1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches of frame height above 7 feet.

B. Material: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.

1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
 1. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
- B. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.

2.6 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.

1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with SDI A250.11.
 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
 - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
 - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
 2. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
 3. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with SDI A250.8.

3.3 CLEANING AND TOUCHUP

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

- B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 085200 - WOOD WINDOWS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes vinyl-clad wood windows.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, glazing and fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, and finishes for wood windows.
- B. Shop Drawings: For wood windows.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware, accessories, insect screens, operational clearances, and details of installation, including anchor, flashing, and sealant installation.

1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace wood windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure to meet performance requirements.
 - b. Structural failures including excessive deflection, water leakage, and air infiltration.
 - c. Faulty operation of movable sash and hardware.
 - d. Deterioration of materials and finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - e. Failure of insulating glass.
 - 2. Warranty Period:
 - a. Window: 10 years from date of Project Acceptance.
 - b. Glazing Units: 10 years from date of Project Acceptance.
 - c. Vinyl Cladding: Lifetime warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain wood windows from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 WINDOW PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for definitions and minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
 - 1. Window Certification: WDMA certified with label attached to each window.
- B. Performance Class and Grade: AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Performance Class: CW.
- C. Thermal Transmittance: NFRC 100 maximum whole-window U-factor of 0.30 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
- D. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC): NFRC 200 maximum whole-window SHGC of 0.40.
- E. Sound Transmission Class (STC): Rated for not less than 26 STC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 413.
- F. Outside-Inside Transmission Class (OITC): Rated for not less than 22 OITC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 1332.
- G. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Capable of resisting impact from windborne debris based on testing glazed windows identical to those specified, according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.3 WOOD WINDOWS

- A. Vinyl-Clad Wood Windows:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Andersen Windows.
 - b. Jeld-Wen
 - c. Pella
- B. Operating Types: Provide the following operating types in locations indicated on Drawings:
 - 1. Awning: Project out.
- C. Frames and Sashes: Fine-grained wood lumber complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440; kiln dried to a moisture content of not more than 12 percent at time of fabrication; free of visible finger

joints, blue stain, knots, pitch pockets, and surface checks larger than 1/32 inch deep by 2 inches wide; water-repellent preservative treated.

1. Exterior Finish: Vinyl-clad wood.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 2. Interior Finish: Manufacturer's standard stain-and-varnish finish.
 - a. Exposed Unfinished Wood Surfaces: Pine.
 - b. Color: Clear.
- D. Glass: Clear annealed glass, ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
1. Kind: Fully tempered.
- E. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Insulating-Glass Units: ASTM E 2190 with two lites and complying with impact-resistance requirements in "Window Performance Requirements" Article.
1. Exterior Lite: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
 - a. Tint: Gray.
 - b. Kind: Fully tempered.
 2. Interior Lite: ASTM C 1172 clear laminated glass with two plies of float glass.
 - a. Float Glass: Fully tempered.
 - b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.090 inch.
 3. Filling: Fill space between glass lites with argon.
 4. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second surface.
- F. Glazing System: Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system that produces weathertight seal.
- G. Hardware, General: Provide manufacturer's standard hardware fabricated from aluminum, stainless steel, carbon steel complying with AAMA 907, or other corrosion-resistant material compatible with adjacent materials; designed to smoothly operate, tightly close, and securely lock windows, and sized to accommodate sash weight and dimensions.
1. Exposed Hardware Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- H. Projected Window Hardware:
1. Gear-Type Rotary Operators: Complying with AAMA 901 when tested according to ASTM E 405, Method A. Provide operators that function without requiring the removal of interior screens or using screen wickets.
 - a. Type and Style: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of types and styles.
 2. Hinges: Stainless-steel hinges with stainless-steel-reinforced, sliding nylon shoes.
 3. Single-Handle Locking System: Operates positive-acting arms that pull sash into locked position. Provide one arm on sashes up to 29 inches tall and two arms on taller sashes.
 4. Limit Devices: Concealed friction adjuster, adjustable stay bar limit devices designed to restrict sash opening.

- a. Limit clear opening to 4 inches for ventilation; with custodial key release.
- 5. Operator Stud Cover: Matching operator handle finish. Provide in locations where operator handle is removed for controlled access.
- I. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Fasteners: Noncorrosive and compatible with window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
 - 1. Exposed Fasteners: Do not use exposed fasteners to greatest extent possible. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish hardware being fastened.

2.4 INSECT SCREENS

- A. General: Fabricate insect screens to integrate with window frame. Provide screen for each operable exterior sash. Screen wickets are not permitted.
 - 1. Type and Location: Full, inside for project-out sashes.
- B. Aluminum Frames: Manufacturer's standard aluminum alloy complying with SMA 1004 or SMA 1201. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped joints or corner extrusions, concealed fasteners, and removable PVC spline/anchor concealing edge of frame.
 - 1. Tubular Framing Sections and Cross Braces: Roll formed from aluminum sheet.
 - 2. Finish for Interior Screens: Baked-on organic coating in color selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Glass-Fiber Mesh Fabric: 18-by-14 or 18-by-16 mesh of PVC-coated, glass-fiber threads; woven and fused to form a fabric mesh resistant to corrosion, shrinkage, stretch, impact damage, and weather deterioration. Comply with ASTM D 3656/D 3656M.
 - 1. Mesh Color: Manufacturer's standard.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate wood windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for installing and anchoring windows.
- B. Glaze wood windows in the factory.
- C. Weather strip each operable sash to provide weathertight installation.
- D. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Allow for scribing, trimming, and fitting at Project site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify rough opening dimensions, levelness of sill plate, and operational clearances.
- C. Examine wall flashings, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-in components to ensure weathertight window installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, hardware, accessories, and other components. For installation procedures and requirements not addressed in manufacturer's written instructions, comply with installation requirements in ASTM E 2112.
- B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction to produce weathertight construction.

3.3 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND PROTECTION

- A. Adjust operating sashes and hardware for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installing windows. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
 - 1. Keep protective films and coverings in place until final cleaning.
- C. Remove and replace sashes if glass has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
- D. Protect window surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If contaminating substances do contact window surfaces, remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 085200

SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Mechanical door hardware for the following:
 - a. Swinging doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant. Coordinate door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
- C. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.
- C. Deliver keys to Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
 - b. Faulty operation of doors and door hardware.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Project Acceptance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design", ICC A117.1, and The NC Building Code.
 1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.
 2. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch high.
 3. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 90 degrees, the door will take at least 5 seconds to move to a position of 12 degrees from the latch.

2.3 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Provide products for each door that comply with requirements indicated in Part 2 and door hardware schedule.
 1. Door hardware is scheduled in Part 3.

2.4 HINGES

- A. Hinges: BHMA A156.1.

2.5 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Lock Backset: 2-3/4 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latchbolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.

1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.

D. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13;

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Corbin Russwin, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - b. Yale.
 - c. Sargent

2.6 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver. Provide cylinder from same manufacturer of locking devices.
- B. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 permanent cores; face finished to match lockset.
 1. Core Type: Interchangeable.

2.7 KEYING

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, appendix. Provide one extra key blank for each lock. [**Incorporate decisions made in keying conference.**]
 1. Keyed Alike: Key all cylinders to same change key.
- B. Keys: Nickel silver.

2.8 SURFACE CLOSERS

- A. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4; rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with adjustable sweep and latch speeds controlled by key-operated valves and forged-steel main arm. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Corbin Russwin, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - b. Norton Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - c. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.

2.9 MECHANICAL STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Wall- and Floor-Mounted Stops: BHMA A156.16.

2.10 THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hager Companies.
 - b. National Guard Products, Inc.
 - c. Pemko Manufacturing Co.

2.11 METAL PROTECTIVE TRIM UNITS

- A. Metal Protective Trim Units: BHMA A156.6; fabricated from 0.050-inch-thick stainless steel; with manufacturer's standard machine or self-tapping screw fasteners.

2.12 FABRICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rating labels and as otherwise approved by Architect.
 - 1. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.
- B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18.
- C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.

2.13 FINISHES

- A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface-applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
- B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
 - 1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
 - 2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
- D. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
 - 1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as directed by Owner.
 - 2. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- E. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior doors and other doors indicated in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Stops: Provide wall stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.

3.6 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

Door Hardware Set

Interior Wood Doors

1.5	Pr. Hinges	Hager	BB1168, 4 1/2" x 4 1/2"	
1	Closer	Corbin-Russwin	DC6210	689
1	Lockset- Privacy	Corbin-Russwin	ML2060-ASM	630
2	Kickplate, 12"x1/2"LDW			630
1 Set	Weatherstrip			
1	Threshold	Hager	520S	
1	Wall Bumper			

END OF SECTION 087100

SECTION 093013 - CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Porcelain tile.
 - 2. Waterproof membrane for thinset applications.
 - 3. Crack isolation membrane.
 - 4. Metal edge strips.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications (One of The Following):
 - 1. Installer is a five-star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.
 - 2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Foreman Certification.
 - 3. Installer employs Ceramic Tile Education Foundation Certified Installers or installers recognized by the U.S. Department of Labor as Journeyman Tile Layers.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Obtain waterproof membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
 - 1. Waterproof membrane.
 - 2. Metal edge strips.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Ceramic Tile Type: Unglazed pressed floor tile.
 - 1. Composition: Impervious natural clay or porcelain.
 - 2. Face Size: 11-13/16 by 11-13/16 inches.
 - 3. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
 - 4. Thickness: 1/4 inch.
 - 5. Face: Plain with square or cushion edges.
 - 6. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
 - 7. Glaze: Bright, opaque.
 - 8. Tile Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 9. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Fabric-Reinforced, Modified-Bituminous Sheet: Self-adhering, SBS-modified-bituminous sheet with fabric reinforcement facing; 0.040-inch nominal thickness.

2.5 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Standard Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.1.
 - 1. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.1.

2.6 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.
 - 1. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 and 212 deg F, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D 4397, 4.0 mils thick.
- C. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; stainless-steel, ASTM A 666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.
- D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

2.8 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
 - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
 - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series

"Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.

- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
 - 2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 - 3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
 - 1. Porcelain Tile: 1/4 inch.
- H. Metal Edge Strips: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.

3.4 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproofing to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile

and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.7 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Wood Subfloor:
 - 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F150 or TCNA F160; thinset mortar on waterproof membrane on exterior-glue plywood.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: 12 x 12.
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Standard Dry Set (Thinset) mortar.
 - c. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.

END OF SECTION 093013

SECTION 101423 –PANEL SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Panel signs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for signs.
 - 1. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
 - 2. Provide message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including tactile characters and Braille, and layout for each sign.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual units or sections of units showing the full range of colors available for the following:
 - 1. Polycarbonate sheet.
 - 2. Fiberglass sheet.
 - 3. Die-cut vinyl characters and graphic symbols. Include representative samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for the full range of color, texture, and sign material indicated, of sizes indicated:
 - 1. Panel Signs: Not less than 12 inches square including border.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Signs: Obtain each sign type indicated from one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when [existing and forecasted] weather conditions permit installation of signs in exterior locations to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify recess openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Fiberglass Sheet: Molded, seamless, thermosetting, glass-fiber-reinforced polyester panels with a minimum tensile strength of 15,000 psi when tested according to ASTM D 638 and with a minimum flexural strength of 30,000 psi when tested according to ASTM D 790.
- B. Polycarbonate Sheet: Of thickness indicated, manufactured by extrusion process, coated on both surfaces with abrasion-resistant coating:
 - 1. Impact Resistance: 16 ft-lbf/in. per ASTM D 256, Method A.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 9000 lbf/sq. in. per ASTM D 638.
 - 3. Flexural Modulus of Elasticity: 340,000 lbf/sq. in. per ASTM D 790.
 - 4. Heat Deflection: 265 deg F at 264 lbf/sq. in. per ASTM D 648.
 - 5. Abrasion Resistance: 1.5 percent maximum haze increase for 100 revolutions of a Taber abramer with a load of 500 g per ASTM D 1044.
- C. Applied Vinyl: Die-cut characters from vinyl film of nominal thickness of 3 mils with pressure-sensitive adhesive backing, suitable for exterior applications.

2.2 PANEL SIGNS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Advance Corporation; Braille-Tac Division.
 - 3. APCO Graphics, Inc.
 - 4. ASI-Modulex, Inc.
 - 5. Best Sign Systems Inc.
 - 6. Gemini Incorporated.
 - 7. Mohawk Sign Systems.

- B. Exterior Panel Signs: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch measured diagonally from corner to corner, complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Melamine Plastic Laminate, 0.250-inch thick.
 - 2. Edge Condition: Square cut.
 - 3. Corner Condition: Square.
 - 4. Mounting: Unframed.
 - a. Wall mounted.
 - b. Manufacturer's standard noncorroding anchors for substrates encountered.
 - 5. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- C. Panel Sign Schedule (Mohawk Sign Systems, Inc. –Basis for Design):
 - 1. PS #5: Room Identification Sign with Braille- Exterior:
 - a. Sign Size: 6"x6"x ¼".
 - b. Message Panel Material: Exterior Panel Sign, Series 300.
 - c. Text/Message: Room #.
 - d. Location: As directed in the field
 - e. Graphic: Male and/or Female pictogram on each.
 - f. Quantity: Provide one at each exterior toilet door.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard signs of configurations indicated.
 - 1. Conceal fasteners if possible; otherwise, locate fasteners where they will be inconspicuous.

2.5 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 ACRYLIC SHEET FINISHES

- A. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy and background colors, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and that are UV and water resistant for three years for application intended.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Verify that items, including anchor inserts, are sized and located to accommodate signs.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
- B. Wall-Mounted Signs: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.
 - 1. Mechanical Fasteners: Use nonremovable mechanical fasteners placed through predrilled holes. Attach signs with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate as recommended in writing by sign manufacturer.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101400

SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Public-use washroom accessories.
 - 2. Private-use bathroom accessories.
 - 3. Childcare accessories.
 - 4. Underlavatory guards.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
 - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
 - 2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use washroom accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser (Provide 1 per toilet):

1. Description: Double-roll dispenser.
2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
3. Operation: Spindleless with tension-spring controlled delivery.
4. Capacity: Designed for 4-1/2- or 5-inch- diameter tissue rolls.
5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

C. Combination Towel (Folded) Dispenser/Waste Receptacle:

1. Description: Combination unit for dispensing C-fold or multifold towels, with removable waste receptacle.
2. Mounting: Semirecessed.
 - a. Designed for nominal 4-inch wall depth.
3. Minimum Towel-Dispenser Capacity: 600 C-fold or 800 multifold paper towels.
4. Minimum Waste-Receptacle Capacity: 4 gal..
5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
6. Liner: Reusable, vinyl waste-receptacle liner.
7. Lockset: Tumbler type for towel-dispenser compartment and waste receptacle.

D. Grab Bar:

1. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
2. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.
 - a. Finish: Smooth, No. 4 finish (satin).
3. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches.
4. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.

E. Mirror Unit:

1. Frame: Stainless-steel angle, 0.05 inch thick.
 - a. Corners: Welded and ground smooth.
2. Hangers: Produce rigid, tamper- and theft-resistant installation, using method indicated below.
 - a. One-piece, galvanized-steel, wall-hanger device with spring-action locking mechanism to hold mirror unit in position with no exposed screws or bolts.
 - b. Wall bracket of galvanized steel, equipped with concealed locking devices requiring a special tool to remove.
3. Size: As indicated on Drawings.

2.2 CHILDCARE ACCESSORIES

A. Source Limitations: Obtain childcare accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Diaper-Changing Station:

1. Description: Horizontal unit that opens by folding down from stored position and with child-protection strap.

- a. Engineered to support minimum of 250-lb static load when opened.
2. Mounting: Surface mounted, with unit projecting not more than 4 inches from wall when closed.
3. Operation: By pneumatic shock-absorbing mechanism.
4. Material and Finish: HDPE with plastic-laminate insert in color selected by Architect.
5. Liner Dispenser: Built in.

2.3 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

A. Underlavatory Guard (Provide at all Lavatories):

1. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
2. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- C. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- D. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F 446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800

SECTION 316219 - TIMBER PILES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes 10" x 10" square timber piles.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Contract Sum: Base Contract Sum on number and dimensions of piles indicated from tip to cutoff, plus not less than 12 inches of overlength for cutting piles at cutoff elevations. From the data obtained as a result of driving the test piles, the Contractors Geotechnical Engineer will determine and list the calculated pile tip elevations for all piles. The Architect reserves the right to take up to 3 working days to review test pile driving records and take up to 3 additional working days to review and approve the contractor prepared schedule of pile lengths and locations.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For timber piles. Show fabrication and installation details for piles, including details of driving shoes, tips or boots, and pile butt protection.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
- B. Timber pile treatment data as follows, including chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material:
 - 1. For each type of preservative-treated timber product, include certification by treating plant stating type of preservative solution and pressure process used, net amount of preservative retained, and compliance with applicable standards.
 - 2. For waterborne-treated products, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels indicated before shipment to Project site.

- C. Pile-Driving Equipment Data: Include type, make, and rated energy range; weight of striking part of hammer; weight of drive cap; and, type, size, and properties of hammer cushion.
- D. Dynamic Pile Test Reports: Submit within three days of completing each test.
- E. Pile-Driving Records: Submit within three days of driving each pile.
- F. Certified Piles Survey: Submit within seven days of pile driving completion.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Material Certificates: For preservative-treated piles. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
 - 1. Installer's responsibility includes engaging a qualified professional engineer to prepare pile-driving records.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. General:
 - 1. Provide a minimum of 4 test piles (2 at each site). Test piles shall be of the same size and type and driven in the same manner as specified for production piles. Confirmation of the pile capacity and determination of production pile lengths shall be determined by the Contractor's Geotechnical Engineer utilizing a Pile Dynamic Analyzer (PDA) during the driving and restriking of the test piles. Keep a record for each test pile and every unusual occurrence during pile driving. Record every increase or decrease of driving resistance and bring it to the attention of the Architect. Properly located test piles may be used in the finished work. Furnish test piles 48 inches longer than production piles.
 - 2. Determination of actual length of piles is based on results of PDA pile tests.
- B. Test Pile-Driving Records: Prepare driving records for each test pile. Include same data as required for driving records of permanent piles.
- C. Test piles that comply with requirements, including location tolerances, may be used on Project.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver piles to Project site in such quantities and at such times to ensure continuity of installation. Handle and store piles at Project site to prevent breaks, cuts, abrasions, or other physical damage and as required by AWP4 M4.
 - 1. Do not drill holes or drive spikes or nails into pile below cutoff elevation.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protect structures, underground utilities, and other construction from damage caused by pile driving.
- B. Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is included elsewhere in the Project Manual for information only.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIMBER PILES

- A. Timber Piles: 10" x 10" Southern Pine No. 1.
- B. Pressure-treat round timber piles according to AWPA U1 as follows:
 - 1. Service Condition: UC4C Ground Contact, Extreme Duty
 - 2. Treatment: Waterborne preservative.

2.2 PILE ACCESSORIES

- A. Driving Shoes: Fabricate from ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-rolled carbon-steel strip to suit pile-tip dimensions, and secure to pile tip so as to not affect pile alignment during driving.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Pile Tips: Cut and shape pile tips to accept driving shoes. Fit and fasten driving shoes to pile tips according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Pile Butt: Trim pile butt and cut perpendicular to longitudinal axis of pile. Chamfer and shape butt to fit tightly to driving cap of hammer.
- C. Field-Applied Wood Preservative: Treat field cuts, holes, and other penetrations according to AWPA M4.
 - 1. Coal-tar roofing cement for treating drilled holes or sealing cutoffs shall be free of asbestos.
- D. Pile Splices: Splices are not permitted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Conditions: Do not start pile-driving operations until earthwork fills have been completed.

3.2 DRIVING EQUIPMENT

- A. Pile Hammer: Air-, steam-, hydraulic-, or diesel-powered type capable of consistently delivering adequate peak-force duration and magnitude to develop the ultimate capacity required for type and size of pile driven and character of subsurface material anticipated.

- B. Hammer Cushions and Driving Caps: Between hammer and top of pile, provide hammer cushion and steel driving cap as recommended by hammer manufacturer and as required to drive pile without damage.
- C. Leads: Use fixed, semifixed, or hanging-type pile-driver leads that hold the full length of pile firmly in position and in axial alignment with hammer.

3.3 DRIVING PILES

- A. General: Continuously drive piles to elevations or penetration resistance established by dynamic load testing of piles or to refusal (4 blows per inch). Establish and maintain axial alignment of leads and piles before and during driving.
- B. Predrilling: Provide pre-excavated holes if determine acceptable by the Contractor's Geotechnical Engineer during the test pile installation. Drill holes with a diameter less than the largest cross-section dimension of pile.
 - 1. Firmly seat pile in predrilled hole by driving with reduced energy before starting final driving.
- C. Heaved Piles: Redrive heaved piles to tip elevation at least as deep as original tip elevation with a driving resistance at least as great as original driving resistance.
- D. Driving Tolerances: Drive piles without exceeding the following tolerances, measured at pile heads:
 - 1. Location: 4 inches from location indicated after initial driving, and 6 inches after pile driving is completed.
 - 2. Plumb: Maintain 1 inch in 48 inches from vertical, or a maximum of 4 inches, measured when pile is aboveground in leads.
- E. Withdraw damaged or defective piles and piles that exceed driving tolerances, and install new piles within driving tolerances.
 - 1. Fill holes left by withdrawn piles using cohesionless soil material such as gravel, broken stone, and gravel-sand mixtures. Place and compact in lifts not exceeding 72 inches.
 - 2. Fill holes left by withdrawn piles as directed by Architect.
- F. Abandon and cut off rejected piles as directed by Architect. Cut off butts of driven piles square with pile axis and at elevations indicated.
 - 1. Cover cut-off piling surfaces with minimum three coats of preservative treatment according to AWPA M4.
- G. Pile-Driving Records: Maintain accurate driving records for each pile. Include the following data:
 - 1. Project name and number.
 - 2. Name of Contractor.
 - 3. Pile species.
 - 4. Pile location in pile group and designation of pile group.
 - 5. Sequence of driving in pile group.
 - 6. Pile dimensions.
 - 7. Ground elevation.
 - 8. Elevation of tips after driving.
 - 9. Final tip and cutoff elevations of piles after driving pile group.
 - 10. Records of re-driving.
 - 11. Type, make, model, and rated energy of hammer.

12. Weight and stroke of hammer.
13. Type of pile-driving cap used.
14. Cushion material and thickness.
15. Actual stroke and blow rate of hammer.
16. Pile-driving start and finish times, and total driving time.
17. Time, pile-tip elevation, and reason for interruptions.
18. Number of blows for every 12 inches of penetration, and number of blows per 1 inch for the last 6 inches of driving.
19. Pile deviations from location and plumb.
20. Preboring, or special procedures used.
21. Unusual occurrences during pile driving.

H. Certified Piles Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a piles survey showing final location of piles in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks.

1. Notify Architect when deviations from locations exceed allowable tolerances.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Pile foundations.

B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Dynamic Pile (PDA) Testing: High-strain dynamic monitoring shall be performed and reported according to ASTM D 4945 during initial driving and during restriking on four single piles at each site.

3.5 DISPOSAL

A. Remove withdrawn piles and cutoff sections of piles from site and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 316219

SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes Concrete Paving Including the Following:
 - 1. Walks.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Concrete Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
 - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
 - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
 - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
- B. Hot-Weather Concrete Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
 - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 - 2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap, so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
 - 3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet or less.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Deformed-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, flat sheet.
- B. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 plain-steel bars; zinc coated (galvanized) after fabrication according to ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I coating. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- C. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded-wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete specified, and as follows:
 - 1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
 - 2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
- D. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780/A 780M.

2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, gray portland cement Type I.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C.
 - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989/C 989M, Grade 100 or 120.
 - 4. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595/C 595M, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag cement.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33/C 33M, Class 4S, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.

- D. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
- E. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.

2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry or cotton mats.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
- F. White, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B, dissipating.

2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber in preformed strips.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy-Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
 - 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- D. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid, set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch.
- E. Rock Salt: Sodium chloride crystals, kiln dried, coarse gradation with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch sieve and 85 percent retained on a No. 8 sieve.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
 - 2. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that comply with or exceed requirements.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, slag cement, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
 - 1. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1-1/2 percent for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Concrete Mixtures: Normal-weight concrete.
 - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4500 psi.
 - 2. Maximum W/C Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
 - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
 - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
 - 1. For concrete batches of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
 - 2. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd..
 - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Proof-roll with a pneumatic-tired and loaded, 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded-wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Use galvanized-steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material.
- F. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch overlap of adjacent mats.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
 3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 4. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 30 feet unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
 3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
 6. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete paving:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - a. Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
 - a. Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
 3. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement dowels and joint devices.
- H. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
- I. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
 - 1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
 - 2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
 - 3. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing moisture-retaining-cover curing curing compound or a combination of these as follows:
 - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

3.9 PAVING TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
 - 1. Elevation: 3/4 inch.
 - 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Surface: Gap below 10-feet-long; unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch.
 - 4. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches of tie bar.
 - 5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch.
 - 6. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch.
 - 7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches of dowel.
 - 8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
 - 9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
 - 10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231/C 231M, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when it is 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
- G. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- I. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.11 REPAIR AND PROTECTION
- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.

- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Project Acceptance inspections.

END OF SECTION 321313

SECTION 321726 - TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cast-in-place detectable warning tiles.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of tactile warning surface, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated, showing edge condition, truncated-dome pattern, texture, color, and cross section; with fasteners and anchors.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.
- B. Weather Limitations for Adhesive Application:
 - 1. Apply adhesive only when ambient temperature is above 50 deg F and when temperature has not been below 35 deg F for 12 hours immediately before application. Do not apply when substrate is wet or contains excess moisture.
- C. Weather Limitations for Mortar and Grout:
 - 1. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 - 2. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602. Provide artificial shade and windbreaks, and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 100 deg F and higher.
 - a. When ambient temperature exceeds 100 deg F, or when wind velocity exceeds 8 mph and ambient temperature exceeds 90 deg F, set unit pavers within 1 minute of spreading setting-bed mortar.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TACTILE WARNING SURFACING, GENERAL

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for tactile warning surfaces.
 - 1. For tactile warning surfaces composed of multiple units, provide units that when installed provide consistent side-to-side and end-to-end dome spacing that complies with requirements.

2.2 DETECTABLE WARNING TILES

- A. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Accessible truncated-dome detectable warning tiles with replaceable surface configured for setting flush in new concrete walkway surfaces, with slip-resistant surface treatment on domes and field of tile.
 - 1. Material: Molded glass- and carbon-fiber-reinforced polyester.
 - 2. Color: Safety yellow.
 - 3. Shapes and Sizes:
 - a. Rectangular panel, As noted on plans.
 - 4. Dome Spacing and Configuration: 1.67-inch spacing, in manufacturer's standard pattern.
 - 5. Mounting:
 - a. Permanently embedded detectable warning tile wet-set into freshly poured concrete.
 - b. Detectable warning tile set into formed recess in concrete and adhered with mortar.
 - c. Replaceable detectable warning tile wet-set into freshly poured concrete and surface-fastened to permanently embedded anchors.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: As recommended by manufacturer for adhering tactile warning surfacing unit to pavement.
- B. Sealant: As recommended by manufacturer for sealing perimeter of tactile warning surfacing unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement is in suitable condition to begin installation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Verify that installation of tactile warning surfacing will comply with accessibility requirements upon completion.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

- A. General: Prepare substrate and install tactile warning surfacing according to manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Place tactile warning surfacing units in dimensions and orientation indicated. Comply with location requirements of AASHTO MP 12.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF DETECTABLE WARNING TILES

- A. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles:
 - 1. Set each detectable warning tile accurately and firmly in place and completely seat tile back and embedments in wet concrete by tamping or vibrating. If necessary, temporarily apply weight to tiles to ensure full contact with concrete.
 - 2. Set surface of tile flush with surrounding concrete and adjacent tiles, with variations between tiles and between concrete and tiles not exceeding plus or minus 1/8 inch from flush.
 - 3. Protect exposed surfaces of installed tiles from contact with wet concrete. Complete finishing of concrete paving surrounding tiles. Remove concrete from tile surfaces.
 - 4. Clean tiles using methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace tactile warning surfacing that is broken or damaged or does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect. Replace using tactile warning surfacing installation methods acceptable to Architect.
- B. Protect tactile warning surfacing from damage and maintain free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material.

END OF SECTION 321726



April 13, 2017

Mr. Tim Hayes, P.E.
WSP / Parsons Brinckerhoff
434 Fayetteville Street, Suite 1500
Raleigh, North Carolina 27601

Reference: **REPORT OF SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION**
 NCDOT Passenger Terminals and Parking Lots
 Hatteras and Ocracoke Islands, North Carolina
 ESP Project No. E4A-FN65.300

Dear Mr. Hayes:

ESP Associates, P.A. (ESP) has completed the subsurface exploration for the proposed passenger terminals on Hatteras and Ocracoke Islands, North Carolina. This exploration was performed in general accordance with our Proposal No. E4A-17028, dated February 14, 2017. Authorization to proceed with this study was provided by written execution of our proposal by Mr. Brock Laforty with WSP/Parsons Brinckerhoff.

The purpose of the exploration was to evaluate the general subsurface conditions within the proposed building and pavement areas with regard to the design and construction of the pile foundation and pavement systems. This report presents our findings, conclusions and recommendations for foundation design, as well as construction considerations for the proposed pile foundations and paved areas.

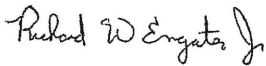
ESP appreciates the opportunity to assist you during this phase of the project. If you should have any questions concerning this report, or if we may be of further assistance, please contact us.

Sincerely,

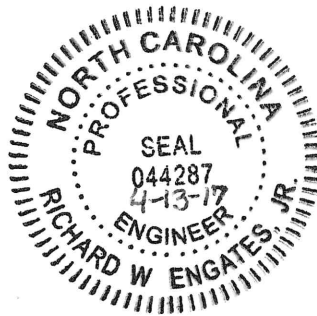
ESP Associates, P.A.



Benjamin R. Long, EI
Project Manager



Richard W. Engates Jr., PE
N.C. Registration No. 44287



BRL/RWE/db

Copies Submitted: (3)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	SITE AND PROJECT DESCRIPTION	1
1.2	PURPOSE OF SERVICES	1
2.0	EXPLORATION PROCEDURES	2
2.1	FIELD	2
2.2	LABORATORY	3
3.0	SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS	4
3.1	PHYSIOGRAPHY AND AREA GEOLOGY	4
3.2	SUBSURFACE	4
3.3	SUBSURFACE WATER	6
4.0	CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS	6
4.1	GENERAL	6
4.2	SITE DEVELOPMENT	6
4.3	EXISTING FILL	7
4.4	FOUNDATION SUPPORT	8
4.5	FLOOR SLABS	10
4.6	SEISMIC CLASS	11
4.7	PAVEMENT AREAS	11
4.8	TEMPORARY DEWATERING	12
4.9	DRAINAGE	12
5.0	CONSTRUCTION CONSIDERATIONS	13
5.1	EXISTING UTILITIES	13
5.2	SITE PREPARATION	13
5.3	EFFECTS OF CONSTRUCTION	14
6.0	LIMITATIONS OF REPORT	15

APPENDIX

FIELD EXPLORATION PROCEDURES
BORING LOCATION PLAN
LEGEND TO SOIL CLASSIFICATION AND SYMBOLS
GEOTECHNICAL BORING REPORT BORE LOGS (B-1 THROUGH B-6)
SEISMIC REPORT FIGURES
PILE BEARING CAPACITY FIGURES
TABLES OF FRICTION ANGLES
LABORATORY TEST RESULTS

INTRODUCTION

1.1 SITE AND PROJECT DESCRIPTION

The sites are located on Hatteras Island and Ocracoke Island in North Carolina. The initial site plans are for the construction of covered passenger shelters adjacent to their respective existing Visitor's Centers. Each Passenger Ferry Terminal Shelter will be an open-aired, approximately 1,500 square feet structure with a 500 square foot veranda. The shelters will have a concrete slab-on-grade floor with timber framing. The structure foundations are assumed to be timber piles. The Hatteras terminal will have two parking lot areas along Coast Guard Road within walking distance of the shelter.

The location of the proposed Hatteras shelter is paved and located between the ferry loading area and Visitor's Center. The parking areas will be located behind the Visitor's Center and Maintenance building. The proposed Ocracoke shelter will be located between the Visitor's Center and Irvin Garrish Highway.

1.2 PURPOSE OF SERVICES

The purpose of the exploration was to evaluate the general subsurface conditions within the proposed building and pavement areas with regard to the design and construction of the pile foundation and pavement systems. This report presents our findings, conclusions and recommendations for foundation design, as well as construction considerations for the proposed pile foundations and paved areas. This report also contains a brief description of the field and laboratory testing procedures performed for this study and a discussion of the soil conditions encountered at the site.

2.0 EXPLORATION PROCEDURES

2.1 FIELD

Five (5) soil test borings (Borings B-1 through B-3, B-5 and B-6) and one (1) hand auger boring (Boring B-4) supplemented with Dynamic Cone Penetrometer (DCP) Testing were performed at the approximate locations shown on the attached “Boring Location Plan,” Figure 1. The borings were located in the field by a representative from our office using the Boring Location Map provided by Mr. Tim Hayes with WSP/Parsons Brinckerhoff sent via email on January 18 (Hatteras) and February 6, 2017 (Ocracoke). Existing buildings were used as references for measuring distances and approximating right angles. The soil test borings were extended to depths ranging between 5 and 40 feet below the existing ground surface using a 4-wheel drive, truck mounted CME 45 drill rig. Mud rotary drilling was used to advance the solid stem auger borings into the ground. The hand auger boring (Boring B-4) was manually advanced to a depth of approximately 5 feet below the existing ground surface.

Standard Penetration Tests were performed at designated intervals in the soil test borings (Borings B-1 through B-3, B-5 and B-6) in general accordance with ASTM D 1586 in order to obtain data for estimating soil strength and consistency. In conjunction with the penetration testing, split-spoon soil samples were recovered for soil classification and potential laboratory testing. Water level measurements were attempted at the termination of drilling.

The DCP test procedure used during our evaluation of Boring B-4 is as follows. The cone point of the penetrometer is first seated into the bearing material to embed the point. The cone point is driven three 1-3/4 inch intervals using a 15 pound weight falling 20 inches. The penetrometer test result is the number of blows required to drive the cone point 1-3/4-inches. The penetrometer test result is similar to the Standard Penetration Resistance (N-value), as defined by ASTM D 1586. When properly evaluated, the penetrometer test results provide an index for estimating soil strength and relative density.

While in the field, a representative of the geotechnical engineer visually examined each sample to evaluate the type of soil encountered, soil plasticity, moisture condition, organic content, presence of lenses and seams, colors and apparent geological origin. The results of the visual soil classifications for the borings, as well as field test results, are presented on the individual “Geotechnical Boring Report Bore Log,” included in the Appendix. Similar soils were grouped into strata on the logs. The strata lines represent approximate boundaries between the soil types; however, the actual transition between soil types in the field may be gradual in both the horizontal and vertical directions.

While coordinating with the Parks and Recreation Department for access to the Ocracoke Ferry Terminal site, it was discovered that it was a historic location. Because of this, an archaeologist retained by WSP/Parsons Brinckerhoff was present during these borings to assess any cultural material discovered.

Shear Wave Velocity Testing

ESP collected surface wave seismic data at the sites and analyzed the data to provide an approximate shear wave velocity distribution of the subsurface. The purpose of the study was to develop a shear wave velocity model to determine the Seismic Site Class for each specific site, as per the 2015 North Carolina State Building Code (the 2012 International Building Code as modified by North Carolina), which references the seismic site class requirements of ASCE 7-10.

The surface wave seismic data was collected at the sites along an approximate 115-foot long alignment oriented approximately northwest-southeast near the center of the site on Hatteras Island and north to south along the center of the site at Ocracoke Island. The distance between the source location and the first geophone was 25 feet for the record selected for processing. The selected record had 15 stacked blows with a 20-pound sledgehammer.

2.2 LABORATORY

Select samples of the on-site soils obtained during the field testing program were tested in the laboratory. Tests performed included grain size distribution, Standard Proctor compaction, and an organic content test. The limited testing program was designed to determine selected engineering properties of the on-site soils relative to their use for the project. The results of the soil tests performed for this study, along with a brief description of the laboratory procedures used, are presented in the Appendix.

3.0 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

3.1 PHYSIOGRAPHY AND AREA GEOLOGY

The referenced properties are located on Hatteras and Ocracoke Islands in North Carolina which is in the Coastal Plain Physiographic Province. The Coastal Plain Physiographic Province is comprised of interbedded silts, sands and clays deposited by marine or fluvial action. The virgin soils encountered in this area are the product of surficial and quaternary deposits. In areas not altered by erosion or disturbed by the activities of man, the typical soil profile consists of coarse to fine sands to silty sands.

3.2 SUBSURFACE

The subsurface conditions as indicated by the borings generally consist of topsoil/grassmat underlain by coastal plain deposits. The generalized subsurface conditions at the site are described below. For more detailed soil descriptions and stratifications at a particular boring location, the attached "Geotechnical Boring Report Bore Log" should be reviewed.

Surface (Hatteras): An approximately 2 inch thick layer of asphalt underlain by approximately 4 inches of aggregate base course (ABC) stone was encountered at the surface of Borings B-1 and

B-2. A topsoil/grassmat layer approximately 2 to 3 inches thick was encountered at the surface in Borings B-3 through B-4.

Surface (Ocracoke): A topsoil/grassmat layer approximately 2 to 3 inches thick was encountered at the surface in Borings B-5 through B-6.

Fill (Hatteras): Underlying the surface material in Boring B-3, fill materials were encountered. The fill material consisted of loose, tan to brown, silty sand. Standard Penetration Resistances (N-values) ranged from 5 to 9 blows per foot (bpf). Fill depths were approximately 4 feet below grade.

Fill (Ocracoke): Underlying the surface material in Borings B-5 and B-6, fill materials were encountered. The fill material consisted of loose to medium dense, tan to brown, silty sand. Standard Penetration Resistances (N-values) ranged from 3 to 17 blows per foot (bpf). Fill depths were approximately 4 feet below grade.

Coastal Plain Deposits: Underlying the surface material in Borings B-1 through B-6, coastal plain deposits were encountered. The soils encountered generally consist of loose to medium dense sand and silty sand. Portions of the sand materials contained interbedded clayey silt. Organic material was encountered within the Coastal Plain Deposits in Boring B-4 at a depth of approximately 4 feet below the existing grade in the proposed parking area. The organic material consisted of black clayey material with an anaerobic odor. Standard Penetration Resistances (N-values) in the coastal plain deposits ranged from 3 to 57 blows per foot (bpf). The soil test borings were terminated within the coastal plain deposits at depths ranging from approximately 25 feet to 40 feet below the existing ground surface. The hand auger boring (Boring B-4) was terminated in the coastal plain deposits at a depth of approximately 5 feet below the existing ground surface.

3.3 SUBSURFACE WATER

Water was encountered during drilling at depths ranging between approximately 1.8 and 2.6 feet below the existing ground surface in Borings B-1 through B-6. All borings were terminated below the water table. For safety reasons, the boreholes were backfilled upon completion. Hole cave-in depths ranged between approximately 2 and 4 feet below the existing ground surface.

Subsurface water levels tend to fluctuate with seasonal and climatic variations, as well as with some types of construction operations. Therefore, water may be encountered during construction at depths not indicated during this study.

4.0 CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

4.1 GENERAL

Our conclusions and recommendations are based on the project information previously discussed and on the data obtained from the field and laboratory testing program. If the structural loading, geometry or proposed building locations are changed or significantly differ from those discussed, or if conditions are encountered during construction that differ from those encountered by the borings, ESP requests the opportunity to review our recommendations based on the new information and make any necessary changes.

4.2 SITE DEVELOPMENT

The results of the field testing program and analyses indicate the sites majority of the property appears to be suitable for constructing lightly to moderately loaded structures, provided the following measures are considered.

- A) The results from Borings B-4 through B-6 indicates that lower consistency coastal plains deposits (soils exhibiting N-values less than 6 bpf) are present at the sites. The near surface N-values obtained in the borings generally ranged from 3 to 21 bpf and generally extended to approximately 5 feet below the existing ground surface. If these soils are present near the surface in structural and pavement areas, some undercutting and/or reworking of these materials will be required.
- B) The results from Borings B-3, B-5, and B-6 indicate existing fill soils from prior construction. Please refer to Section 4.3 for additional information.

4.3 EXISTING FILL

Hatteras Site

Results from the soil test borings performed at the site indicate that fill soils are present in Boring B-3. The fill extends to a depth of approximately 4.5 feet below the existing ground surface. Based on our visual observations of the split-spoon samples recovered and the our field observations, the fill encountered in the soil test borings appeared to contain concentrated organics, debris and other detritus materials. Boring B-4, located behind the Maintenance Building, contains a layer of highly concentrated organics with an anaerobic odor was noted from depths ranging from approximately 3.9 to 5.4 feet below the existing ground surface. Based on our understanding of anticipated pavement ESAL loads, design grades and the composition of the organic layer encountered, it is not anticipated to adversely affect the proposed construction. The soil subgrade may require the installation of geotextiles to stabilize the parking area.

Based on visual observations of the ground surface and Boring B-3, it appears that the fill has been placed in the proposed Hatteras parking lot behind the visitors center. The layer encountered at this location contains sand, gravel, and a piping system for a leach field. The results of the Loss on Ignition test of a sample obtained from this location indicated an approximately 0.65% organic content. It is recommended that the piping system and unsuitable fill be removed prior to construction.

Ocracoke Site

Results from the soil test borings performed at the site indicate that fill soils are present in Borings B-5 and B-6. The fill extends to depths varying between approximately 0.5 and 3 feet below the existing ground surface. Based on our visual observations of the split-spoon samples recovered and the our field observations, the fill encountered in the soil test borings consisted of sand and various construction debris such as bricks, nails and wood pieces. Encountered construction debris was retained by the archeologist for analysis.

Concentrated organics, debris and other deleterious materials were observed in the soil test borings performed by ESP Associates. However, due to the limited testing performed and the wide spacing of the borings, the possibility of additional deleterious inclusions and variable density material in or under the existing fill cannot be completely ruled out. Fill which contains wood fragments, trash, organics, voids or soft lenses, could result in excessive causing building distress. Also, the presence of the existing fill beneath pavement areas presents the risk of increased settlement and subsequently possible increased long term maintenance of the pavement areas. If the owner is not willing to accept the risk then the existing fill should be removed and replaced with compacted suitable structural fill.

4.4 FOUNDATION SUPPORT

For satisfactory performance, the foundation for any structure must satisfy three independent design criteria. First, it must have an acceptable factor of safety against bearing failure of the foundation soils under the maximum design loads. Second, the settlement of the foundations due to consolidation of the underlying soils should be within tolerable limits for the structures. Third, acceptable uplift capacity must be met.

Proposed plans called for the use of 10 x 10 inch square timber piles to be used for the foundation and columns of the shelters. Based on the design criteria provided by Ms. Lisa McGurty, the

structural engineer with NRW Engineering in an email to Mr. Benjamin Long with ESP on March 21, 2017, we understand that the piles should be designed utilizing a factor of safety of 2.5 for the following allowable loads:

- 12 kips of compression;
- 4.5 kips of uplift; and
- 3.5 kips of lateral load.

The results of our analyses indicated that uplift would be the controlling design factor. Uplift was calculated based on the FHWA recommendation of assuming the uplift load is 1/3 of the shaft resistance. To achieve the allowable compression and uplift loads provided, we recommend the tip elevation of the timber piles be at least 14 feet below the design ground surface elevation at the Hatteras site and 16 feet at the Ocracoke site. We also recommend that each piling be treated with creosote in accordance with AWWA C-3 specifications.

We recommend that the timber piles be driven to a dynamic driving resistance required for a 30 kip design capacity as determined by the provided ultimate bearing capacity of 12 kips and a factor of safety of 2.5, or to practical refusal, whichever comes first. It is essential that driving be terminated immediately if refusal (i.e., four blows per inch or 48 blows per foot) is reached to prevent damage to the piles.

A wave equation analysis should be performed for the piles, once the driving equipment has been selected. This would help to determine when adequate penetration and pile capacity is achieved in the field. A wave equation analysis would also assess the pile drivability with the selected equipment and would help to prevent pile damage due to overdriving.

The hammer size, operating efficiency and cushion properties should be provided by the contractor. The pile driving hammer should have a rated energy of at least 15,000 foot-pounds per blow. The size and type of the pile hammer should be able to deliver consistently effective dynamic energy, suitable to the piles to be driven and to the subgrade material into which they are to be driven. The pile hammer shall be in sound mechanical condition and be operated at the manufacturer's

rated speed and pressure. Pile spacing measured center-to-center should not be less than three times the pile diameter.

We recommend that driving be monitored by a geotechnical engineer or his qualified representative. This should be done to keep driving records and determine that the piles have been driven to adequate resistance in the appropriate strata. We also recommend that the piles be monitored for heave due to driving of adjacent piles. Should heave occur, the pile should be re-driven to its original depth.

Lateral pile analyses were beyond our scope of services for this project. If requested, ESP can provide these services under separate contract.

4.5 FLOOR SLABS

The slab-on-grade floor system can be adequately supported on the coastal plains deposits or newly compacted fill, provided the site preparation and fill placement procedures outlined in this report are implemented. However, as noted in Section 4.1, lower consistency soils were encountered at portions of the sites and as noted in Section 4.2, existing fill soils were encountered at portions of the sites. Depending on final grades, and the Owner's risk tolerance, some undercutting or reworking of these soils may be required to obtain suitable support for slab placement. A thorough evaluation by the geotechnical engineer's representative should be performed during construction to aid in determining the extent of these materials and the appropriate repair method.

Immediately prior to constructing the floor slabs, we recommend the areas be evaluated to detect unstable and/or unsuitable areas that may have been exposed to wet weather or construction traffic. The evaluation may consist of performing field density testing, DCP testing, proofrolling and/or hand probing with a steel probe rod. The evaluation should be performed by a representative of the geotechnical engineer. Areas that are found to be unstable and/or unsuitable should be undercut and replaced with adequately compacted structural fill.

4.6 SEISMIC CLASS

Ocracoke Island

The results of our MASW testing at the site indicate the “average” shear wave velocity for the upper 100 feet is approximately 923 feet per second (ft/s) for the location tested. Based on our review of the 2012 International Building Code, with reference to Table 20.3-1 of ASCE 7-10, the site falls within the range of $V_{S(100)}$ between 600 and 1200 ft/s and is therefore identified as a **Site Class “D”**

Please reference the “Surface Wave Seismic Processing,” Figure 4 and “Shear Wave Velocity Model,” Figure 5 in the Appendix for more detailed information regarding our MASW testing.

Hatteras Island

The results of our MASW testing at the site indicate the “average” shear wave velocity for the upper 100 feet is approximately 1,089 feet per second (ft/s) for the location tested. Based on our review of the 2012 International Building Code, with reference to Table 20.3-1 of ASCE 7-10, the site falls within the range of $V_{S(100)}$ between 600 and 1200 ft/s and is therefore identified as a **Site Class “D”**

Please reference the “Surface Wave Seismic Processing,” Figure 8 and “Shear Wave Velocity Model,” Figure 9 in the Appendix for more detailed information regarding our MASW testing.

4.7 PAVEMENT AREAS

We recommend that special care be given to providing adequate drainage away from pavement areas to reduce infiltration of surface water to the base course and subgrade materials in these areas. If these materials are allowed to become saturated during the life of the pavement section, then there will be a strength reduction of the materials that could result in a reduced life of the pavement section. It is recommended that areas with unsuitable existing fill and soils with concentrated organics in the near surface area be removed and backfilled with acceptable material. All water should be routed away from the pavement areas and adequate slopes provided to

maintain drainage off site. Pavement areas should be proofrolled prior to placing structural fill and/or base course. Proofrolling procedures are outlined in subsequent sections of this report.

4.8 TEMPORARY DEWATERING

Based on existing ground surface elevations, groundwater levels encountered at the time of drilling and proposed subgrade elevations, we anticipate that dewatering will be required at the site. We expect that dewatering could be adequately handled with pumping from sumps excavated at least 3 feet below the bottom of the excavations. Pumping from the sumps should be maintained until fill placement in the excavation is a minimum of 3 feet above the water level. At no time should pumping be performed directly beneath the exposed subgrade elevation since this could result in disturbance of the bearing materials and a loss of soil strength and increased settlement.

4.9 DRAINAGE

Soil strength and settlement potential is highly dependent upon the moisture condition of the supportive soil. Soil characteristics can change dramatically when moisture conditions change. As such, building pads, roadways, structures and surrounding grades should be properly designed and constructed to properly control water (surface and subsurface). Building pads should be designed to shed surface water prior to building construction. Grades surrounding structures should be adequately sloped away from the structure to promote positive drainage and prevent water from ponding near or against the structure. Swales and/or storm drainage structures should be constructed to collect and remove all surface water run-off. All roof drain downspouts should be connected to drain leaders that are properly daylighted or connected to storm drainage structures such that water is removed from structural areas. Roof drain lines and foundation drain lines should always remain independent of each other. Any subsurface water that may rise near structural grades should be controlled by adequately constructed subsurface drainage mechanisms.

5.0 CONSTRUCTION CONSIDERATIONS

5.1 EXISTING UTILITIES

Based on a review of the site plans provided to us and our visual observations during the subsurface exploration, we understand that several underground utility lines are present within the proposed Shelter and parking lots at The Hatteras Terminal location. An existing power line is located near B-2 running from the Ferry Control Building to the loading docks and near B-4 in the southern portion of the property. An existing leach field was encountered at Boring B-3. At the time of our field services, the USCG informed us that the leach field was located approximately 3 to 4 feet below the existing ground surface with the center pipe running parallel to the docks. It was further indicated that the center pipe could also be surrounded by approximately 1.5 to 3 feet of gravel on each side. It is recommended that the entire leach system be removed along with any areas containing concentrated organic material.

5.2 SITE PREPARATION

The entire buildings and pavement areas should be stripped of all topsoil, trash, debris and other organic materials to a minimum of 10 feet beyond the structural and 5 feet beyond the pavement limits. Upon completion of the stripping operations, the exposed subgrade in areas to receive fill should be proofrolled with a loaded dump truck or similar pneumatic tired vehicle (minimum loaded weight of 20 tons) under the observation of a representative of the geotechnical engineer. The proofrolling procedures should consist of complete passes of the exposed areas, with half of the passes being in a direction perpendicular to the preceding ones. After excavation of the site has been completed, the exposed subgrade in cut areas should also be proofrolled as previously described. Any areas which deflect, rut or pump excessively during proofrolling or fail to improve sufficiently after successive passes should be undercut to suitable soils and replaced with structural fill.

Fill was encountered in Borings B-3, B-5 and B-6. The depth of the fill varied between approximately 1 to 4.5 feet below the existing ground surface. Portions of the soil fill observed contained concentrated organics and/or deleterious materials. In addition, some of the near surface Standard Penetration Tests performed in the fill indicate that these soils may not be suitable for slab-on-grade and/or pavement support without remediation. Unsuitable soils may be encountered between the borings during site grading or excavation for foundations, that were not encountered in the borings. Some undercutting of the soft near surface soils and/or fill materials within the upper 3 feet of subgrade should be anticipated. The extent of the undercut required should be evaluated in the field by an experienced representative of the geotechnical engineer while monitoring construction activity. The evaluation should consist of a comprehensive proofrolling program and thorough field evaluation during construction. After the proofrolling operation has been completed and approved, final site grading should proceed immediately. If construction progresses during wet weather, the proofrolling operation should be repeated with at least one pass in each direction immediately prior to placing base course in the parking areas. If unstable conditions are exposed during this operation, then undercutting should be performed.

5.3 EFFECTS OF CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Several aspects of construction at this site could adversely affect the adjacent streets, utilities and nearby facilities. Therefore, proper design and special care during construction will be needed to protect the adjoining properties. These items are discussed below.

Pile driving and other construction activities can generate vibrations that travel off-site. These vibrations can cause damage to adjacent structures if not properly controlled. Care must be taken to prevent damage of newly placed structures, especially fresh concrete. We recommend that vibration monitoring be performed for structures located nearby during the construction activities that generate a large amount of vibration. This will reduce the potential for large magnitude vibrations and subsequent damage claims.

General site dewatering can sometimes cause settlement of adjacent structures due to an increase in effective stresses which can consolidate soils. Based on the available data, we anticipate that this will generally not be a problem at this site. However, pumping of fine soil particles due to improper dewatering techniques can result in unwanted subsidence. Therefore, proper dewatering systems, if required, should be implemented to reduce these effects.

6.0 LIMITATIONS OF REPORT

This report has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practice with regard to the specific conditions and requirements of this site. The conclusions and recommendations contained in this report were based on the applicable standards of our practice in this geographic area at the time this report was prepared. No other warranty, expressed or implied, is made.

The analysis and recommendations submitted herein are based, in part, upon the data obtained from the subsurface exploration. The nature and extent of variations between the borings will not be known until construction is underway. If variations appear evident, then we request the opportunity to re-evaluate the recommendations of this report. In the event that any changes in the nature, design, or location of the structures are planned, the conclusions and recommendations contained in this report will not be considered valid unless the changes are reviewed and conclusions modified or verified in writing by ESP.

In order to verify that earthwork and foundation recommendations are properly interpreted and implemented, we recommend that ESP be provided the opportunity to review the final plans and specifications. Any concerns observed will be brought to our client's attention in writing.

FIELD EXPLORATION PROCEDURES

Soil Test Boring: Five (5) soil test borings (B-1 through B-3, B-5 and B-6) were drilled at the approximate locations shown on the attached Boring Location Plan. Soil sampling and penetration testing were performed in accordance with ASTM D 1586.

The borings were advanced with hollow-stem augers and, at standard intervals, soil samples were obtained with a standard 1.4-inch I.D., 2-inch O.D., split-tube sampler. The sampler was first seated six (6) inches to penetrate any loose cuttings, then driven an additional foot with blows of a 140-pound hammer falling 30 inches. The number of hammer blows is designated the “Standard Penetration Resistance.” When properly evaluated, the Standard Penetration Resistances provide an index to soil strength, relative density, and ability to support foundations.

Select portions of each soil sample were placed in sealed containers and taken to our office. The samples were examined by a representative of the geotechnical engineer for classification. Test Boring Records are attached showing the soil descriptions and Standard Penetration Resistances.

Auger Boring: One (1) hand auger boring (B-4) was performed at the approximate location shown on the attached Boring Location Plan, Figure 2. The boring was advanced by manually twisting an auger into the ground. The soils encountered were identified, in the field, from cuttings brought to the surface by the drilling process. Auger boring records are attached showing the soil descriptions.

Penetrometer Test: A portable Dynamic Cone Penetrometer was used to estimate the relative density of the existing soils as encountered in Boring B-4 and as outlined in the Sowers and Hedges paper “Dynamic Cone for Shallow In-Situ Penetration Testing.” The cone point is first seated two (2) inches to insure that the cone is completely embedded, then the cone point is driven 1-3/4 inches using a 15-pound ring weight hammer falling 20 inches. The number of blows required to drive the cone point 1-3/4 inches is recorded. The cone point is then driven two additional 1-3/4 inch intervals and the number of blows is recorded. The penetrometer reading is defined as the number of blows required to drive the cone point 1-3/4 inches. The penetrometer reading is similar to the Standard Penetration Resistance, or “N” value, as defined in ASTM D 1586.

Shear Wave Testing: The surface wave seismic data was collected at each site across the approximate center of the site. The distance between the source location and the first geophone was 25 feet for the record selected for processing.

The shear wave testing was performed using the active Multi-channel Analysis of Surface Waves (MASW) method. Surface wave seismic data were collected using a one line (spread) consisting of 24 8-Hz vertical geophones spaced 5 feet apart for a total spread length of 115 feet. The geophones were connected by a seismic cable to a laptop-controlled seismograph (Geometrics Geode). The energy source was a 20-pound sledgehammer impacting an aluminum plate offset from one end of the spread. Multiple blows of the sledgehammer were added together (stacked) to increase the signal-to-noise ratio. Several seismic records were collected using various number of stacks and/or different offsets. The field geophysicist reviewed the data in the field for quality

control. During data analysis, a seismic record with comparatively higher amplitude and wider frequency range of the surface wave energy was selected for processing.

The seismic data was analyzed using the program Surfseis, version 3.0, produced by the Kansas Geological Survey. The processing steps included assigning geometry, converting the seismic time-series data to the frequency domain, selecting the observed frequency/velocity distribution (observed dispersion curve), and performing an inversion to produce a shear wave velocity model that matched the observed dispersion curve.

The layered velocity model was utilized to calculate the “average” shear wave velocity for the upper 100 feet of the subsurface at this site, using the equation $V_{S(100)} = 100 \text{ feet} / \sum (d_i/v_i)$, where d_i and v_i are the individual layer thicknesses and velocities for the upper 100 feet of the model.

LABORATORY PROCEDURES

Grain Size Test: Grain size tests were performed to determine the particle size and distribution of the samples tested. The grain size distribution of soils coarser than a No. 200 sieve was determined by passing the samples through a set of nested sieves. The soil particles passing the No. 200 sieve were suspended in solution and the grain size distribution determined from the rate of settlement. The results are presented on the attached Grain Size Distribution Sheets.

Soil Plasticity Tests (Atterberg Limits Test): Select samples were identified for Atterberg Limits testing to determine the soil's plasticity characteristics. The Plasticity Index (PI) is representative of this characteristic and is determined utilizing the Liquid Limit (LL) and the Plastic Limit (PL). The Liquid Limit is the moisture content at which the soil will flow as a heavy viscous fluid and is determined in accordance with ASTM D 4318. The Plastic Limit is the moisture content at which the soil transitions between the plastic and semi-solid states and is determined in accordance with ASTM D 4318. The data obtained is presented on the attached Summary of Laboratory Test Data sheet.

Standard Proctor Compaction Test: Select samples of the on-site were obtained from auger cuttings to determine their suitability as fill material. Standard Proctor Compaction Tests (ASTM D 698) were performed on these soils to determine their compaction characteristics including maximum dry density and optimum moisture content. The test results are presented on the attached Moisture-Density Relationship Sheets included in the Appendix.

Organic Content of Soils: A select sample was identified for Organic Content of Soils testing to determine the percent of organic matter in the soil. The testing was performed in general accordance with ASTM D 2974.

**REPORT OF
SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION
OCRACOKE AND HATTERAS
NCDOT PASSENGER TERMINALS
AND PARKING LOTS
ESP PROJECT NO. E4A-FN65.300**

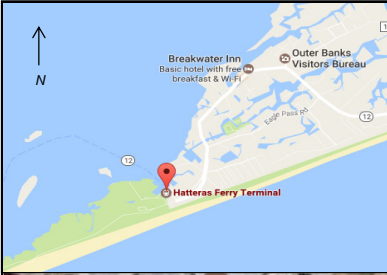
Prepared For:

Mr. Tim Hayes, P.E.
WSP / Parsons Brinckerhoff
434 Fayetteville Street, Suite 1500
Raleigh, North Carolina 27601



Prepared By:

ESP Associates, P.A.
P. O. Box 7030
Charlotte, North Carolina 28241

April 13, 2017



LEGEND

-  APPROXIMATE PREVIOUS BORING LOCATION
-  APPROXIMATE ADDITIONAL BORING LOCATION

NOTE: THIS DRAWING AND/OR THE DESIGN SHOWN ARE THE PROPERTY OF ESP ASSOCIATES, P.A. THE REPRODUCTION, ALTERATION, COPYING, OR OTHER USE OF THIS DRAWING WITHOUT THEIR WRITTEN CONSENT IS PROHIBITED AND ANY INFRINGEMENT WILL BE SUBJECT TO LEGAL ACTION.

THIS DRAWING IS INTENDED TO SHOW APPROXIMATE TEST LOCATIONS ONLY. NO OTHER INFORMATION IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED.



PROJECT NO:	FN65.300
SCALE:	NTS
DRAWN BY:	BRL
CHECKED BY:	RWE
DATE:	4/12/2017
FIGURE 1	

SHEET TITLE:	HATTERAS BORING LOCATION PLAN
PROJECT:	NCDOT PASSENGER FERRY TERMINALS AND PARKING LOTS
HATTERAS, NORTH CAROLINA	



ESP Associates, P.A.
 P. O. Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 5121 Kingdom Way Suite 208
 Raleigh, NC 27607
 919-676-1070
www.espassociates.com



LEGEND	
	APPROXIMATE PREVIOUS BORING LOCATION
	APPROXIMATE ADDITIONAL BORING LOCATION

NOTE: THIS DRAWING AND/OR THE DESIGN SHOWN ARE THE PROPERTY OF ESP ASSOCIATES, P.A. THE REPRODUCTION, ALTERATION, COPYING, OR OTHER USE OF THIS DRAWING WITHOUT THEIR WRITTEN CONSENT IS PROHIBITED AND ANY INFRINGEMENT WILL BE SUBJECT TO LEGAL ACTION.

THIS DRAWING IS INTENDED TO SHOW APPROXIMATE TEST LOCATIONS ONLY. NO OTHER INFORMATION IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED.

PROJECT NO: FN65.300	SHEET TITLE:
SCALE: NTS	OCRACOKE BORING LOCATION PLAN
DRAWN BY: BRL	
CHECKED BY: RWE	PROJECT:
DATE: 4/12/2017	NCDOT PASSENGER FERRY TERMINALS AND PARKING LOTS
FIGURE 2	OCRACOKE, NORTH CAROLINA



ESP Associates, P.A.
 P. O. Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 5121 Kingdom Way Suite 208
 Raleigh, NC 27607
 919-676-1070
 www.espassociates.com

NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
DIVISION OF HIGHWAYS
GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT

SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION





SOIL AND ROCK LEGEND, TERMS, SYMBOLS, AND ABBREVIATIONS
(PAGE 1 OF 2)

SOIL DESCRIPTION										GRADATION									
SOIL IS CONSIDERED UNCONSOLIDATED, SEMI-CONSOLIDATED, OR WEATHERED EARTH MATERIALS THAT CAN BE PENETRATED WITH A CONTINUOUS FLIGHT POWER AUGER AND YIELD LESS THAN 100 BLOWS PER FOOT ACCORDING TO THE STANDARD PENETRATION TEST (AASHTO T 206, ASTM D1586). SOIL CLASSIFICATION IS BASED ON THE AASHTO SYSTEM. BASIC DESCRIPTIONS GENERALLY INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING: CONSISTENCY, COLOR, TEXTURE, MOISTURE, AASHTO CLASSIFICATION, AND OTHER PERTINENT FACTORS SUCH AS MINERALOGICAL COMPOSITION, ANGULARITY, STRUCTURE, PLASTICITY, ETC. FOR EXAMPLE, VERY STIFF, GRAY, SILTY CLAY, MOIST WITH INTERBEDDED FINE SAND LAYERS, HIGHLY PLASTIC, A-7-6										WELL GRADED - INDICATES A GOOD REPRESENTATION OF PARTICLE SIZES FROM FINE TO COARSE. UNIFORMLY GRADED - INDICATES THAT SOIL PARTICLES ARE ALL APPROXIMATELY THE SAME SIZE. GAP-GRADED - INDICATES A MIXTURE OF UNIFORM PARTICLE SIZES OF TWO OR MORE SIZES.									
SOIL LEGEND AND AASHTO CLASSIFICATION										ANGULARITY OF GRAINS									
GENERAL CLASS. GRANULAR MATERIALS (<= 35% PASSING #200) SILT-CLAY MATERIALS (> 35% PASSING #200) ORGANIC MATERIALS										MINERALOGICAL COMPOSITION									
GROUP CLASS. A-1, A-3, A-2, A-4, A-5, A-6, A-7, A-1-A2, A-3, A-4, A-5, A-6, A-7										MINERAL NAMES SUCH AS QUARTZ, FELDSPAR, MICA, TALC, KAOLIN, ETC. ARE USED IN DESCRIPTIONS WHEN THEY ARE CONSIDERED OF SIGNIFICANCE.									
SYMBOL										COMPRESSIONIBILITY									
% PASSING #10, #40, #200										SLIGHTLY COMPRESSIBLE LL < 31 MODERATELY COMPRESSIBLE LL = 31 - 50 HIGHLY COMPRESSIBLE LL > 50									
MATERIAL PASSING #40 LL, PI										PERCENTAGE OF MATERIAL									
GROUP INDEX										ORGANIC MATERIAL GRANULAR SOILS SILT - CLAY SOILS OTHER MATERIAL									
USUAL TYPES OF MAJOR MATERIALS										TRACE OF ORGANIC MATTER 2 - 3% 3 - 5% TRACE 1 - 10% LITTLE ORGANIC MATTER 3 - 5% 5 - 12% LITTLE 10 - 20% MODERATELY ORGANIC 5 - 10% 12 - 20% SOME 20 - 35% HIGHLY ORGANIC > 10% > 20% HIGHLY 35% AND ABOVE									
GEN. RATING AS SUBGRADE										GROUND WATER									
EXCELLENT TO GOOD FAIR TO POOR FAIR TO POOR POOR UNSUITABLE										▽ WATER LEVEL IN BORE HOLE IMMEDIATELY AFTER DRILLING ▽ STATIC WATER LEVEL AFTER 24 HOURS ▽PW PERCHED WATER, SATURATED ZONE, OR WATER BEARING STRATA ○ SPRING OR SEEP									
CONSISTENCY OR DENSENESS										MISCELLANEOUS SYMBOLS									
PRIMARY SOIL TYPE COMPACTNESS OR CONSISTENCY RANGE OF STANDARD PENETRATION RESISTANCE (N-VALUE) RANGE OF UNCONFINED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH (TONS/FT ²)										ROADWAY EMBANKMENT (RE) WITH SOIL DESCRIPTION 25/825 DIP & DIP DIRECTION OF ROCK STRUCTURES SOIL SYMBOL SPT DMT VST PMT TEST BORING ARTIFICIAL FILL (AF) OTHER THAN ROADWAY EMBANKMENT AUGER BORING CORE BORING INFERRED SOIL BOUNDARY MONITORING WELL INFERRED ROCK LINE ALLUVIAL SOIL BOUNDARY PIEZOMETER INSTALLATION SPT N-VALUE									
TEXTURE OR GRAIN SIZE										RECOMMENDATION SYMBOLS									
U.S. STD. SIEVE SIZE OPENING (MM) 4 10 40 60 200 270 4.76 2.00 0.42 0.25 0.075 0.053										UNCLASIFIED EXCAVATION - UNSUITABLE WASTE UNCLASIFIED EXCAVATION - ACCEPTABLE, BUT NOT TO BE USED IN THE TOP 3 FEET OF EMBANKMENT OR BACKFILL SHALLOW UNDERCUT UNCLASIFIED EXCAVATION - ACCEPTABLE DEGRADABLE ROCK									
BOULDER (BLDR.) COBBLE (COB.) GRAVEL (GR.) COARSE SAND (CSE, SD.) FINE SAND (F SD.) SILT (SL.) CLAY (CL.)										ABBREVIATIONS									
GRAIN SIZE MM 305 75 2.0 0.25 0.05 0.005 IN. 12 3										AR - AUGER REFUSAL MED. - MEDIUM VST - VANE SHEAR TEST BT - BORING TERMINATED MICA - MICACEOUS WEA. - WEATHERED CL. - CLAY MOD. - MODERATELY ? - UNIT WEIGHT CPT - CONE PENETRATION TEST NP - NON PLASTIC 7g - DRY UNIT WEIGHT CSE. - COARSE ORG. - ORGANIC DMT - DILATOMETER TEST PMT - PRESSUREMETER TEST SAMPLE ABBREVIATIONS DPT - DYNAMIC PENETRATION TEST SAP. - SAPROLITIC S - BULK e - VOID RATIO SD. - SAND, SANDY SS - SAND SPLIT SPOON f - FINE SL. - SILT, SILTY ST - SHELBY TUBE FOSS. - FOSSILIFEROUS SLI. - SLIGHTLY RS - ROCK FRAC. - FRACTURED, FRACTURES TCR - TRICONE REFUSAL RT - RECOMPACTED TRIAXIAL FRAGS. - FRAGMENTS w - MOISTURE CONTENT CBR - CALIFORNIA BEARING RATIO HI. - HIGHLY v - VERY									
SOIL MOISTURE - CORRELATION OF TERMS										EQUIPMENT USED ON SUBJECT PROJECT									
SOIL MOISTURE SCALE (ATTERBERG LIMITS) FIELD MOISTURE DESCRIPTION GUIDE FOR FIELD MOISTURE DESCRIPTION										DRILL UNITS: ADVANCING TOOLS: HAMMER TYPE:									
LL LIQUID LIMIT - SATURATED - (SAT.) USUALLY LIQUID; VERY WET, USUALLY FROM BELOW THE GROUND WATER TABLE										<input type="checkbox"/> CME-45C <input type="checkbox"/> CLAY BITS <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AUTOMATIC <input type="checkbox"/> MANUAL <input type="checkbox"/> CME-55 <input type="checkbox"/> 6' CONTINUOUS FLIGHT AUGER <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CME-550 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 8" HOLLOW AUGERS <input type="checkbox"/> VANE SHEAR TEST <input type="checkbox"/> HARD FACED FINGER BITS <input type="checkbox"/> PORTABLE HOIST <input type="checkbox"/> TUNG-CARBIDE INSERTS <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CASING <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> W/ ADVANCER <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> TRICONE _____ * STEEL TEETH <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> TRICONE _____ * TUNG-CARB. <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> CORE BIT									
PLASTICITY										CORE SIZE: <input type="checkbox"/> -B _____ <input type="checkbox"/> -H _____ <input type="checkbox"/> -N _____									
NON PLASTIC 0-5 VERY LOW SLIGHTLY PLASTIC 6-15 SLIGHT MODERATELY PLASTIC 16-25 MEDIUM HIGHLY PLASTIC 26 OR MORE HIGH										HAND TOOLS: <input type="checkbox"/> POST HOLE DIGGER <input type="checkbox"/> HAND AUGER <input type="checkbox"/> SOUNDING ROD <input type="checkbox"/> VANE SHEAR TEST									
COLOR										DESCRIPTIONS MAY INCLUDE COLOR OR COLOR COMBINATIONS (TAN, RED, YELLOW-BROWN, BLUE-GRAY). MODIFIERS SUCH AS LIGHT, DARK, STREAKED, ETC. ARE USED TO DESCRIBE APPEARANCE.									

**NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
DIVISION OF HIGHWAYS
GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT**

SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION

SOIL AND ROCK LEGEND, TERMS, SYMBOLS, AND ABBREVIATIONS (PAGE 2 OF 2)

ROCK DESCRIPTION		TERMS AND DEFINITIONS
<p>HARD ROCK IS NON-COASTAL PLAIN MATERIAL THAT WOULD YIELD SPT REFUSAL IF TESTED, AN INFERRED ROCK LINE INDICATES THE LEVEL AT WHICH NON-COASTAL PLAIN MATERIAL WOULD YIELD SPT REFUSAL. SPT REFUSAL IS PENETRATION BY A SPLIT SPOON SAMPLER EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN 0.1 FOOT PER 60 BLOWS IN NON-COASTAL PLAIN MATERIAL. THE TRANSITION BETWEEN SOIL AND ROCK IS OFTEN REPRESENTED BY A ZONE OF WEATHERED ROCK. ROCK MATERIALS ARE TYPICALLY DIVIDED AS FOLLOWS:</p>		<p>ALLUVIUM (ALLUV.) - SOILS THAT HAVE BEEN TRANSPORTED BY WATER. AQUIFER - A WATER BEARING FORMATION OR STRATA. ARENACEOUS - APPLIED TO ROCKS THAT HAVE BEEN DERIVED FROM SAND OR THAT CONTAIN SAND. ARGILLACEOUS - APPLIED TO ALL ROCKS OR SUBSTANCES COMPOSED OF CLAY MINERALS, OR HAVING A NOTABLE PROPORTION OF CLAY IN THEIR COMPOSITION, SUCH AS SHALE, SLATE, ETC. ARTESIAN - GROUND WATER THAT IS UNDER SUFFICIENT PRESSURE TO RISE ABOVE THE LEVEL AT WHICH IT IS ENCOUNTERED, BUT WHICH DOES NOT NECESSARILY RISE TO OR ABOVE THE GROUND SURFACE. CALCAREOUS (CALC.) - SOILS THAT CONTAIN APPRECIABLE AMOUNTS OF CALCIUM CARBONATE. COLLUVIUM - ROCK FRAGMENTS MIXED WITH SOIL DEPOSITED BY GRAVITY ON SLOPE OR AT BOTTOM OF SLOPE. CORE RECOVERY (REC.) - TOTAL LENGTH OF ALL MATERIAL RECOVERED IN THE CORE BARREL DIVIDED BY TOTAL LENGTH OF CORE RUN AND EXPRESSED AS A PERCENTAGE. DIKE - A TABULAR BODY OF IGNEOUS ROCK THAT CUTS ACROSS THE STRUCTURE OF ADJACENT ROCKS OR CUTS MASSIVE ROCK. DIP - THE ANGLE AT WHICH A STRATUM OR ANY PLANAR FEATURE IS INCLINED FROM THE HORIZONTAL. DIP DIRECTION (DIP AZIMUTH) - THE DIRECTION OR BEARING OF THE HORIZONTAL TRACE OF THE LINE OF DIP, MEASURED CLOCKWISE FROM NORTH. FAULT - A FRACTURE OR FRACTURE ZONE ALONG WHICH THERE HAS BEEN DISPLACEMENT OF THE SIDES RELATIVE TO ONE ANOTHER PARALLEL TO THE FRACTURE. FISSILE - A PROPERTY OF SPLITTING ALONG CLOSELY SPACED PARALLEL PLANES. FLOAT - ROCK FRAGMENTS ON SURFACE NEAR THEIR ORIGINAL POSITION AND DISLODGED FROM PARENT MATERIAL. FLOOD PLAIN (FP) - LAND BORDERING A STREAM, BUILT OF SEDIMENTS DEPOSITED BY THE STREAM. FORMATION (FM.) - A MAPPABLE GEOLOGIC UNIT THAT CAN BE RECOGNIZED AND TRACED IN THE FIELD. JOINT - FRACTURE IN ROCK ALONG WHICH NO APPRECIABLE MOVEMENT HAS OCCURRED. LEDGE - A SHELF-LIKE RIDGE OR PROJECTION OF ROCK WHOSE THICKNESS IS SMALL COMPARED TO ITS LATERAL EXTENT. LENS - A BODY OF SOIL OR ROCK THAT THINS OUT IN ONE OR MORE DIRECTIONS. MOTTLED (MOT.) - IRREGULARLY MARKED WITH SPOTS OF DIFFERENT COLORS. MOTTLING IN SOILS USUALLY INDICATES POOR AERATION AND LACK OF GOOD DRAINAGE. PERCHED WATER - WATER MAINTAINED ABOVE THE NORMAL GROUND WATER LEVEL BY THE PRESENCE OF AN INTERVENING IMPERVIOUS STRATUM. RESIDUAL (RES.) SOIL - SOIL FORMED IN PLACE BY THE WEATHERING OF ROCK. ROCK QUALITY DESIGNATION (ROD) - A MEASURE OF ROCK QUALITY DESCRIBED BY TOTAL LENGTH OF ROCK SEGMENTS EQUAL TO OR GREATER THAN 4 INCHES DIVIDED BY THE TOTAL LENGTH OF CORE RUN AND EXPRESSED AS A PERCENTAGE. SAPROLITE (SAP.) - RESIDUAL SOIL THAT RETAINS THE RELIC STRUCTURE OR FABRIC OF THE PARENT ROCK. SILL - AN INTRUSIVE BODY OF IGNEOUS ROCK OF APPROXIMATELY UNIFORM THICKNESS AND RELATIVELY THIN COMPARED WITH ITS LATERAL EXTENT, THAT HAS BEEN EMPLACED PARALLEL TO THE BEDDING OR SCHISTOSITY OF THE INTRUDED ROCKS. SLICKENSIDE - POLISHED AND STRIATED SURFACE THAT RESULTS FROM FRICTION ALONG A FAULT OR SLIP PLANE. STANDARD PENETRATION TEST (PENETRATION RESISTANCE) (SPT) - NUMBER OF BLOWS IN OR BPF) OF A 140 LB. HAMMER FALLING 30 INCHES REQUIRED TO PRODUCE A PENETRATION OF 1 FOOT INTO SOIL WITH A 2 INCH OUTSIDE DIAMETER SPLIT SPOON SAMPLER. SPT REFUSAL IS PENETRATION EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN 0.1 FOOT PER 60 BLOWS. STRATA CORE RECOVERY (SREC.) - TOTAL LENGTH OF STRATA MATERIAL RECOVERED DIVIDED BY TOTAL LENGTH OF STRATUM AND EXPRESSED AS A PERCENTAGE. STRATA ROCK QUALITY DESIGNATION (SROD) - A MEASURE OF ROCK QUALITY DESCRIBED BY TOTAL LENGTH OF ROCK SEGMENTS WITHIN A STRATUM EQUAL TO OR GREATER THAN 4 INCHES DIVIDED BY THE TOTAL LENGTH OF STRATA AND EXPRESSED AS A PERCENTAGE. TOPSOIL (TS.) - SURFACE SOILS USUALLY CONTAINING ORGANIC MATTER.</p>
WEATHERED ROCK (WR)		NON-COASTAL PLAIN MATERIAL THAT WOULD YIELD SPT N VALUES > 100 BLOWS PER FOOT IF TESTED.
CRYSTALLINE ROCK (CR)		FINE TO COARSE GRAIN IGNEOUS AND METAMORPHIC ROCK THAT WOULD YIELD SPT REFUSAL IF TESTED. ROCK TYPE INCLUDES GRANITE, GNEISS, GABBRO, SCHIST, ETC.
NON-CRYSTALLINE ROCK (NCR)		FINE TO COARSE GRAIN METAMORPHIC AND NON-COASTAL PLAIN SEDIMENTARY ROCK THAT WOULD YIELD SPT REFUSAL IF TESTED. ROCK TYPE INCLUDES PHYLLITE, SLATE, SANDSTONE, ETC.
COASTAL PLAIN SEDIMENTARY ROCK (CP)		COASTAL PLAIN SEDIMENTS CEMENTED INTO ROCK, BUT MAY NOT YIELD SPT REFUSAL. ROCK TYPE INCLUDES LIMESTONE, SANDSTONE, CEMENTED SHELL BEDS, ETC.
WEATHERING		
FRESH		ROCK FRESH, CRYSTALS BRIGHT, FEW JOINTS MAY SHOW SLIGHT STAINING. ROCK RINGS UNDER HAMMER IF CRYSTALLINE.
VERY SLIGHT (V SL.)		ROCK GENERALLY FRESH, JOINTS STAINED, SOME JOINTS MAY SHOW THIN CLAY COATINGS IF OPEN. CRYSTALS ON A BROKEN SPECIMEN FACE SHINE BRIGHTLY. ROCK RINGS UNDER HAMMER BLOWS IF OF A CRYSTALLINE NATURE.
SLIGHT (SL.)		ROCK GENERALLY FRESH, JOINTS STAINED AND DISCOLORATION EXTENDS INTO ROCK UP TO 1 INCH. OPEN JOINTS MAY CONTAIN CLAY. IN GRANITOID ROCKS SOME OCCASIONAL FELDSPAR CRYSTALS ARE DULL AND DISCOLORED. CRYSTALLINE ROCKS RING UNDER HAMMER BLOWS.
MODERATE (MOD.)		SIGNIFICANT PORTIONS OF ROCK SHOW DISCOLORATION AND WEATHERING EFFECTS. IN GRANITOID ROCKS, MOST FELDSPARS ARE DULL AND DISCOLORED, SOME SHOW CLAY. ROCK HAS DULL SOUND UNDER HAMMER BLOWS AND SHOWS SIGNIFICANT LOSS OF STRENGTH AS COMPARED WITH FRESH ROCK.
MODERATELY SEVERE (MOD. SEV.)		ALL ROCK EXCEPT QUARTZ DISCOLORED OR STAINED. IN GRANITOID ROCKS, ALL FELDSPARS DULL AND DISCOLORED AND A MAJORITY SHOW KAOLINIZATION. ROCK SHOWS SEVERE LOSS OF STRENGTH AND CAN BE EXCAVATED WITH A GEOLOGIST'S PICK. ROCK GIVES "CLUNK" SOUND WHEN STRUCK. <u>IF TESTED, WOULD YIELD SPT REFUSAL</u>
SEVERE (SEV.)		ALL ROCK EXCEPT QUARTZ DISCOLORED OR STAINED. ROCK FABRIC CLEAR AND EVIDENT BUT REDUCED IN STRENGTH TO STRONG SOIL. IN GRANITOID ROCKS ALL FELDSPARS ARE KAOLINIZED TO SOME EXTENT. SOME FRAGMENTS OF STRONG ROCK USUALLY REMAIN. <u>IF TESTED, WOULD YIELD SPT N VALUES > 100 BPF</u>
VERY SEVERE (V SEV.)		ALL ROCK EXCEPT QUARTZ DISCOLORED OR STAINED. ROCK FABRIC ELEMENTS ARE DISCERNIBLE BUT MASS IS EFFECTIVELY REDUCED TO SOIL STATUS, WITH ONLY FRAGMENTS OF STRONG ROCK REMAINING. SAPROLITE IS AN EXAMPLE OF ROCK WEATHERED TO A DEGREE THAT ONLY MINOR VESTIGES OF ORIGINAL ROCK FABRIC REMAIN. <u>IF TESTED, WOULD YIELD SPT N VALUES < 100 BPF</u>
COMPLETE		ROCK REDUCED TO SOIL. ROCK FABRIC NOT DISCERNIBLE, OR DISCERNIBLE ONLY IN SMALL AND SCATTERED CONCENTRATIONS. QUARTZ MAY BE PRESENT AS DIKES OR STRINGERS. SAPROLITE IS ALSO AN EXAMPLE.
ROCK HARDNESS		
VERY HARD		CANNOT BE SCRATCHED BY KNIFE OR SHARP PICK. BREAKING OF HAND SPECIMENS REQUIRES SEVERAL HARD BLOWS OF THE GEOLOGIST'S PICK.
HARD		CAN BE SCRATCHED BY KNIFE OR PICK ONLY WITH DIFFICULTY. HARD HAMMER BLOWS REQUIRED TO DETACH HAND SPECIMEN.
MODERATELY HARD		CAN BE SCRATCHED BY KNIFE OR PICK. GOUGES OR GROOVES TO 0.25 INCHES DEEP CAN BE EXCAVATED BY HARD BLOW OF A GEOLOGIST'S PICK. HAND SPECIMENS CAN BE DETACHED BY MODERATE BLOWS.
MEDIUM HARD		CAN BE GROOVED OR GOUGED 0.05 INCHES DEEP BY FIRM PRESSURE OF KNIFE OR PICK POINT. CAN BE EXCAVATED IN SMALL CHIPS TO PIECES 1 INCH MAXIMUM SIZE BY HARD BLOWS OF THE POINT OF A GEOLOGIST'S PICK.
SOFT		CAN BE GROOVED OR GOUGED READILY BY KNIFE OR PICK. CAN BE EXCAVATED IN FRAGMENTS FROM CHIPS TO SEVERAL INCHES IN SIZE BY MODERATE BLOWS OF A PICK POINT. SMALL, THIN PIECES CAN BE BROKEN BY FINGER PRESSURE.
VERY SOFT		CAN BE CARVED WITH KNIFE. CAN BE EXCAVATED READILY WITH POINT OF PICK. PIECES 1 INCH OR MORE IN THICKNESS CAN BE BROKEN BY FINGER PRESSURE. CAN BE SCRATCHED READILY BY FINGERNAIL.
FRACTURE SPACING		BEDDING
TERM	SPACING	TERM
VERY WIDE	MORE THAN 10 FEET	THICKNESS
WIDE	3 TO 10 FEET	4 FEET
MODERATELY CLOSE	1 TO 3 FEET	VERY THICKLY BEDDED
CLOSE	0.16 TO 1 FOOT	THICKLY BEDDED
VERY CLOSE	LESS THAN 0.16 FEET	1.5 - 4 FEET
		THINLY BEDDED
		0.16 - 1.5 FEET
		VERY THINLY BEDDED
		0.03 - 0.16 FEET
		THICKLY LAMINATED
		0.008 - 0.03 FEET
		THINLY LAMINATED
		< 0.008 FEET
INDURATION		
FOR SEDIMENTARY ROCKS, INDURATION IS THE HARDENING OF MATERIAL BY CEMENTING, HEAT, PRESSURE, ETC.		
FRIABLE		RUBBING WITH FINGER FREES NUMEROUS GRAINS; GENTLE BLOW BY HAMMER DISINTEGRATES SAMPLE.
MODERATELY INDURATED		GRAINS CAN BE SEPARATED FROM SAMPLE WITH STEEL PROBE; BREAKS EASILY WHEN HIT WITH HAMMER.
INDURATED		GRAINS ARE DIFFICULT TO SEPARATE WITH STEEL PROBE; DIFFICULT TO BREAK WITH HAMMER.
EXTREMELY INDURATED		SHARP HAMMER BLOWS REQUIRED TO BREAK SAMPLE; SAMPLE BREAKS ACROSS GRAINS.
		BENCH MARK: BM #2; RR SPIKE IN BASE OF 30" OAK; N 573243, E 1655489; -BL- STATION I2+06.00 III' LEFT ELEVATION: 423.99 FEET
NOTES:		
F.I.A.D= FILLED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DRILLING		

GEOTECHNICAL BORING REPORT BORE LOG

WBS N/A		TIP N/A		COUNTY DARE			GEOLOGIST Pastrana, C.R.															
SITE DESCRIPTION Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal								GROUND WTR (ft)														
BORING NO. B-3		STATION N/A		OFFSET N/A		ALIGNMENT N/A		0 HR. N/A														
COLLAR ELEV. 0.0 ft		TOTAL DEPTH 7.5 ft		NORTHING 546,754		EASTING 2,984,606		24 HR. FIAD														
DRILL RIG/HAMMER EFF./DATE BRI0674 CME-45C 89% 05/04/2016				DRILL METHOD Mud Rotary		HAMMER TYPE Automatic																
DRILLER Eister, G.		START DATE 03/14/17		COMP. DATE 03/14/17		SURFACE WATER DEPTH N/A																
ELEV (ft)	DRIVE ELEV (ft)	DEPTH (ft)	BLOW COUNT			BLOWS PER FOOT					SAMP. NO.	MOI	LOG	SOIL AND ROCK DESCRIPTION								
			0.5ft	0.5ft	0.5ft	0	25	50	75	100				ELEV. (ft)	DEPTH (ft)							
0															0.0	GROUND SURFACE	0.0					
-5	-1.0	1.0	3	5	4						M											
	-3.5	3.5	2	2	3																	
	-6.0	6.0	5	5	5																	
											SS-3	23%			-7.5	UNDIVIDED COASTAL PLAIN Tan Brown to Gray to Brown, Loose to Medium Dense, Coarse to Fine SAND (A-3, SP) Boring Terminated at Elevation -7.5 ft In Undivided Coastal Plain: SAND (A-3, SP)	7.5					

NCDOT BORE SINGLE DESIGN DEVELOPMENT FOR HATTERAS ISLAND PASSENGER TERMINAL.GPJ NC_DOT.GDT 4/13/17

Note: Boring offset 5' from proposed location in proposed parking area, a preexisting leech field is approx. 3.0' to 4.0' below grade. According to USCG, the center pipe in the field, running parallel to the docks, has gravel packed around it that could extend 1.5' to 3.0' on each side.

Note: Boring elevations and locations were not surveyed. A value of 0' for elevations was used for all borings. The Northings and Eastings are approximate.

GEOTECHNICAL BORING REPORT BORE LOG

WBS N/A		TIP N/A		COUNTY DARE			GEOLOGIST Pastrana, C.R.									
SITE DESCRIPTION Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal								GROUND WTR (ft)								
BORING NO. B-4		STATION N/A		OFFSET N/A		ALIGNMENT N/A		0 HR. 2.6								
COLLAR ELEV. 0.0 ft		TOTAL DEPTH 5.4 ft		NORTHING 546,654		EASTING 2,984,196		24 HR. FIAD								
DRILL RIG/HAMMER EFF./DATE BRI0674 CME-45C 89% 05/04/2016				DRILL METHOD Hand Auger			HAMMER TYPE N/A									
DRILLER N/A		START DATE 03/14/17		COMP. DATE 03/14/17		SURFACE WATER DEPTH N/A										
ELEV (ft)	DRIVE ELEV (ft)	DEPTH (ft)	BLOW COUNT			BLOWS PER FOOT					SAMP. NO.	LOG MOI	LOG G	SOIL AND ROCK DESCRIPTION		
			0.5ft	0.5ft	0.5ft	0	25	50	75	100				ELEV. (ft)	DEPTH (ft)	
0														0.0	GROUND SURFACE	0.0
	-0.5	0.5	N/A	2	3	•	•	•	•	•						
	-1.0	1.0	N/A	3	4	•	•	•	•	•	S-1	▽				
	-2.0	2.0	N/A	3	3	•	•	•	•	•				-2.8		2.8
	-3.0	3.0	N/A	2	3	•	•	•	•	•				-3.9		3.9
	-4.0	4.0	N/A	2	3	•	•	•	•	•						
-5	-5.0	5.0	N/A	2	2	•	•	•	•	•				-5.4		5.4
			N/A	4	4	•	•	•	•	•						

UNDIVIDED COASTAL PLAIN

0.3' of Sandy Topsoil over Moist to Saturated, Tan Brown, Loose to Medium Dense, Coarse to Fine SAND (A-3, SP), Trace Organics (Roots)

Gray, Medium Dense, Silty Coarse to Fine SAND (A-2-4, SM)

Black, Loose to Medium Dense, Clayey Silty Fine Sand (A-2-5, SC - SM), Highly Organic

Boring Terminated at Elevation -5.4 ft In Undivided Coastal Plain: Silty SAND (A-2-5, SC-SM)

Note: SPT N values represent the equivalent SPT value per foot for DCP tests done over 1.75 inch increments.

Note: After hand augering past the 4.0' DCP test, continuous cave-in occurred to approx. 3.5'. The DCP values for the 5.0' sample may not reflect the actual soil strength.

Note: Boring elevations and locations were not surveyed. A value of 0' for elevations was used for all borings. The Northings and Eastings are approximate.

NCDOT BORE SINGLE DESIGN DEVELOPMENT FOR HATTERAS ISLAND PASSENGER TERMINAL.GPJ NC_DOT.GDT 4/13/17

GEOTECHNICAL BORING REPORT

BORE LOG

WBS N/A		TIP N/A		COUNTY HYDE		GEOLOGIST Pastrana, C.R.											
SITE DESCRIPTION Design Development for NCDOT Ocracoke Island Passenger Terminal							GROUND WTR (ft)										
BORING NO. B-6		STATION N/A		OFFSET N/A		ALIGNMENT N/A	0 HR. 2.1										
COLLAR ELEV. 0.0 ft		TOTAL DEPTH 25.0 ft		NORTHING 510,894		EASTING 2,901,053	24 HR. FIAD										
DRILL RIG/HAMMER EFF./DATE BRI0674 CME-45C 89% 05/04/2016				DRILL METHOD Mud Rotary		HAMMER TYPE Automatic											
DRILLER Eister, G.		START DATE 03/16/17		COMP. DATE 03/16/17		SURFACE WATER DEPTH N/A											
ELEV (ft)	DRIVE ELEV (ft)	DEPTH (ft)	BLOW COUNT			BLOWS PER FOOT					SAMP. NO.	MOI	LOG	SOIL AND ROCK DESCRIPTION			
			0.5ft	0.5ft	0.5ft	0	25	50	75	100				ELEV. (ft)	DEPTH (ft)		
0															0.0	GROUND SURFACE	0.0
-5	-1.0	1.0	2	6	4						S-2	▽					
	-3.5	3.5	1	2	1												
-10	-6.0	6.0	3	5	6												
	-8.5	8.5	6	10	9												
-15	-13.5	13.5	10	11	17												
	-18.5	18.5	12	15	17												
-20	-23.5	23.5	5	5	4												
-25																	
Boring Terminated at Elevation -25.0 ft In Undivided Coastal Plain: Silty SAND (A-2-4, SP-SM)																	
Note: Boring elevations and locations were not surveyed. A value of 0' for elevations was used for all borings. The Northings and Eastings are approximate.																	

NCDOT BORE SINGLE DESIGN DEVELOPMENT FOR OCRACOKE ISLAND PASSENGER TERMINAL.GPJ NC_DOT.GDT 4/13/17



**NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)**

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CD	Dare	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC: Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal						Depth to WATER	3.1	FIAD
BORING NUMBER	STA	OFFSET	N/A FT	N/A	ALIGNMENT	Depth to BTM	3.7	FIAD
ELEVATION	FT	TOTAL DEPTH	40.0'	FT	NORTH	DATE	3-14-17	3-14-2017
DRILL MACHINE	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	DRILL METHOD	HSA MVP ROTARY		EAST	HAMMER TYPE: Automatic		
START DATE	COMP DATE	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	N/A	FT	DEPTH TO ROCK	DRILLER: G. LEISTER		

STRATUM FROM TO	SAMPLE NUMBER	FROM TO	DRIVE / SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION
			0.5 ft	0.5 ft	0.5 ft			
0.0	SS-1	1.0, 2.5	4	10	11	M	CP	Tan Brown, med dense, Cc to fine sand. (A-3, SP)
	SS-2	3.5, 5.0	5	9	7	SAT	CP	SAME, TAN TO GRAY
	SS-3	6.0, 7.5	6	6	6	SAT	CP	GRAY, med dense, Cc to F. SAND (A-3, SP)
	SS-4	8.5, 10.0	6	11	11	SAT	CP	GRAY, med dense, FINE SAND (A-3, SP) TRACE SALT
12.5	SS-5	13.5, 15.0	11	17	20	SAT	CP	GRAY, DENSE SAND FINE SAND (A-2-4, SM) Cc to F SAND (A-3) CHANGE @ 12.5'
	SS-6	18.5, 20.0	16	14	18	SAT	CP	GRAY SAME CHANGE @ 21.5'
	SS-7	23.5, 25.0	10	16	19	SAT	CP	GRAY, DENSE, SILTY, F. TO Cc SAND (A-2-4, SM)
	SS-8	28.5, 30.0	8	8	8	SAT	CP	DARK GRAY, med dense, SILTY F. SAND (A-2-4, SM) MORE SILT THAN PREVIOUS SAMPLES
	SS-9	32.5, 35.0	13	27	29	SAT	CP	DARK GRAY, med dense, SILTY, F. TO Cc SAND (A-2-4, SM) WITH SHELL FRAGMENTS
	SS-10	38.5, 40.0	30	48	51	SAT	CP	SAME, NO SHELL FRAGMENTS
								* 0.2' CONTACT OVER 23' APC STONE
								* BORING LOCATIONS + ELEVATIONS WERE NOT SURVEYED N+E ARE APPROXIMATE

REDLINED BY (sign):

DATE

Boring terminated at 40.0 ft (IN) ON SILTY SAND

2 15/16 BIT / 0.2' CONTACT
0.3' GRAVEL BOTT



**NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)**

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CO	Dare	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC	Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal					Depth to WATER	N/A	FJAD
BORING NUMBER	STA	OFFSET	N/A FT	N/A	ALIGNMENT	Depth to BTTM DATE	N/A	FJAD
ELEVATION	FT	TOTAL DEPTH	25.0	FT	NORTH	EAST	3-14-17	3-14-17
DRILL MACHINE	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	DRILL METHOD	HSA MUD ROTARY			HAMMER TYPE	Automatic	
START DATE	COMP DATE	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	N/A	FT	DEPTH TO ROCK	DRILLER	G. GISTER	

STRATUM		SAMPLE		DRIVE / SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION	
FROM	TO	NUMBER	FROM	TO	FROM	TO	0.5 ft	0.5 ft	0.5 ft	SOIL or ROCK NAME (w/ color, density/consistency, texture, plasticity, organics, other)
0.0		SS-11			1.0	2.5	5	9	11	M CP TAN BROWN, MED. DENSE, CLAY TO F SAND (A-3, SP)
		SS-12			3.5	5.0	5	8	9	SAT CP GRAY, MED. DENSE, CLAY TO F SAND (A-3, SP) TRACE SILT * PETROLEUM OIL
		SS-13			6.0	7.5	3	3	4	SAT CP SAME, LOOSE * NO PETROLEUM OIL
		SS-14			8.5	10.0	3	7	6	SAT CP GRAY, MED. DENSE, F. SAND (A-3, SP)
12.5	12.5	SS-15			13.5	15.0	11	13	16	SAT CP GRAY, MED. DENSE ^{CHANGE at 13.5} SILT F. SAND (A-2-4, SM) (A-3, SP)
		SS-16			18.5	20.0	13	24	26	SAT CP SAME, DENSE CHANGE 22.0'
		SS-17			23.5	25.0	8	9	17	SAT CP GRAY, MED. DENSE, SILTY COARSE TO F. SAND (A-2-4, SM)
										* 0.2' ASPHALT OVER 0.3' ABC STONE
										* BORING ELEVATIONS + LOCATION WERE NOT SURVEYED N+E ARE APPROXIMATE

REDLINED BY (sign): _____ DATE: _____ Boring terminated at 25.0 ft (IN) ON CP! SILTY SAND



NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CO	Dare	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC	Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal					Depth to WATER	N/A	FSDM
BORING NUMBER	B-3	STA	N/A	OFFSET	N/A FT N/A	ALIGNMENT	N/A	
ELEVATION		TOTAL DEPTH		NORTH	546754	EAST	2984606	
DRILL MACHINE	CME 45	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	190674	DRILL METHOD	HSA mud rotary	HAMMER TYPE	Automatic	
START DATE	3/14/2017	COMP DATE	3/14/2017	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	N/A FT	DEPTH TO ROCK	N/A FT	DRILLER
						G. EISTER		

STRATUM		SAMPLE		DRIVE / SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION <small>(w/ color, density/consistency, texture, plasticity, organics, other)</small>			
FROM	TO	NUMBER	FROM	TO	FROM	TO				0.5 ft	0.5 ft	0.5 ft
0.0		SS-18	1.0	3.0	1.0	2.5	3	5	4	M	AF	BROWN, LOOSE, F. SAND (A-3, SP) TRACE ORGANICS
	4.0											Orange at 4.0' Corro
4.0		SS-19			3.5	5.0	2	2	3	M	CP	TAN BROWN, LOOSE, F. SAND (A-3, SP)
	5.5											Orange at 5.5'
5.5		SS-20			6.0	7.5	5	5	5	SAT	CP	GRAY TO BROWN, LOOSE TO MED DENSE, 6.5' TO 7.5' SAND FINE F SAND (A-3, SM) (A-3, SP) SAND TRACE SILT C.SG TO F SAND (A-3, SP)
									* BORING ELEVATIONS AND LOCATION WERE NOT SURVEYED N/E ARE APPROXIMATE			
									* BORING OFFSET 5' DUE HITTING OLD LEACH FIELD @ 3.0' USCG INFORMED US THAT IT IS AN OLD LEACH FIELD \approx 3-4' BELOW GRADE ALSO, MENTIONED ONE SIDE OF LEACH FIELD IN MIDDLE HAS GRAVEL PACKED AROUND IT			

REDLINED BY (sign): _____ DATE _____ Boring terminated at 7.5 ft (N/A) ON CP: SILTY SAND



**NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)**

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CO	Dare	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC	Design Development for NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal					Depth to WATER	2.6	FIAD
BORING NUMBER	STA	OFFSET	N/A FT	N/A	ALIGNMENT	Depth to BTTM	N/A	FIAD
ELEVATION	FT	TOTAL DEPTH	5.0	FT	NORTH	DATE	3-14-17	3-14-17
DRILL MACHINE	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	DRILL METHOD	HSA DCP + HAND AUGUR		EAST	HAMMER TYPE Automatic		
START DATE	COMP DATE	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	N/A	FT	DEPTH TO ROCK	DRILLER G. EIDSTER		

STRATUM		SAMPLE		DRIVE SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION		
FROM	TO	NUMBER	FROM	TO	FROM	TO			SOIL or ROCK NAME (w/ color, density/consistency, texture, plasticity, organics, other)		
0.0		S-1	0.0	4.0	0.0	5	7	7	M	CP	0.3' SANDY TOPSOIL OVER TAN BROWN, LOOSE TO MED, DENSE CLAY TO F SAND (A-3, SP)
		* Bulk 5gal BUCKET			1.0	9	10	12			TRACE ORGANICS (ROOTS)
2.8					2.0	7	7	8			GRAY, MED. DENSE, SILTY CLAY TO F SAND (A-2-4, SM)
2.8					3.0	6	7	7			GRAY, MED. DENSE, SILTY CLAY TO F SAND (A-2-4, SM)
		S-2	4.0	5.0					SAT	CP	BLACK, LOOSE TO MED DENSE, CLAYEY SILTY F SAND (A-25, SAA)
4.0		* Sample BAG			4.0	4	4	4			HIGHLY ORGANIC HS SAND (SC-SM) * POSSIBLE (A-2-7)
					5.0	11	12	12			

DCP TEST INTERVAL IS ONLY 1 3/4" INTERVALS

* AFTER 4.0' DCP'S HOLE CAVIN TO 3.5' CONTINUOUSLY

* BORING ELEVATION + LOCATION WERE NOT SURVEYED N/E ARE APPROXIMATE

REDLINED BY (sign): _____ DATE _____ Boring terminated at 5.0 ft (IN) ON CP' SANDY SILTY SAND



NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CO	Hyde	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC	Design Development for NCDOT Ocracoke Island Passenger Terminal					Depth to WATER	1.8	FIAD
BORING NUMBER	STA	OFFSET	N/A FT	N/A	ALIGNMENT	Depth to BTM	2.2	FIAD
ELEVATION	FT	TOTAL DEPTH	40.0	FT	NORTH	DATE	3-16-17	3-16-17
DRILL MACHINE	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	DRILL METHOD	HSA MUD ROTARY		HAMMER TYPE	Automatic		
START DATE	COMP DATE	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	N/A	FT	DEPTH TO ROCK	DRILLER G. EISLER		

STRATUM		SAMPLE		DRIVE / SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION			
FROM	TO	NUMBER	FROM	TO	FROM	TO	0.5 ft	0.5 ft	0.5 ft		SOIL or ROCK NAME (w/ color, density/consistency, texture, plasticity, organics, other)	
0.0		SS-21			1.0	2.5	4	8	9	M	CP/FILL	BROWN, MED. DENSE, CSE TO F SAND (A-3, SP) LITTLE GRAVEL/SHELL FRAGS AND TRACE SILT AND TRACE ORGANICS NOTE POSSIBLE FILL? Check #32'
	3.2											
3.2		SS-22			3.5	5.0	2	2	3	W	CP	BROWNISH GRAY, LOOSE, CSE TO F. SAND (A-2-4, SE) TRACE ORGANIC ODOR, TRACE SILT CLAY Check at 5.4'
	5.4											
5.4		SS-23			6.0	7.5	2	6	6	SAT	CP	BROWNISH GRAY, MED. DENSE, SILTY FINE SAND (A-2-4, SM) TRACE SHELL FRAGMENTS
		SS-24			8.5	10.0	2	7	10	SAT	CP	SAME,
	12.5											
12.5		SS-25			13.5	15.0	8	11	11	SAT	CP	GRAY, MEDIUM DENSE, SILTY F. SAND (A-2-5, SM) * SIGNIFICANTLY MORE SILT THAN PREVIOUS SAMPLES
		SS-26			18.5	20.0	9	11	13	SAT	CP	SAME
22.5	22.5											
22.5		SS-27			23.5	25.0	4	5	4	SAT	CP	GRAY, LOOSE, SILTY F. SAND (A-2-5, SM) TRACE CLAY?
	27.5											
27.5		SS-28			28.5	30.0	9	9	9	SAT	CP	GRAY, MED. DENSE SILTY CSE TO FINE SAND (A-2-4, SM) WITH SHELL FRAGMENTS (SIZE OF COB SAND)
		SS-29			33.5	35.0	8	12	16	SAT	CP	SAME,
		SS-30			38.5	40.0	19	26	35	SAT	CP	GRAY, V. DENSE, SILTY, F TO CSE SAND (A-2-4, SM)
												* FROM SE CORNER OF BUILDING 118' TOWARDS DOCK, 90' RIGHT FACING BUILDING
												* BORING ELEVATIONS + LOCATION WERE NOT SURVEYED N + E ARE APPROXIMATE

REDLINED BY (sign):

DATE

Boring terminated at 40.0 ft (N) ON SILTY SAND (A-2-4)

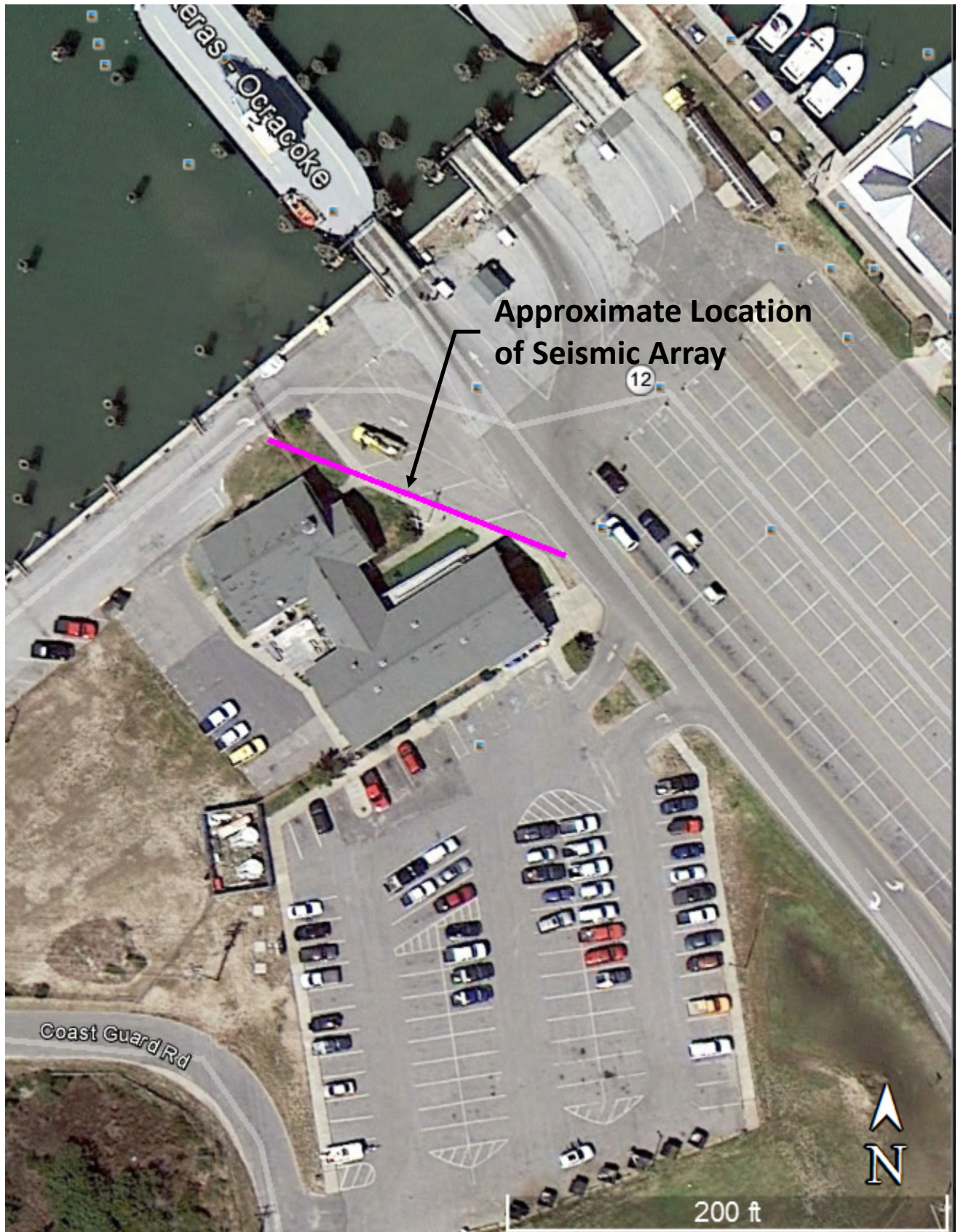


**NCDOT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING UNIT
FIELD BORELOG (ENGLISH)**

PROJECT NUMBER	ID	CO	Hyde	GEO	Pastrana, C.R.	GROUND WATER	0 HOUR	24 HOUR
PROJ DESC	Design Development for NCDOT Ocracoke Island Passenger Terminal					Depth to WATER	2.0	FIAD
BORING NUMBER	STA	OFFSET	N/A FT	N/A	ALIGNMENT	Depth to BTM	8.3	FIAD
ELEVATION	FT	TOTAL DEPTH	25.0	FT	NORTH	DATE	3-16-17	3-16-17
DRILL MACHINE	DRILL EQMT NUMBER	DRILL METHOD	HSA MD ROTARY		HAMMER TYPE	Automatic		
START DATE	COMP DATE	SURFACE WTR DEPTH	N/A	FT	DEPTH TO ROCK	N/A FT		
CME 45 TRAILER		190674			DRILLER			
3-16-17		3-16-17			A. GISTER			

STRATUM		SAMPLE		DRIVE / SPT			MOI	ORIGIN	SOIL & ROCK DESCRIPTION			
FROM	TO	NUMBER	FROM	TO	FROM	TO	0.5 ft	0.5 ft	0.5 ft		SOIL or ROCK NAME (w/ color, density/consistency, texture, plasticity, organics, other)	
0.0		SS-31			1.0	2.5	2	6	4	m	CP?	BROWNISH GRAY, LOOSE TO MED. DENSE, SILTY FINE SAND (A-2-4, SP-SM) TRACE CLAY; LS20 POSSIBLE FILL? Change at 2.6'
		S-2	0	3								* Bulk Sample
	2.6											
2.6		SS-32			3.5	5.0	1	2	1	SAT	CP	BROWNISH GRAY, V. LOOSE (A-3, SP) CLAYEY FINE SAND (A-2-4, SC) TRACE SILT, TRACE CLAY Change at 5.5
	5.5											
5.5		SS-33			6.0	7.5	3	5	6	SAT	CP	BROWNISH GRAY, MED. DENSE, SILTY FINE TO COARSE SAND (A-2-4, SM) W/ SHELL FRAGMENTS
		SS-34			8.5	10.0	6	10	9	SAT	CP	SAME
		SS-35			13.5	15.0	10	11	17	SAT	CP	GRAY, MED DENSE, SILTY FINE SAND (A-2-4, SM)
		SS-36			18.5	20.0	12	15	17	SAT	CP	SAME, DENSE
		SS-37			23.5	25.0	5	5	4	SAT	CP	GRAY, LOOSE, SILTY F. SAND (A-2-4, SM)
												* S-2 - Bulk Sample TAKEN FROM POINTS BETWEEN B-5 + B-6
												* BORING ELEVATIONS + LOCATION WERE NOT SURVEYED N+E ARE APPROXIMATE

REDLINED BY (sign): _____ DATE: _____ Boring terminated at 25.0 ft (IN) ON SILTY SAND (A-2-4)



PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/7/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 3
LOCATION OF SEISMIC ARRAY
HATTERAS FERRY LANDING SITE
HATTERAS, NORTH CAROLINA



PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com



2.a. Photo looking southeast showing seismograph (yellow box) and geophone array laid out across site .



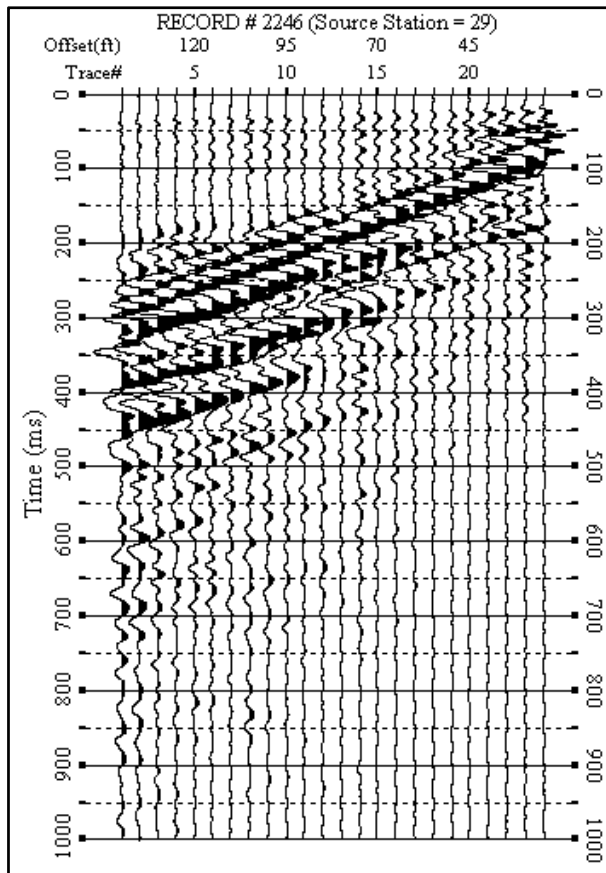
2.b. Photo showing 20-pound sledgehammer used as energy source.

PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	NTS
DATE	3/7/17
BY	DMN

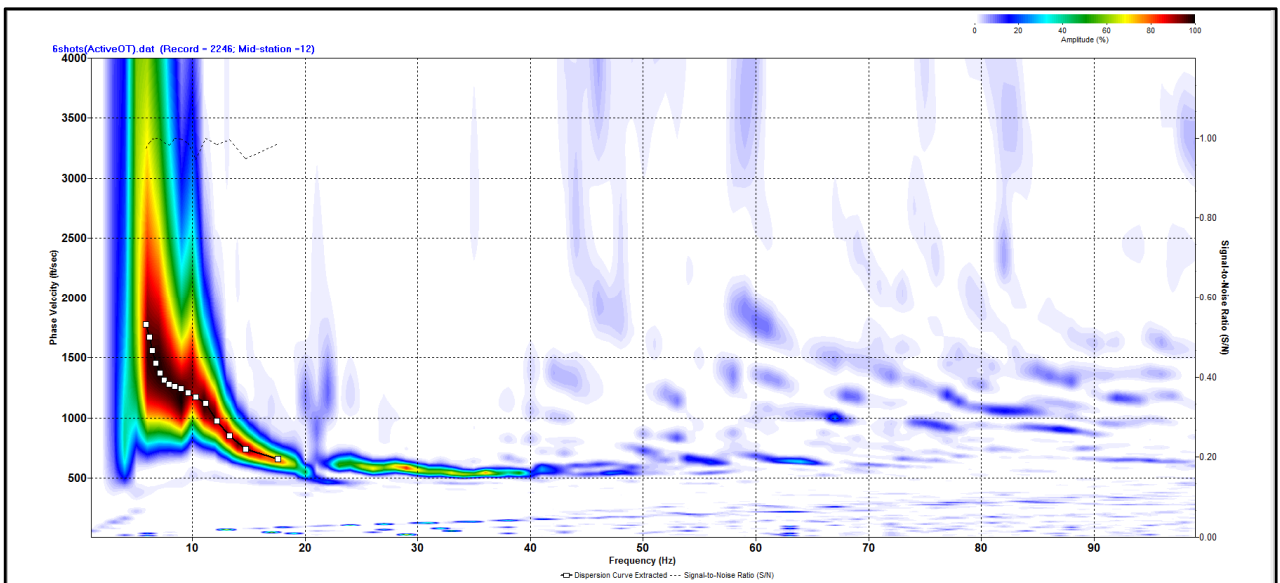
FIGURE 4
PHOTOGRAPHS OF DATA ACQUISITION
HATTERAS FERRY LANDING SITE
HATTERAS, NORTH CAROLINA



PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com



3.a. Time-series seismic data (selected record)



3.b. Data converted to frequency-phase velocity domain showing selected dispersion curve used for inversion

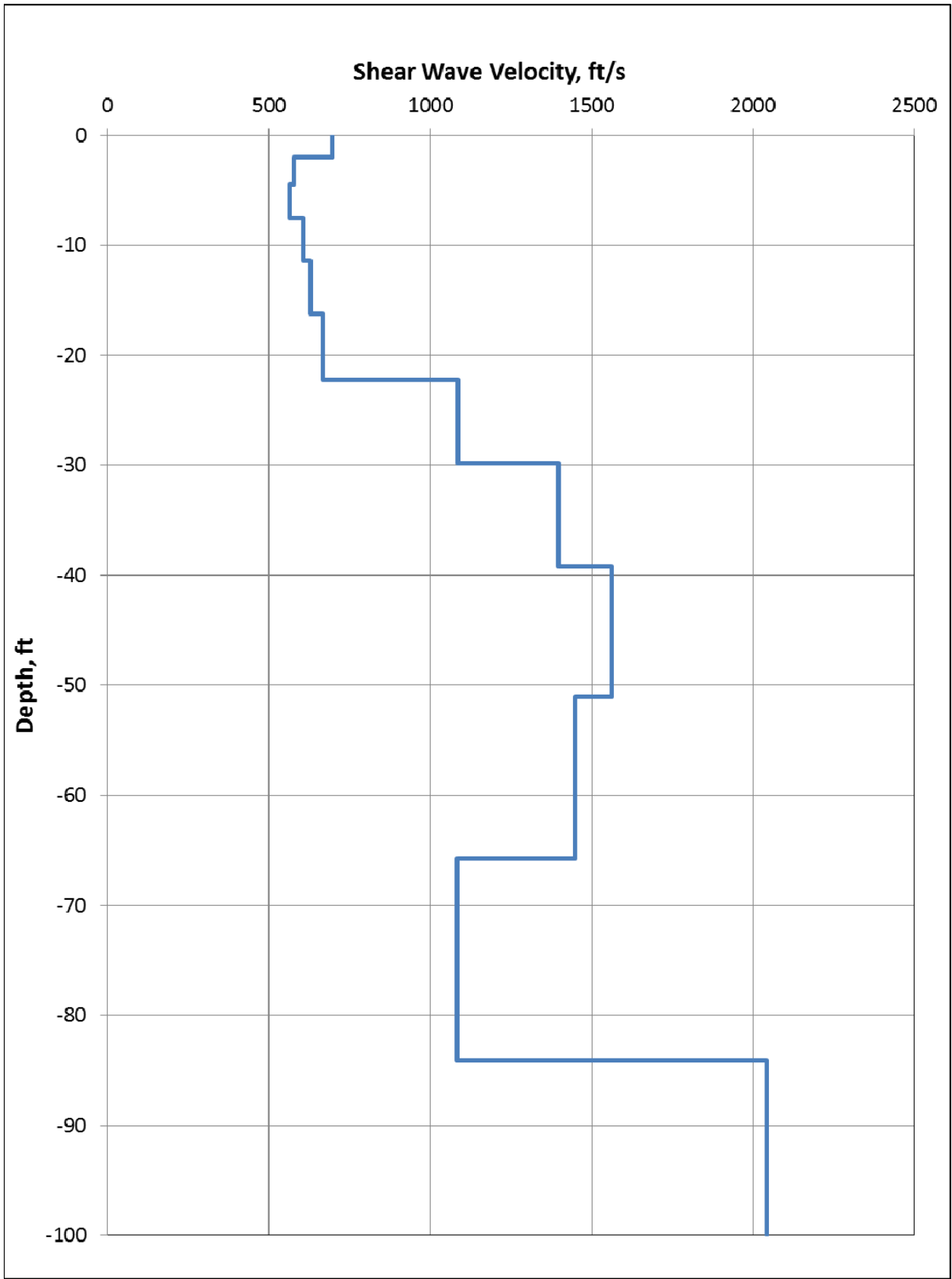
PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/7/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 5
SURFACE WAVE SEISMIC PROCESSING

HATTERAS FERRY LANDING SITE
HATTERAS, NORTH CAROLINA

PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317

www.espassociates.com



PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/7/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 6
SHEAR WAVE VELOCITY MODEL
HATTERAS FERRY LANDING SITE
HATTERAS, NORTH CAROLINA



ESP Associates, P.A.
 PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com



PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/8/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 7
LOCATION OF SEISMIC ARRAY
OCRACOKE FERRY LANDING SITE
OCRACOKE, NORTH CAROLINA



PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com



2.a. Photo looking south showing seismograph (yellow box) and geophone array laid out across site .



2.b. Photo showing 20-pound sledgehammer and metal plate used as energy source.

PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	NTS
DATE	3/8/17
BY	DMN

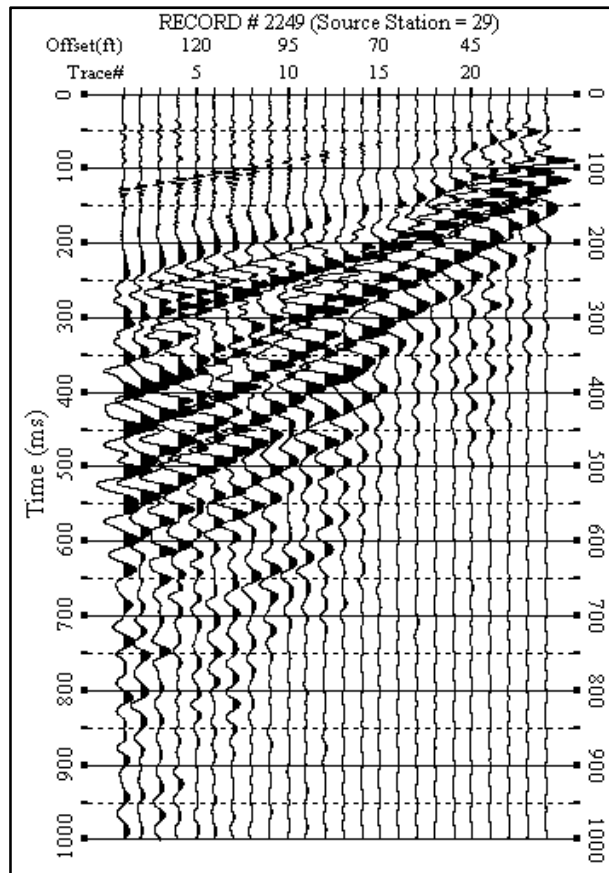
FIGURE 8
PHOTOGRAPHS OF DATA ACQUISITION

OCRACOKE FERRY LANDING SITE
OCRACOKE, NORTH CAROLINA

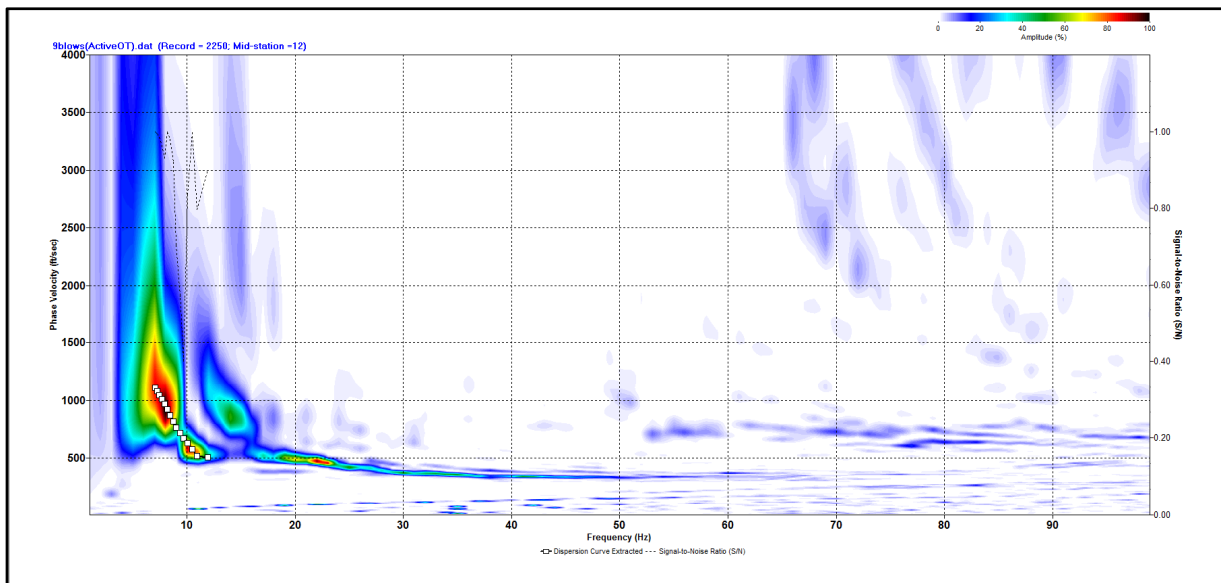


ESP
ESP Associates, P.A.

PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com



3.a. Time-series seismic data (selected record)



3.b. Data converted to frequency-phase velocity domain showing selected dispersion curve used for inversion

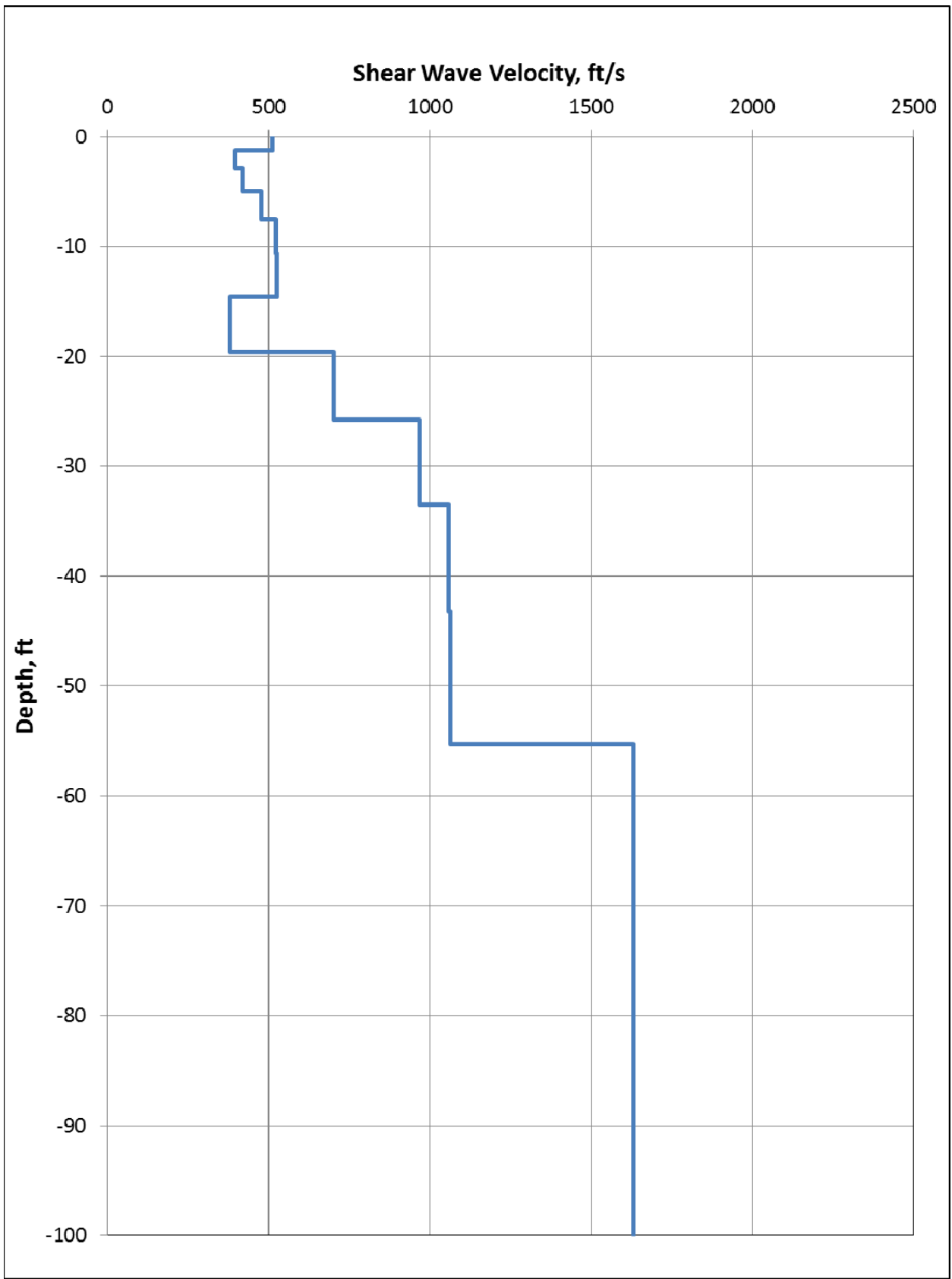
PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/8/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 9
SURFACE WAVE SEISMIC PROCESSING

OCRACOKE FERRY LANDING SITE
OCRACOKE, NORTH CAROLINA

PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317

www.espassociates.com

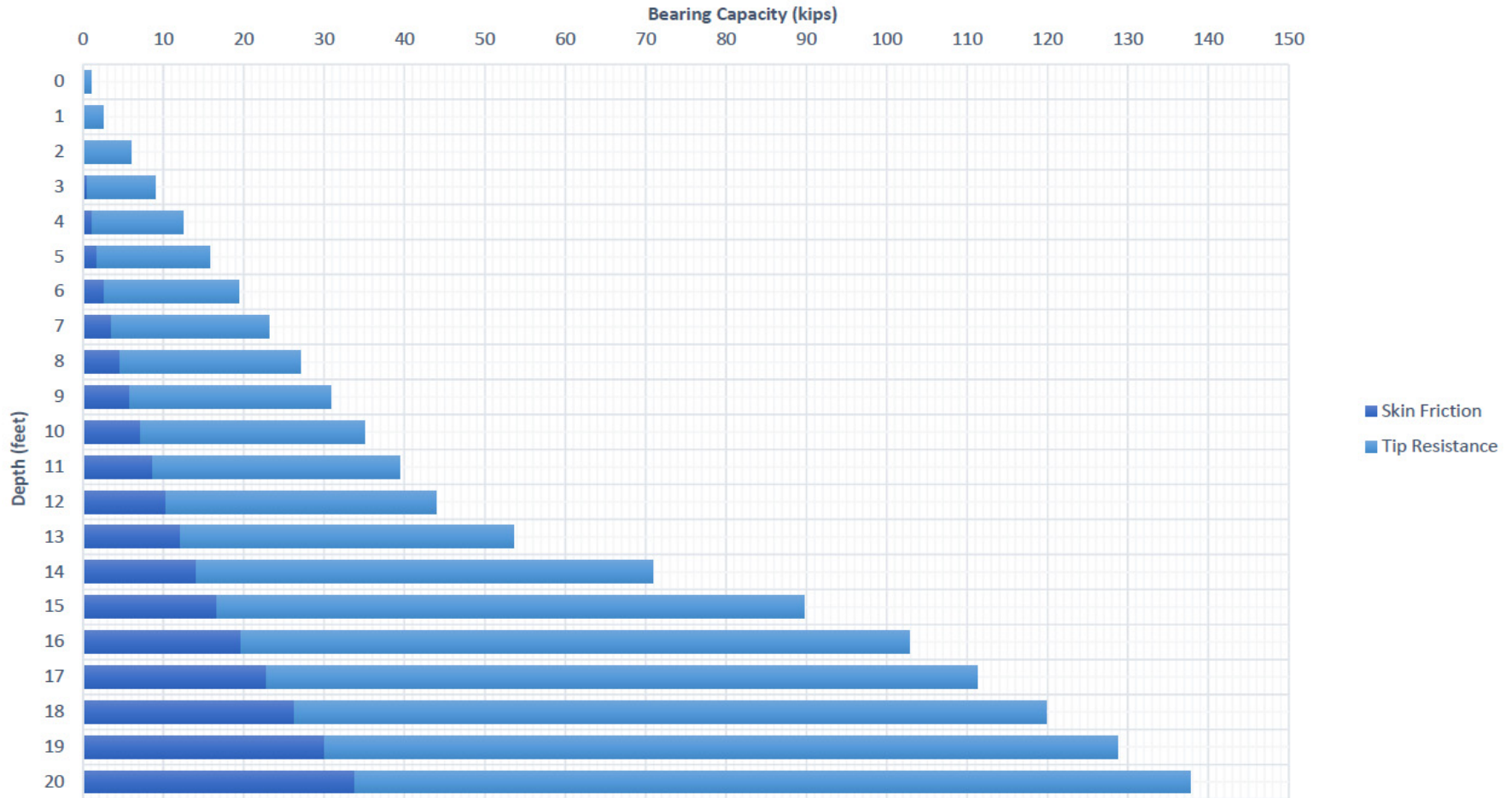


PROJECT NO.	FN65.300
SCALE	AS SHOWN
DATE	3/8/17
BY	DMN

FIGURE 10
SHEAR WAVE VELOCITY MODEL
OCRACOKE FERRY LANDING SITE
OCRACOKE, NORTH CAROLINA



ESP Associates, P.A.
 PO Box 7030
 Charlotte, NC 28241
 1.800.960.7317
www.espassociates.com

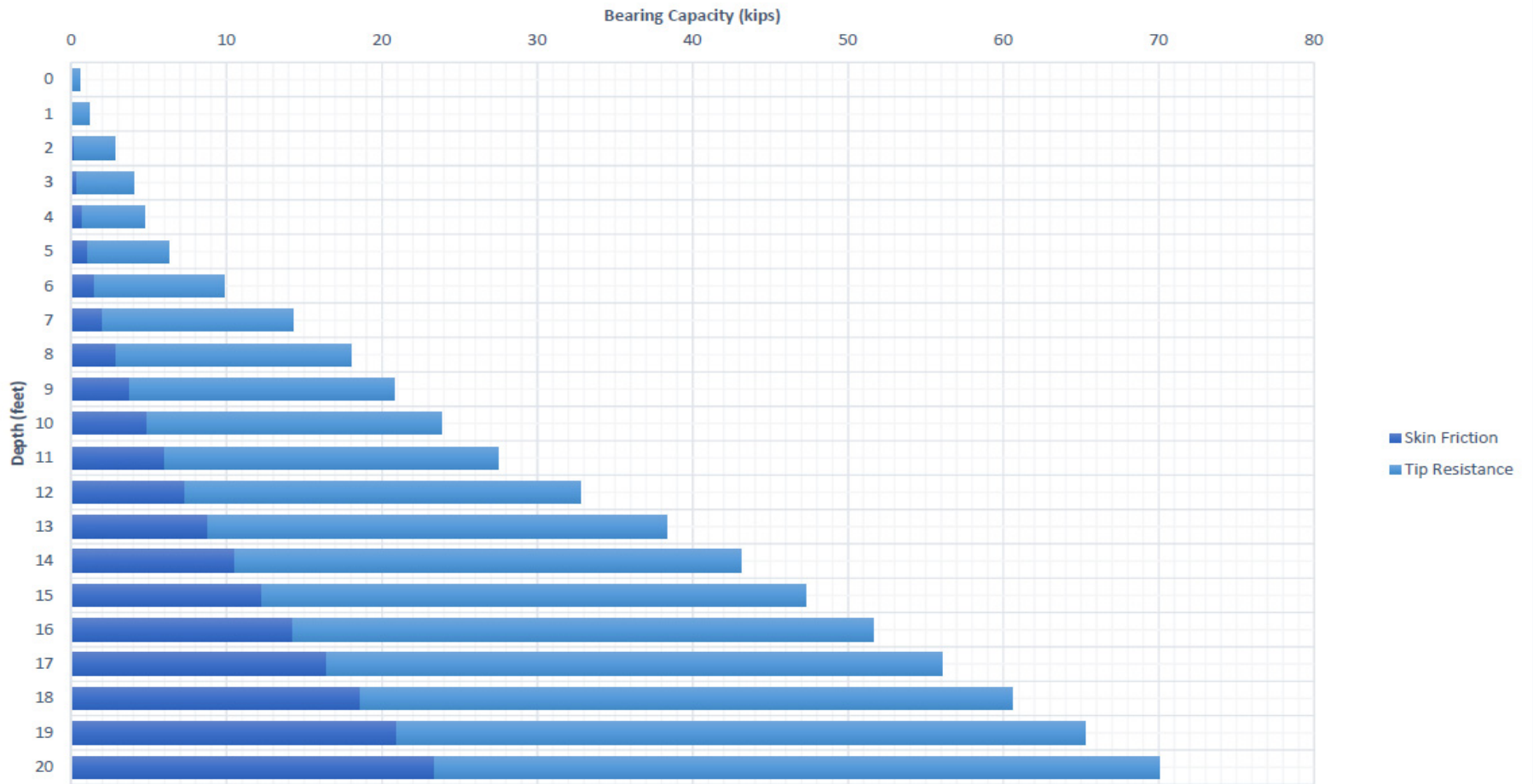


Hatteras Ultimate Soil Bearing Capacities

PROJECT NO: FN65.300	SHEET TITLE:
	SOIL BEARING CAPACITY HATTERAS SITE
DRAWN BY: BRL	
CHECKED BY: RWE	PROJECT:
DATE: 4/14/2017	NCDOT PASSENGER FERRY TERMINALS AND PARKING LOTS
FIGURE 11	FORT MILL, SOUTH CAROLINA



ESP Associates, P.A.
P.O. Box 7030
Charlotte, NC 28241
3475 Lakemont Blvd.
Fort Mill, SC 29708
704-583-4949 (NC)
803-802-2440 (SC)
www.espassociates.com



Ocracoke Ultimate Soil Bearing Capacities

PROJECT NO: FN65.300	SHEET TITLE:
	SOIL BEARING CAPACITY OCRACOCKE SITE
DRAWN BY: BRL	
CHECKED BY: RWE	PROJECT:
DATE: 4/14/2017	NCDOT PASSENGER FERRY TERMINALS AND PARKING LOTS
FIGURE 12	FORT MILL, SOUTH CAROLINA



ESP Associates, P.A.
P.O. Box 7030
Charlotte, NC 28241
3475 Lakemont Blvd.
Fort Mill, SC 29708
704-583-4949 (NC)
803-802-2440 (SC)
www.espassociates.com

NCDOT Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal
 Soil Strength Parameters based on Boring No. B-1

Layer	Drive Depth	z	γ_t	z_w	σ_o	u	σ'_o	N	N_{60}	C_N	$N_{I_{60}}$	$N_{I_{60av}}$	s_u	ϕ'
#	ft	ft	pcf	ft	ksf	ksf	ksf	bpf	bpf	dim	bpf	bpf	ksf	deg
1	0.0	0.0	125	0.0	0.00	0.00	0.00	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	-1.0	1.0	125	1.0	0.13	0.06	0.06	21	31.2	2.00	62	46	-	37
	-3.5	3.5	125	3.5	0.44	0.22	0.22	18	26.7	1.74	47		-	
	-6.0	6.0	125	6.0	0.75	0.38	0.38	12	17.8	1.56	28		-	
	-8.5	8.5	125	8.5	1.06	0.53	0.53	22	32.6	1.45	47		-	
2	-13.5	13.5	130	13.5	1.69	0.84	0.84	37	54.9	1.29	71	63	-	40
	-18.5	18.5	130	18.5	2.34	1.16	1.18	35	51.9	1.18	61		-	
	-23.5	23.5	130	23.5	2.99	1.47	1.52	35	51.9	1.09	57		-	
3	-28.5	28.5	125	28.5	3.64	1.78	1.86	16	23.7	1.03	24	24	-	32
4	-33.5	33.5	135	33.5	4.26	2.09	2.17	84	124.6	0.97	121	129	-	40
	-38.5	38.5	135	38.5	4.94	2.41	2.53	99	146.9	0.92	136		-	

Notes:

- z, z_w = depth of the SPT test location below ground surface and groundwater level, respectively
- γ_t = total unit weight of soil
- u = pore water pressure at SPT test, $u = z_w (62.5/1000)$; and $u = 0$ when z_w is negative
- σ_o, σ'_o = total and effective stress at SPT test location, respectively; $\sigma'_o = \sigma_o - u$
- N = uncorrected SPT blow count as measured in the field
- N_{60} = SPT blow count corrected for hammer efficiency, $N_{60} = (ER/60\%) N$ and $ER = \text{hammer efficiency} = 89\%$
- $N_{I_{60}}$ = $C_N N_{60}$, where $C_N = [0.77 \log_{10} (40/\sigma'_o)]$ and $C_N \leq 2.0$
- $N_{I_{60av}}$ = average of $N_{I_{60}}$ values for a layer
- s_u = undrained shear strength of soil, based on GDM, Equation 7-30
- ϕ' = average drained friction angle of soil

NCDOT Ocracoke Island Passenger Terminal
 Soil Strength Parameters based on Boring No. B-5

Layer	Drive Depth	z	γ_t	z_w	σ_o	u	σ'_o	N	N_{60}	C_N	$N_{I_{60}}$	$N_{I_{60av}}$	s_u	ϕ'
#	ft	ft	pcf	ft	ksf	ksf	ksf	bpf	bpf	dim	bpf	bpf	ksf	deg
1	0.0	0.0	125	0.0	0.00	0.00	0.00	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	-1.0	1.0	110	1.0	0.13	0.06	0.06	17	25.2	2.00	50	50	-	33
2	-3.5	3.5	120	3.5	0.40	0.22	0.18	5	7.4	1.80	13	13	-	30
3	-6.0	6.0	125	6.0	0.70	0.38	0.33	12	17.8	1.61	29	33	-	35
	-8.5	8.5	125	8.5	1.01	0.53	0.48	17	25.2	1.48	37		-	
4	-13.5	13.5	125	13.5	1.64	0.84	0.79	22	32.6	1.31	43	43	-	36
	-18.5	18.5	125	18.5	2.26	1.16	1.11	24	35.6	1.20	43		-	
5	-23.5	23.5	115	23.5	2.89	1.47	1.42	9	13.4	1.12	15	15	-	31
6	-28.5	28.5	125	28.5	3.46	1.78	1.68	18	26.7	1.06	28	28	-	33
7	-33.5	33.5	125	33.5	4.09	2.09	1.99	28	41.5	1.00	42	42	-	36
8	-38.5	38.5	130	38.5	4.71	2.41	2.31	61	90.5	0.95	86	86	-	40

Notes:

- z, z_w = depth of the SPT test location below ground surface and groundwater level, respectively
- γ_t = total unit weight of soil
- u = pore water pressure at SPT test, $u = z_w (62.5/1000)$; and $u = 0$ when z_w is negative
- σ_o, σ'_o = total and effective stress at SPT test location, respectively; $\sigma'_o = \sigma_o - u$
- N = uncorrected SPT blow count as measured in the field
- N_{60} = SPT blow count corrected for hammer efficiency, $N_{60} = (ER/60\%) N$ and $ER = \text{hammer efficiency} = 89\%$
- $N_{I_{60}}$ = $C_N N_{60}$, where $C_N = [0.77 \log_{10} (40/\sigma'_o)]$ and $C_N \leq 2.0$
- $N_{I_{60av}}$ = average of $N_{I_{60}}$ values for a layer
- s_u = undrained shear strength of soil, based on GDM, Equation 7-30
- ϕ' = average drained friction angle of soil

SOILS LABORATORY TESTS RESULTS

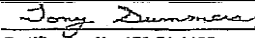
WBS NO.: -

TIP NO.: -

COUNTY: Dare / Hyde

SITE DESCRIPTION: Design Development for NCDOT Ocracoke Island and Hatteras Island Passenger Terminal

SAMPLE NO.	Boring	DEPTH INTERVAL (ft.)	AASHTO CLASS	N	L.L	P.I.	% BY WEIGHT				% PASSING SIEVES			% MOISTURE	% ORGANIC
							CSE. SAND	F. SAND	SILT	CLAY	10	40	200		
SS-1	B-1	18.5-20.0	A-3 (1)	35	NP	NP	50	46	3	1	100	93	4	-	-
SS-2	B-1	28.5-30.0	A-2-4 (1)	16	NP	NP	18	60	19	3	98	89	22	-	-
SS-3	B-3	6.0-7.5	A-3 (1)	10	NP	NP	55	43	1	1	100	79	2	23	0.65
SS-4	B-6	3.5-5.0	A-3 (1)	3	-	-	27	64	5	4	100	91	9	-	-
S-1	B-4	0.0-3.9	A-3 (1)	N/A	-	-	53	45	1	1	98	86	2	-	-
S-2	B-5 & B-6	0.0-3.0	A-3 (1)	N/A	-	-	55	40	2	3	92	74	5	-	-


 Certification No. 121-01-1108

Job No. FN65.300
 Project Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Buxton, North Carolina

Sample I.D. S-1
 Material Source Hatteras Ferry Terminal

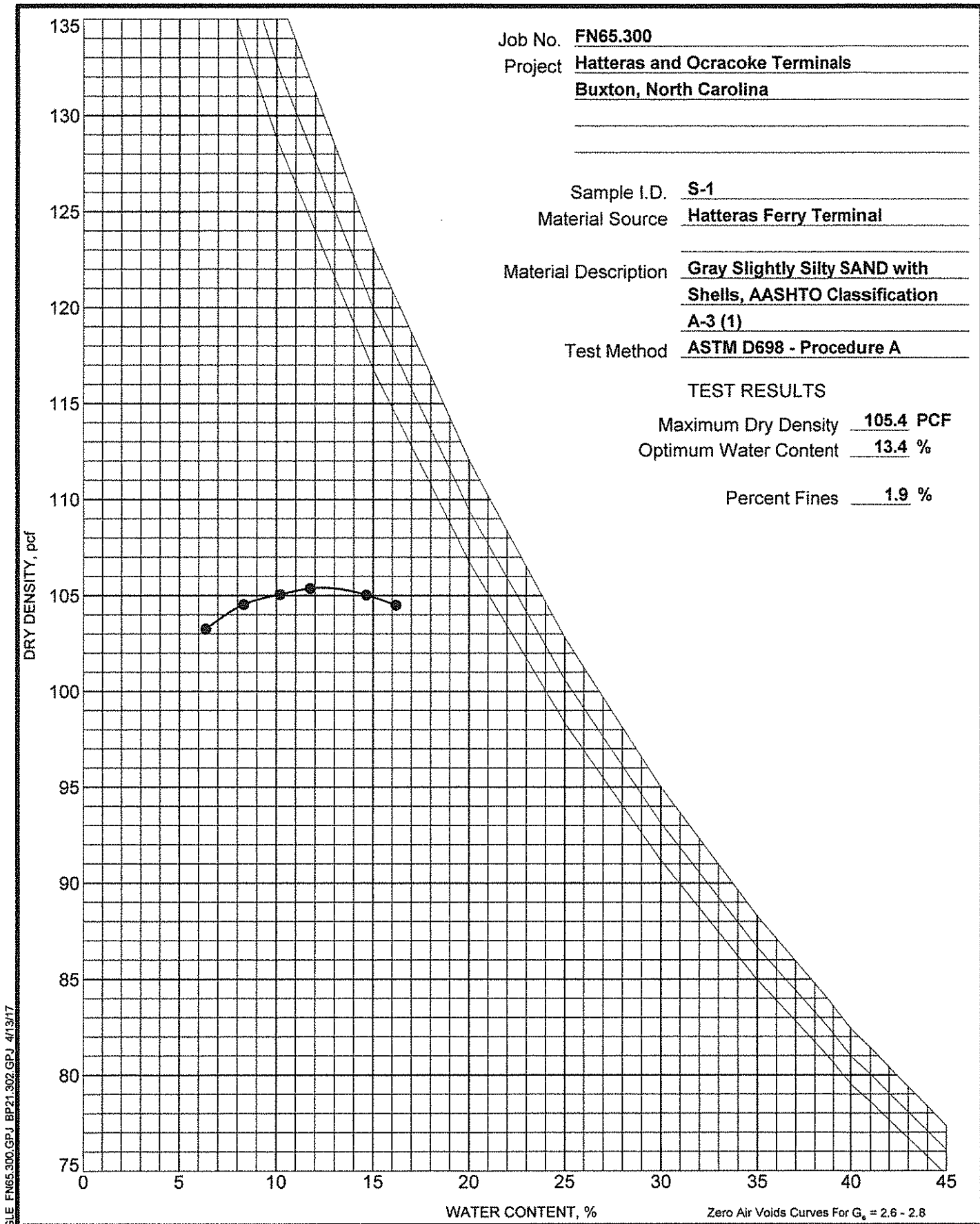
Material Description Gray Slightly Silty SAND with
Shells, AASHTO Classification
A-3 (1)

Test Method ASTM D698 - Procedure A

TEST RESULTS

Maximum Dry Density 105.4 PCF
 Optimum Water Content 13.4 %

Percent Fines 1.9 %



ESP COMPACTION - SINGLE FN65.300.GPJ BP21.302.GPJ 4/13/17



3475 Lakemont Blvd
 Fort Mill, SC
 Telephone: 803-802-2440
 Fax: 803-802-2515

MOISTURE-DENSITY RELATIONSHIP

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals

Location: Buxton, North Carolina

Number: FN65.300

Job No. **FN65.300**
 Project **Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals**
Buxton, North Carolina

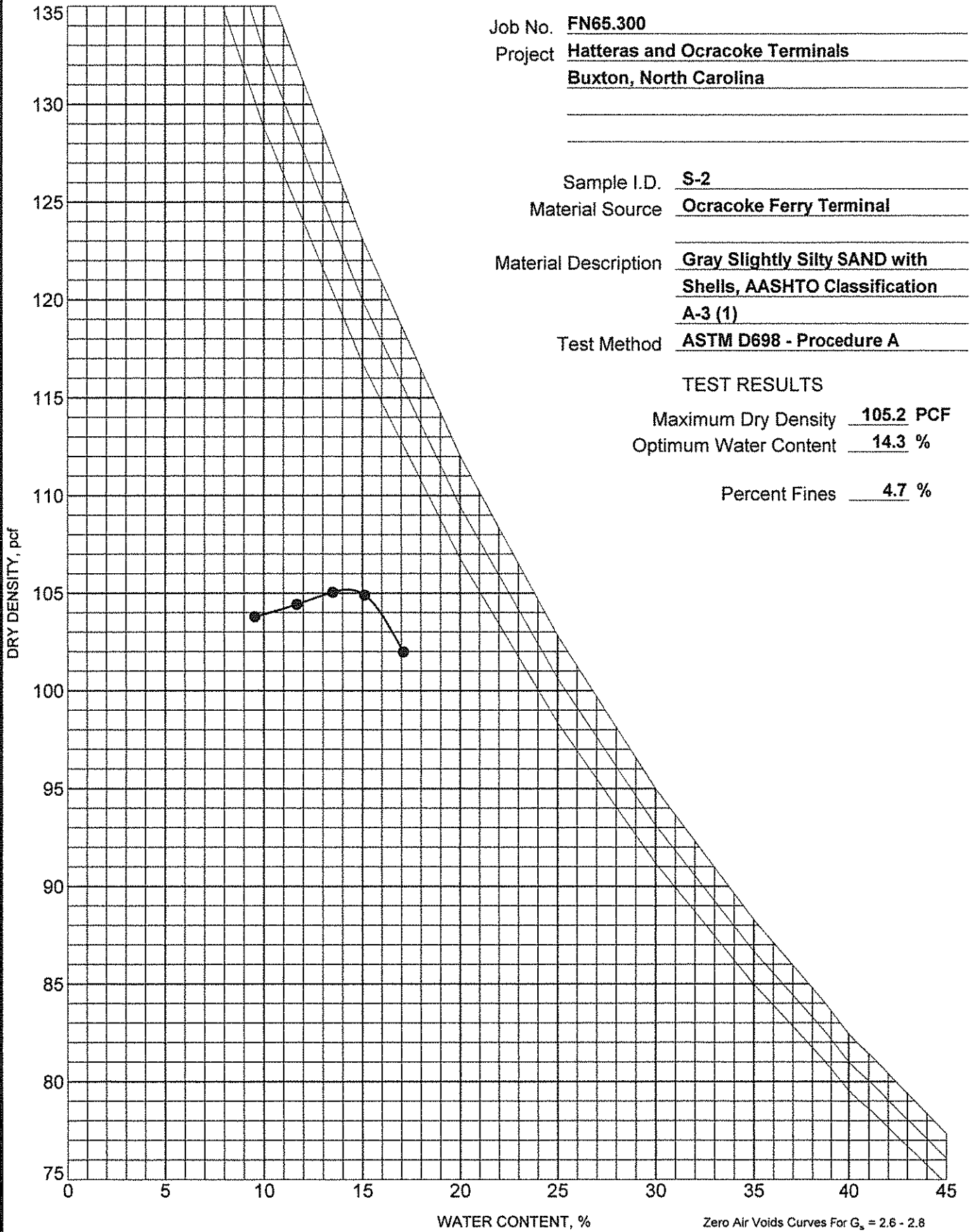
Sample I.D. **S-2**
 Material Source **Ocracoke Ferry Terminal**

Material Description **Gray Slightly Silty SAND with**
Shells, AASHTO Classification
A-3 (1)

Test Method **ASTM D698 - Procedure A**

TEST RESULTS

Maximum Dry Density **105.2 PCF**
 Optimum Water Content **14.3 %**
 Percent Fines **4.7 %**



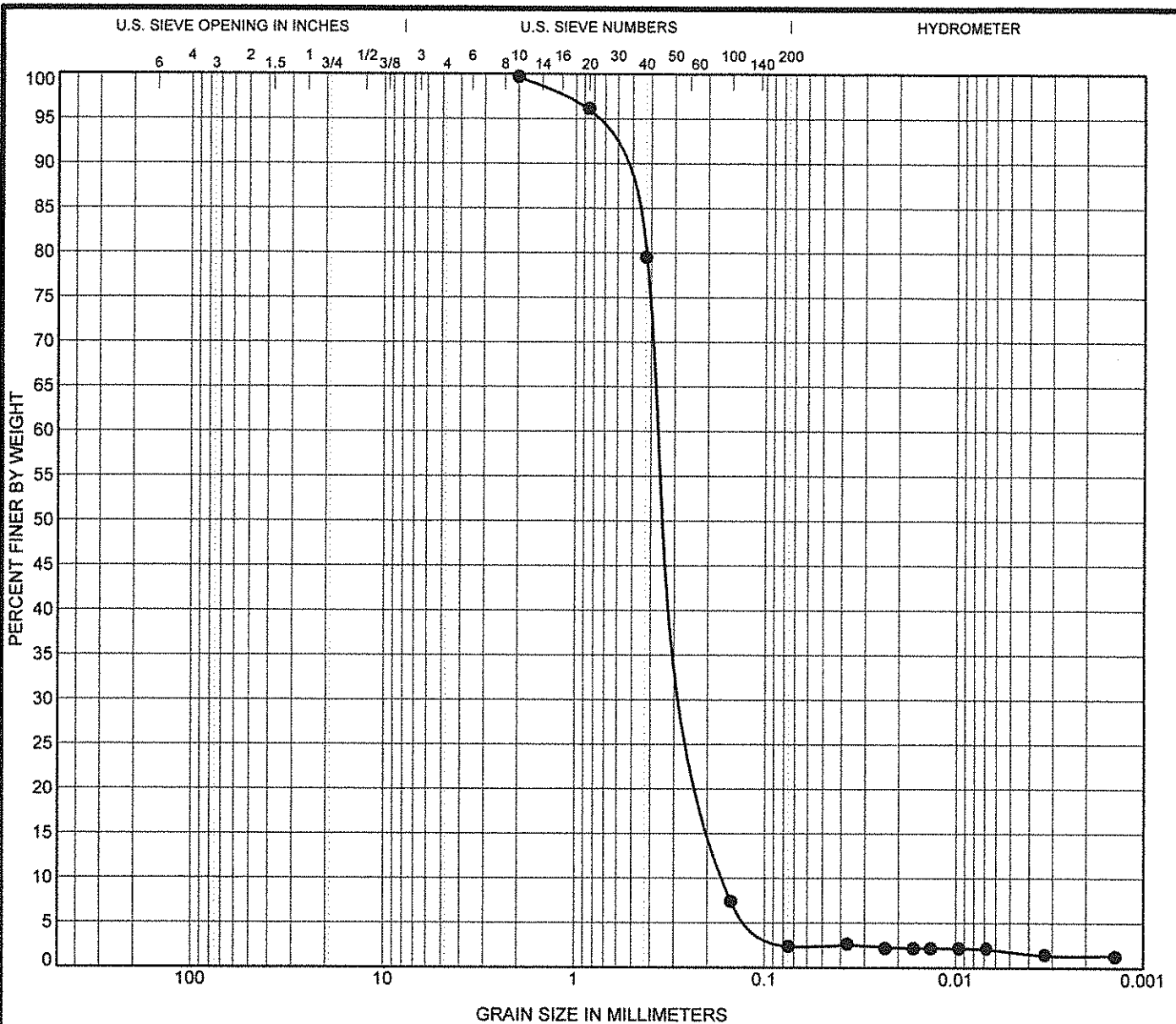
ESP COMPACTION - SINGLE FN65.300.GPJ BP21.302.GPJ 4/13/17



3475 Lakemont Blvd
 Fort Mill, SC
 Telephone: 803-802-2440
 Fax: 803-802-2515

MOISTURE-DENSITY RELATIONSHIP

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
 Location: Buxton, North Carolina
 Number: FN65.300



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● B-3 SS-20 (6.5'-7')	POORLY GRADED SAND SP	NP	NP	NP	0.87	2.06
	AASHTO Classification					
	A-3 (1)					

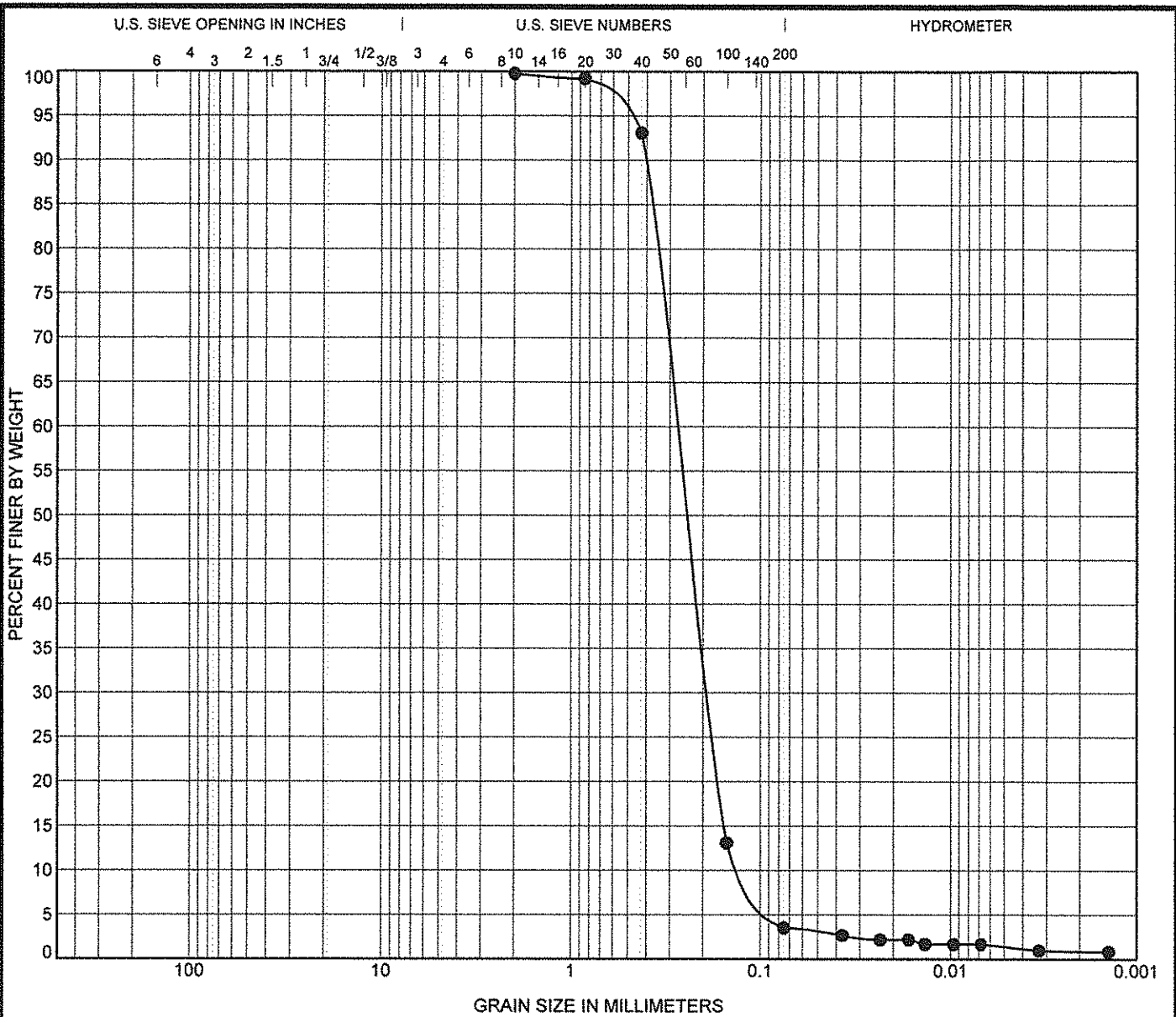
Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● B-3	2	0.321	0.208	0.156	0.0	97.3	1.0	1.4



3475 Lakemont Blvd
Fort Mill, SC
Telephone: 803-802-2440
Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION
Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Location: Buxton, North Carolina
Number: FN65.300

ESP GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● B-1 SS-6 (18.5'-20')	POORLY GRADED SAND SP				1.06	2.31
	AASHTO Classification					
	A-3 (1)					

Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● B-1	2	0.276	0.187	0.12	0.0	96.3	2.6	0.9

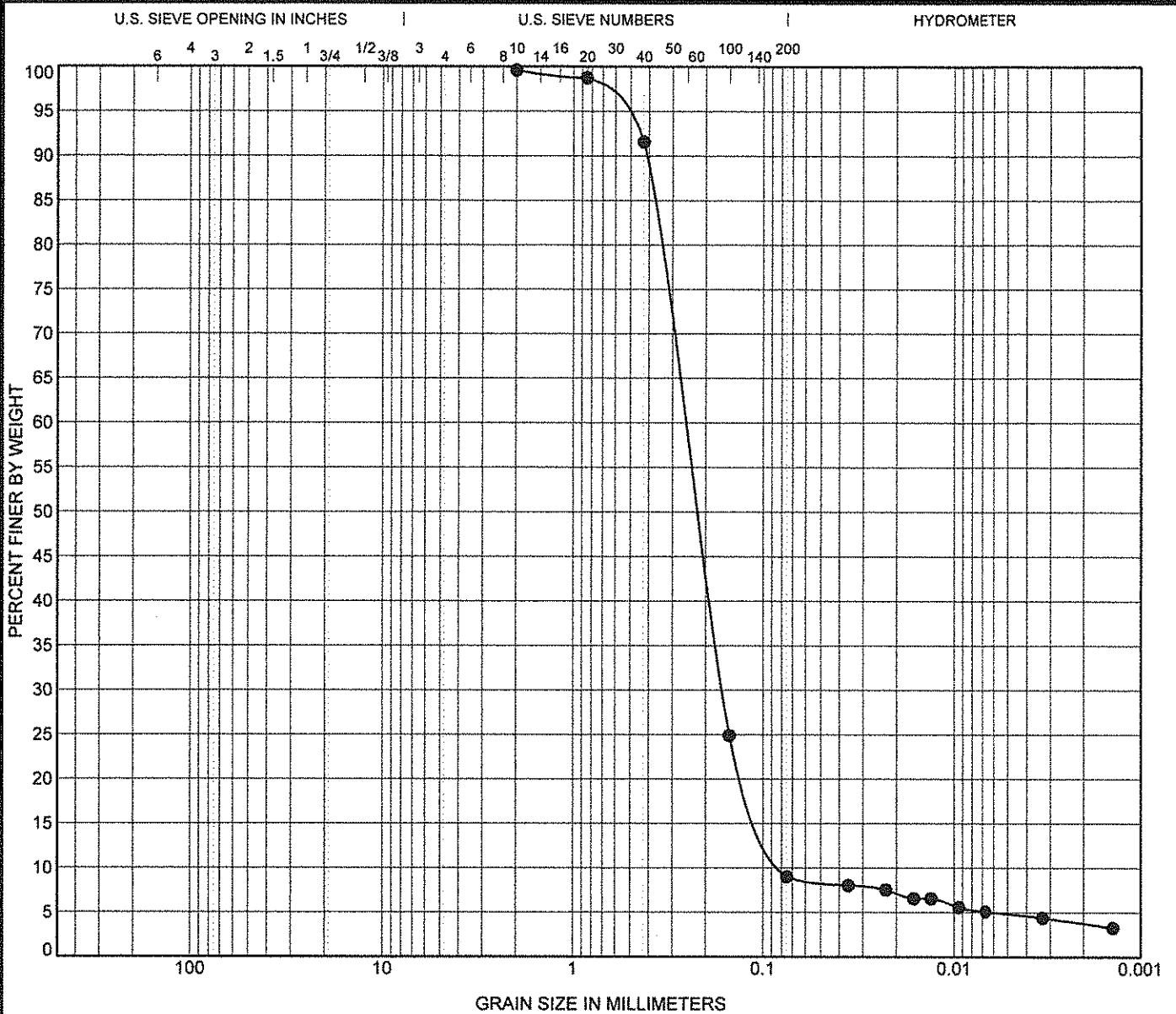
ESP GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



3475 Lakemont Blvd
Fort Mill, SC
Telephone: 803-802-2440
Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Location: Buxton, North Carolina
Number: FN65.300



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification					LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● B-6 SS32 (3.5'-5')	POORLY GRADED SAND with SILT SP-SM					NP	NP	NP	1.30	3.32
	AASHTO Classification									
	A-3 (1)									

Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● B-6	2	0.259	0.162	0.078	0.0	90.6	5.3	3.7

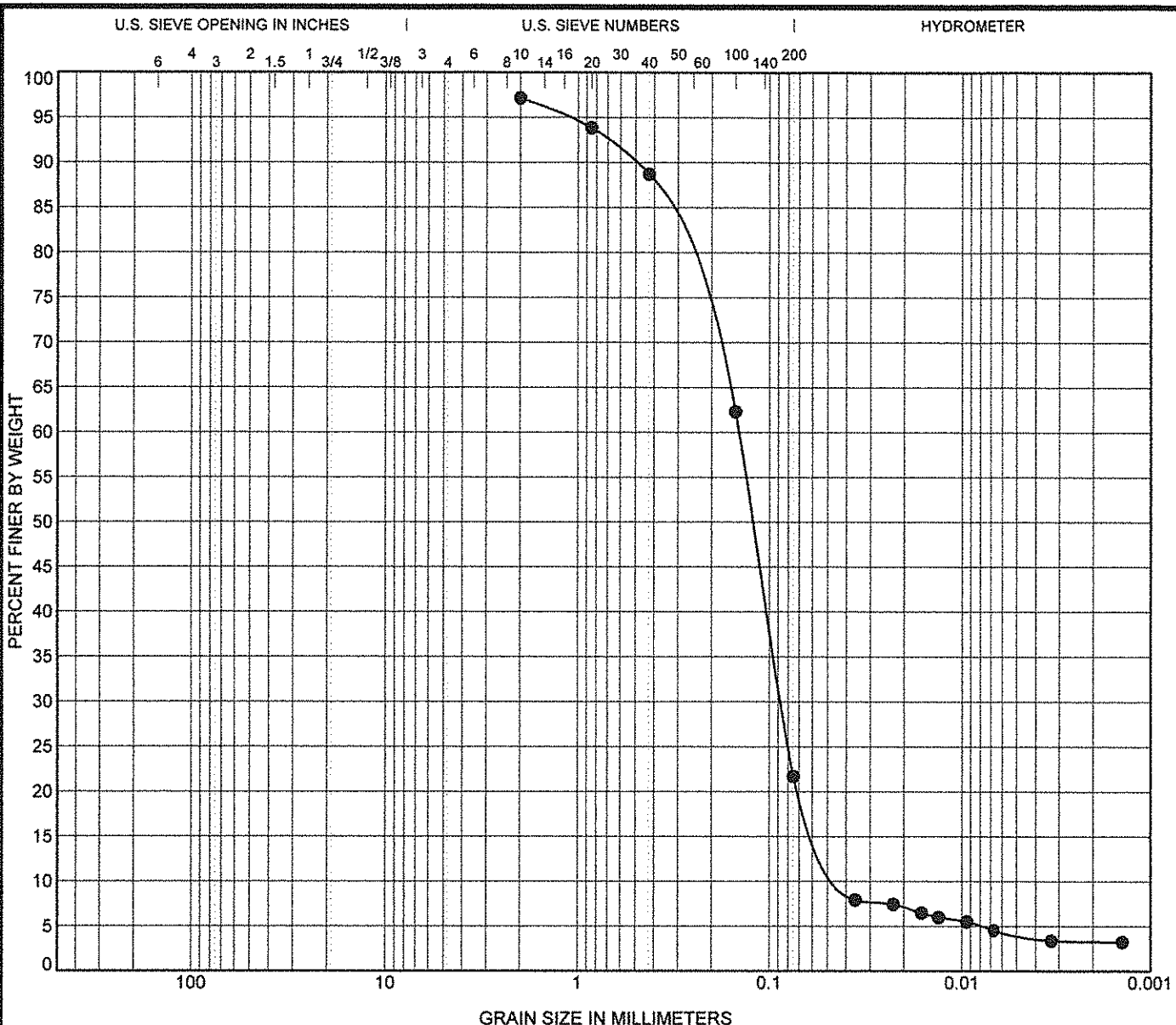
ESP GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



3475 Lakemont Blvd
Fort Mill, SC
Telephone: 803-802-2440
Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Location: Buxton, North Carolina
Number: FN65.300



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● B-1 SS-8 (28.5'-30')	SILTY SAND SM	NP	NP	NP	1.29	3.61
	AASHTO Classification					
	A-2-4 (1)					

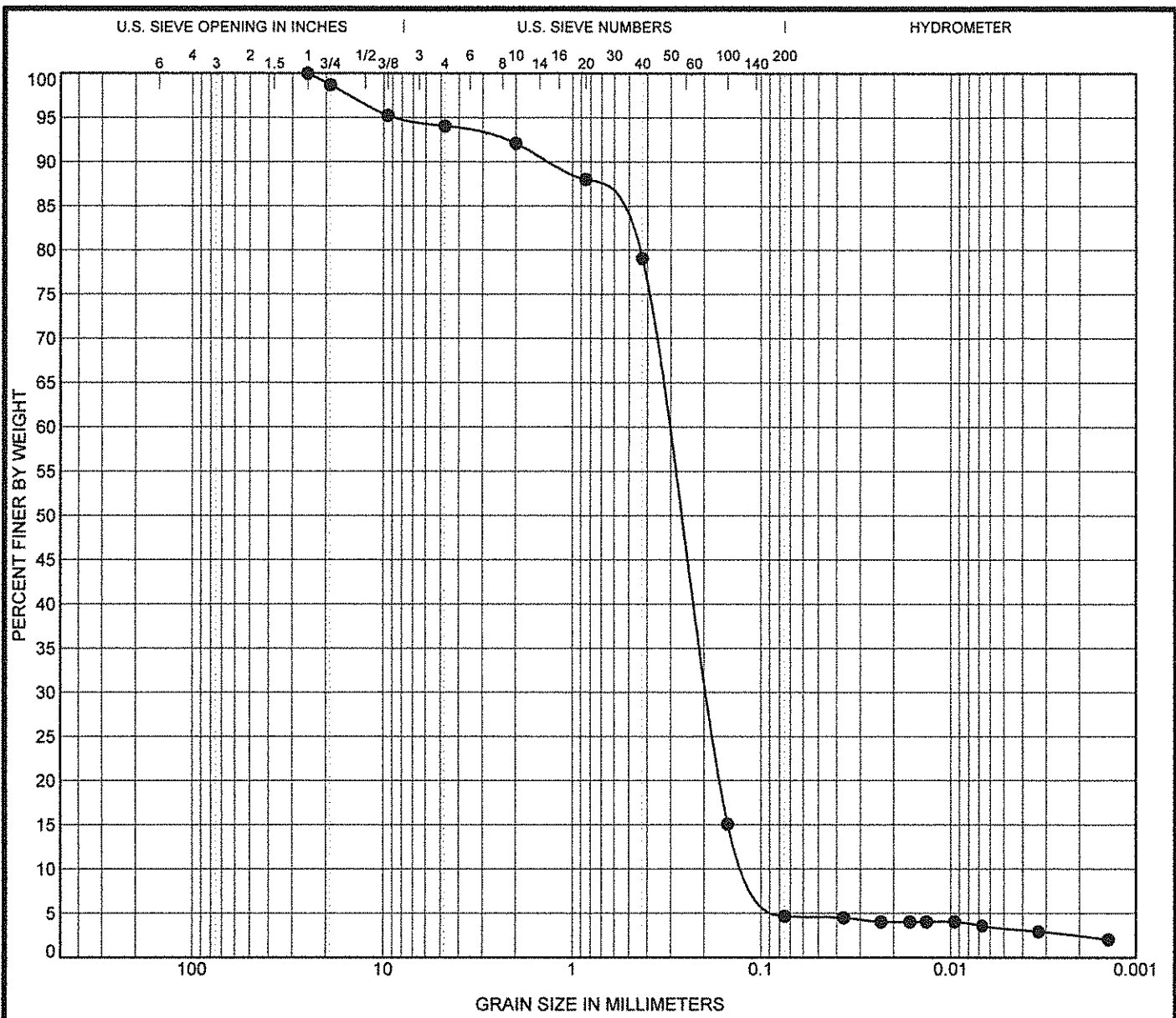
Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● B-1 SS-8	2	0.144	0.086	0.04	0.0	75.4	18.4	3.3

ESP GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



3475 Lakemont Blvd
 Fort Mill, SC
 Telephone: 803-802-2440
 Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION
 Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
 Location: Buxton, North Carolina
 Number: FN65.300



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
● S-2	POORLY GRADED SAND SP AASHTO Classification A-3 (1)				1.10	2.91

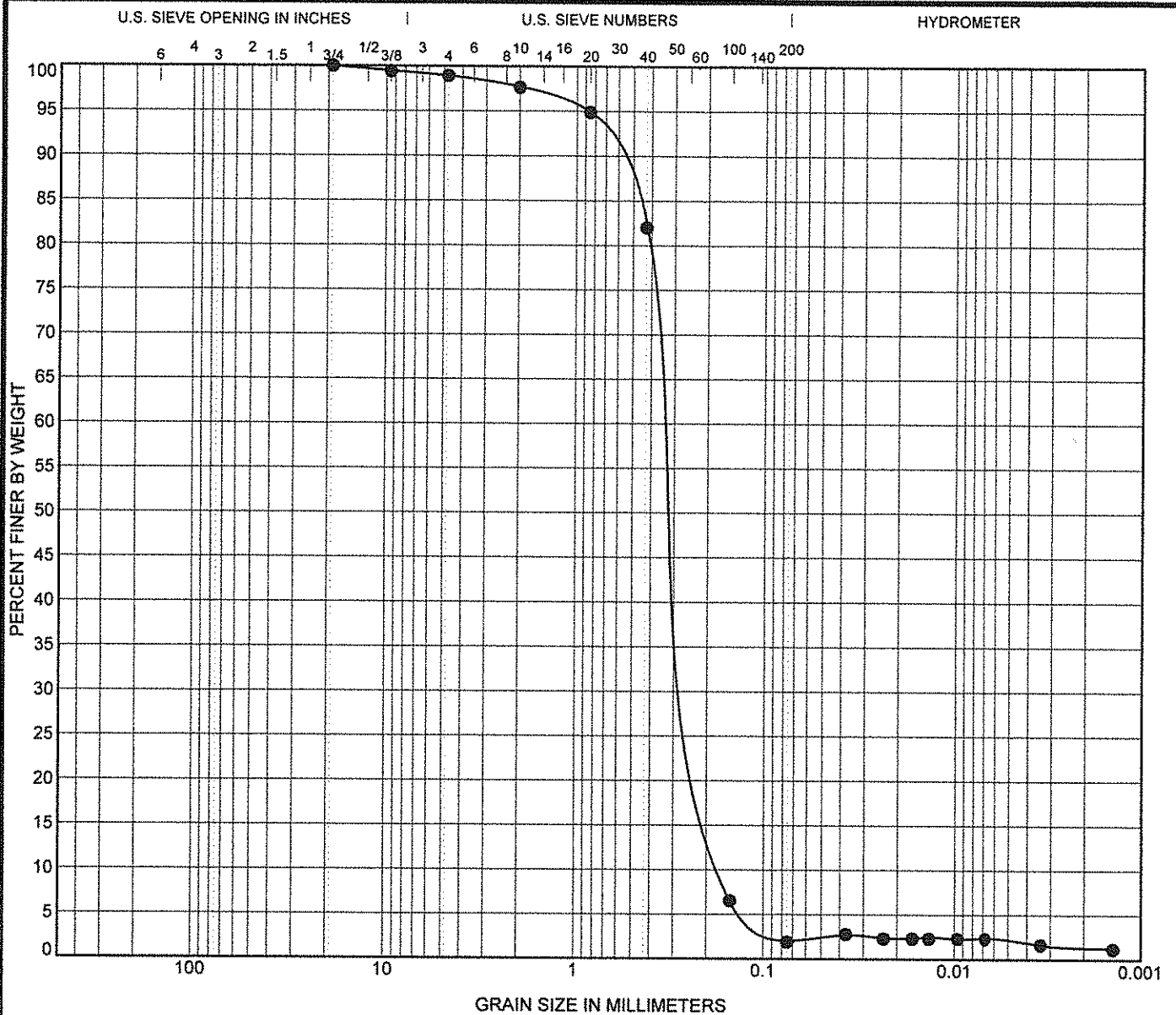
Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
● S-2	25	0.312	0.191	0.107	5.9	89.4	2.2	2.4



3475 Lakemont Blvd
Fort Mill, SC
Telephone: 803-802-2440
Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION
Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
Location: Buxton, North Carolina
Number: FN65.300

ESP GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Specimen Identification	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
S-1	POORLY GRADED SAND SP				0.87	1.99
	AASHTO Classification					
	A-3 (1)					

Specimen Identification	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
S-1	19	0.314	0.207	0.157	1.1	97.0	0.5	1.4

ESP, GRAIN SIZE FN65.300.GPJ LOG-LAB.GDT 4/12/17



3475 Lakemont Blvd
 Fort Mill, SC
 Telephone: 803-802-2440
 Fax: 803-802-2515

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: Hatteras and Ocracoke Terminals
 Location: Buxton, North Carolina
 Number: FN65.300

**REPORT OF
SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION
OCRACOCKE AND HATTERAS
NCDOT PASSENGER TERMINALS
AND PARKING LOTS
ESP PROJECT NO. E4A-FN65.300**

Prepared For:

Mr. Tim Hayes, P.E.
WSP / Parsons Brinckerhoff
434 Fayetteville Street, Suite 1500
Raleigh, North Carolina 27601

Prepared By:

ESP Associates, P.A.
P. O. Box 7030
Charlotte, North Carolina 28241

April 13, 2017

EXECUTION OF BID

**NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN
CERTIFICATION**

CORPORATION

The person executing the bid, on behalf of the Bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee of the bidder has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the Bidder intends to do the work with its own bonafide employees or subcontractors and is not bidding for the benefit of another contractor.

In addition, execution of this bid in the proper manner also constitutes the Bidder's certification of status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR

_____ Full name of Corporation

_____ Address as Prequalified

Attest _____
Secretary/Assistant Secretary
Select appropriate title

By _____
President/Vice President/Assistant Vice President
Select appropriate title

_____ Print or type Signer's name

_____ Print or type Signer's name

CORPORATE SEAL

AFFIDAVIT MUST BE NOTARIZED

Subscribed and sworn to before me this the

_____ day of _____ 20__.

NOTARY SEAL

_____ Signature of Notary Public

of _____ County

State of _____

My Commission Expires: _____

**EXECUTION OF BID
NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN
CERTIFICATION**

PARTNERSHIP

The person executing the bid, on behalf of the Bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee of the bidder has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the Bidder intends to do the work with its own bonafide employees or subcontractors and is not bidding for the benefit of another contractor.

In addition, execution of this bid in the proper manner also constitutes the Bidder's certification of status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR

Signature of Witness	By	Signature of Partner
Print or type Signer's name		Print or type Signer's name

AFFIDAVIT MUST BE NOTARIZED

Subscribed and sworn to before me this the

NOTARY SEAL

_____ day of _____ 20__.

Signature of Notary Public

of _____ County

State of _____

My Commission Expires: _____

**EXECUTION OF BID
NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN
CERTIFICATION**

LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY

The person executing the bid, on behalf of the Bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee of the bidder has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the Bidder intends to do the work with its own bonafide employees or subcontractors and is not bidding for the benefit of another contractor.

In addition, execution of this bid in the proper manner also constitutes the Bidder's certification of status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR

_____ Full Name of Firm

_____ Address as Prequalified

_____ Signature of Witness

_____ Signature of Member/Manager/Authorized Agent
Select appropriate title

_____ Print or type Signer's name

_____ Print or type Signer's Name

AFFIDAVIT MUST BE NOTARIZED

Subscribed and sworn to before me this the

NOTARY SEAL

_____ day of _____ 20__.

_____ Signature of Notary Public

of _____ County

State of _____

My Commission Expires: _____

**EXECUTION OF BID
NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN CERTIFICATION
JOINT VENTURE (2) or (3)**

The person executing the bid, on behalf of the Bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee of the bidder has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the bidder has not been convicted of violating N.C.G.S. § 133-24 within the last three years, and that the Bidder intends to do the work with its own bonafide employees or subcontractors and is not bidding for the benefit of another contractor.

In addition, execution of this bid in the proper manner also constitutes the Bidder's certification of status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR

Instructions: **2 Joint Venturers** Fill in lines (1), (2) and (3) and execute. **3 Joint Venturers** Fill in lines (1), (2), (3) and (4) and execute. On Line (1), fill in the name of the Joint Venture Company. On Line (2), fill in the name of one of the joint venturers and execute below in the appropriate manner. On Line (3), print or type the name of the other joint venturer and execute below in the appropriate manner. On Line (4), fill in the name of the third joint venturer, if applicable and execute below in the appropriate manner.

(1) _____
Name of Joint Venture

(2) _____
Name of Contractor

Address as Prequalified

Signature of Witness or Attest By _____
Signature of Contractor

Print or type Signer's name _____
Print or type Signer's name

If Corporation, affix Corporate Seal and

(3) _____
Name of Contractor

Address as Prequalified

Signature of Witness or Attest By _____
Signature of Contractor

Print or type Signer's name _____
Print or type Signer's name

If Corporation, affix Corporate Seal and

(4) _____
Name of Contractor (for 3 Joint Venture only)

Address as Prequalified

Signature of Witness or Attest By _____
Signature of Contractor

Print or type Signer's name _____
Print or type Signer's name

If Corporation, affix Corporate Seal

NOTARY SEAL
Affidavit must be notarized for Line (2)
Subscribed and sworn to before me this _____
day of _____ 20____

Signature of Notary Public
of _____ County
State of _____

NOTARY SEAL
Affidavit must be notarized for Line (3)
Subscribed and sworn to before me this _____
day of _____ 20____

Signature of Notary Public
of _____ County
State of _____
My Commission Expires: _____

NOTARY SEAL
Affidavit must be notarized for Line (4)
Subscribed and sworn to before me this _____
day of _____ 20____

Signature of Notary Public
of _____ County
State of _____
My Commission Expires: _____

**EXECUTION OF BID
NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN
CERTIFICATION**

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS UNDER A FIRM NAME

The person executing the bid, on behalf of the Bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee of the bidder has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the Bidder intends to do the work with its own bonafide employees or subcontractors and is not bidding for the benefit of another contractor.

In addition, execution of this bid in the proper manner also constitutes the Bidder's certification of status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR

Name of Contractor

_____ Individual name

Trading and doing business as

_____ Full name of Firm

Signature of Witness

Signature of Contractor, Individually

Print or type Signer's name

Print or type Signer's name

AFFIDAVIT MUST BE NOTARIZED

Subscribed and sworn to before me this the

NOTARY SEAL

_____ day of _____ 20__.

Signature of Notary Public

of _____ County

State of _____

My Commission Expires: _____

**EXECUTION OF BID
NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN
CERTIFICATION**

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS IN HIS OWN NAME

The person executing the bid, on behalf of the Bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee of the bidder has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the Bidder intends to do the work with its own bonafide employees or subcontractors and is not bidding for the benefit of another contractor.

In addition, execution of this bid in the proper manner also constitutes the Bidder's certification of status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

N.C.G.S. § 133-32 and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR

Name of Contractor _____
Print or type Individual name

Address as Prequalified

Signature of Contractor, Individually

Print or type Signer's Name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

AFFIDAVIT MUST BE NOTARIZED

Subscribed and sworn to before me this the _____
_____ day of _____ 20__.

NOTARY SEAL

Signature of Notary Public

of _____ County

State of _____

My Commission Expires: _____

DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION

Conditions for certification:

1. The prequalified bidder shall provide immediate written notice to the Department if at any time the bidder learns that his certification was erroneous when he submitted his debarment certification or explanation filed with the Department, or has become erroneous because of changed circumstances.
2. The terms *covered transaction, debarred, suspended, ineligible, lower tier covered transaction, participant, person, primary covered transaction, principal, proposal, and voluntarily excluded*, as used in this provision, have the meanings set out in the Definitions and Coverage sections of the rules implementing Executive Order 12549. A copy of the Federal Rules requiring this certification and detailing the definitions and coverages may be obtained from the Contract Officer of the Department.
3. The prequalified bidder agrees by submitting this form, that he will not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in NCDOT contracts, unless authorized by the Department.
4. For Federal Aid projects, the prequalified bidder further agrees that by submitting this form he will include the Federal-Aid Provision titled *Required Contract Provisions Federal-Aid Construction Contract (Form FHWA PR 1273)* provided by the Department, without subsequent modification, in all lower tier covered transactions.
5. The prequalified bidder may rely upon a certification of a participant in a lower tier covered transaction that he is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless he knows that the certification is erroneous. The bidder may decide the method and frequency by which he will determine the eligibility of his subcontractors.
6. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this provision. The knowledge and information of a participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
7. Except as authorized in paragraph 6 herein, the Department may terminate any contract if the bidder knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available by the Federal Government.

DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION

The prequalified bidder certifies to the best of his knowledge and belief, that he and his principals:

- a. Are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from covered transactions by any Federal department or agency;
- b. Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction or contract under a public transaction; violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records; making false statements; or receiving stolen property;
- c. Are not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entity (Federal, State or local) with commission of any of the offenses enumerated in paragraph b. of this certification; and
- d. Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal had one or more public transactions (Federal, State or local) terminated for cause or default.
- e. Will submit a revised Debarment Certification immediately if his status changes and will show in his bid proposal an explanation for the change in status.

If the prequalified bidder cannot certify that he is not debarred, he shall provide an explanation with this submittal. An explanation will not necessarily result in denial of participation in a contract.

Failure to submit a non-collusion affidavit and debarment certification will result in the prequalified bidder's bid being considered non-responsive.

Check here if an explanation is attached to this certification.

Execution of Contract

Contract No: DA00388

County: Dare & Hyde

ACCEPTED BY THE DEPARTMENT

Contract Officer

Date

Contract No. _____
County _____

Rev. 4-19-11

**STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
RALEIGH, NC**

BID BOND

Principal: _____
Name of Principal Contractor

Surety: _____
Name of Surety

Contract Number: _____ County: _____

Date of Bid: _____

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, That we, the PRINCIPAL CONTRACTOR (hereafter, PRINCIPAL) and SURETY above named, are held and firmly bound unto the Department of Transportation in the full and just sum of five (5) percent of the total amount bid by the Principal for the project stated above, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

NOW, THEREFORE, the condition of this obligation is: the Principal shall not withdraw its bid within sixty (60) days after the opening of the bids, or within such other time period as may be provided in the proposal, and if the Board of Transportation shall award a contract to the Principal, the Principal shall, within fourteen (14) calendar days after written notice of award is received by him, provide bonds with good and sufficient surety, as required for the faithful performance of the contract and for the protection of all persons supplying labor, material, and equipment for the prosecution of the work. In the event the Principal requests permission to withdraw his bid due to mistake in accordance with the provisions of Article 103-3 of the *Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures*, the conditions and obligations of this Bid Bond shall remain in full force and effect until the Department of Transportation makes a final determination to either allow the bid to be withdrawn or to proceed with award of the contract. In the event a determination is made to award the contract, the Principal shall have fourteen (14) calendar days to comply with the requirements set forth above. In the event the Principal withdraws its bid after bids are opened except as provided in Article 103-3, or after award of the contract has been made fails to execute such additional documents as may be required and to provide the required bonds within the time period specified above, then the amount of the bid bond shall be immediately paid to the Department of Transportation as liquidated damages.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, the Principal and Surety have caused these presents to be duly signed and sealed.

This the _____ day of _____, 20 _____

Surety

By _____
General Agent or Attorney-in-Fact Signature

Seal of Surety

Print or type Signer's Name

Contract No. _____
County _____

Rev. 4-19-11

BID BOND

PARTNERSHIP

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Full name of Partnership

Address as prequalified

By _____
Signature of Partner

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

Contract No. _____
County _____

Rev. 4-19-11

BID BOND

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS IN HIS OWN NAME

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor _____
Print or type Individual Name

Address as prequalified

Signature of Contractor _____
Individually

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

Contract No. _____
County _____

Rev. 4-19-11

BID BOND

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS UNDER A FIRM NAME

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Individual Name

Trading and doing business as

Full name of Firm

Address as prequalified

Signature of Contractor

Individually

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

Contract No. _____
County _____

Rev. 4-19-11

BID BOND

LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Full name of Firm

Address as prequalified

**Signature of Member/
Manager/Authorized Agent**

Individually

Print or type Signer's name

Contract No. _____
County _____

Rev. 4-19-11

BID BOND

CORPORATION

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Full name of Corporation

Address as prequalified

By _____
Signature of **President, Vice President, Assistant Vice President**
Select appropriate title

Print or type Signer's name

Affix Corporate Seal

Attest _____
Signature of **Secretary, Assistant Secretary**
Select appropriate title

Print or type Signer's name